

## Web UI Reference Guide

Product Model: DGS-3000 Series

Layer 2 Managed Gigabit Ethernet Switch

Release 2.00



Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2016 D-Link Corporation. All rights reserved.

Reproduction of this document in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of D-Link Corporation is strictly forbidden.

Trademarks used in this text: D-Link and the D-LINK logo are trademarks of D-Link Corporation; Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. D-Link Corporation disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

May, 2016 P/N 651GS3000055G

# Table of Contents

Intended Readers.....	1
Typographical Conventions.....	1
Notes, Notices and Cautions.....	1
<b>Chapter 1      Web-based Switch Configuration .....</b>	<b>2</b>
Introduction.....	2
Login to the Web Manager.....	2
Web-based User Interface .....	3
Areas of the User Interface.....	3
Web Pages.....	4
<b>Chapter 2      System Configuration.....</b>	<b>5</b>
Device Information .....	5
System Information Settings .....	5
Port Configuration .....	6
DDM.....	6
Port Settings .....	13
Port Description Settings .....	15
Port Error Disabled .....	16
Port Media Type .....	16
Port Auto Negotiation Information .....	17
Jumbo Frame Settings .....	17
EEE Settings.....	18
Serial Port Settings .....	19
Warning Temperature Settings .....	19
System Log Configuration.....	20
System Log Settings.....	20
System Log Server Settings .....	20
System Log.....	21
System Log & Trap Settings.....	22
System Severity Settings.....	23
Time Range Settings.....	23
Time Settings .....	24
User Accounts Settings.....	24
Command Logging Settings.....	25
<b>Chapter 3      Management .....</b>	<b>27</b>
ARP .....	27
Static ARP Settings .....	27
ARP Table .....	27
Gratuitous ARP .....	28
Gratuitous ARP Global Settings .....	28
Gratuitous ARP Settings.....	29
IPv6 Neighbor Settings .....	29
IP Interface.....	30
System IP Address Settings .....	30
Interface Settings.....	32
Management Settings .....	34
Session Table.....	35
Single IP Management.....	36
Single IP Settings .....	38

---

Topology .....	38
Firmware Upgrade .....	44
Configuration File Backup/Restore .....	45
Upload Log File .....	45
SNMP Settings .....	46
SNMP Global Settings .....	47
SNMP Traps Settings .....	47
SNMP Linkchange Traps Settings .....	48
SNMP View Table Settings .....	48
SNMP Community Table Settings .....	49
SNMP Group Table Settings .....	50
SNMP Engine ID Settings .....	51
SNMP User Table Settings .....	51
SNMP Host Table Settings .....	52
SNMP v6Host Table Settings .....	53
RMON Settings .....	54
Telnet Settings .....	54
Web Settings .....	54
Power Saving .....	55
LED State Settings .....	55
Power Saving Settings .....	55
Power Saving LED Settings .....	56
Power Saving Port Settings .....	57
<b>Chapter 4      L2 Features .....</b>	<b>58</b>
VLAN .....	58
802.1Q VLAN Settings .....	63
802.1v Protocol VLAN .....	66
GVRP .....	68
MAC-based VLAN Settings .....	69
Private VLAN Settings .....	70
PVID Auto Assign Settings .....	72
Super VLAN .....	72
Voice VLAN .....	74
VLAN Trunk Settings .....	77
Browse VLAN .....	77
Show VLAN Ports .....	78
QinQ .....	78
QinQ Settings .....	80
VLAN Translation Settings .....	81
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Settings .....	81
Spanning Tree .....	82
STP Bridge Global Settings .....	84
STP Port Settings .....	85
MST Configuration Identification .....	87
STP Instance Settings .....	87
MSTP Port Information .....	88
Link Aggregation .....	89
Port Trunking Settings .....	90
LACP Port Settings .....	91
FDB .....	92

---



---

Static FDB Settings .....	92
MAC Notification Settings.....	93
MAC Address Aging Time Settings.....	94
MAC Address Table .....	95
ARP & FDB Table.....	95
L2 Multicast Control .....	96
IGMP Snooping .....	96
MLD Snooping.....	105
Multicast VLAN .....	113
Multicast Filtering .....	119
IPv4 Multicast Filtering .....	119
IPv6 Multicast Filtering .....	121
Multicast Filtering Mode.....	124
ERPS Settings.....	124
LLDP .....	127
LLDP.....	127
LLDP-MED.....	136
NLB FDB Settings .....	139
Flex Link Settings .....	139
<b>Chapter 5      L3 Features.....</b>	<b>141</b>
IPv4 Static/Default Route Settings .....	141
IPv4 Route Table .....	141
IPv6 Static/Default Route Settings.....	142
IPv6 Route Table .....	143
<b>Chapter 6      QoS.....</b>	<b>144</b>
802.1p Settings .....	145
802.1p Default Priority Settings.....	145
802.1p User Priority Settings.....	146
802.1p Map Settings.....	147
Bandwidth Control.....	147
Bandwidth Control Settings .....	147
Queue Bandwidth Control Settings .....	149
Traffic Control Settings.....	149
DSCP .....	152
DSCP Trust Settings .....	152
DSCP Map Settings.....	152
Scheduling Settings .....	154
QoS Scheduling.....	154
QoS Scheduling Mechanism .....	155
SRED .....	156
SRED Settings.....	157
SRED Drop Counter .....	158
Queue Statistics .....	158
<b>Chapter 7      ACL.....</b>	<b>159</b>
ACL Configuration Wizard.....	159
Access Profile List.....	160
Add an Ethernet ACL Profile .....	161
Adding an IPv4 ACL Profile .....	164
Adding an IPv6 ACL Profile .....	169
Adding a Packet Content ACL Profile .....	174

---

---

CPU Access Profile List .....	177
Adding a CPU Ethernet ACL Profile .....	178
Adding a CPU IPv4 ACL Profile .....	181
Adding a CPU IPv6 ACL Profile .....	186
Adding a CPU Packet Content ACL Profile .....	189
ACL Finder .....	192
ACL Flow Meter .....	192
<b>Chapter 8 Security .....</b>	<b>196</b>
802.1X .....	196
802.1X Global Settings .....	199
802.1X Port Settings .....	200
802.1X User Settings .....	201
Guest VLAN Settings .....	202
Authenticator State .....	203
Authenticator Statistics .....	203
Authenticator Session Statistics .....	204
Authenticator Diagnostics .....	205
Initialize Port-based Port(s) .....	206
Initialize Host-based Port(s) .....	207
Reauthenticate Port-based Port(s) .....	207
Reauthenticate Host-based Port(s) .....	208
RADIUS .....	208
Authentication RADIUS Server Settings .....	208
RADIUS Accounting Settings .....	209
RADIUS Authentication .....	209
RADIUS Account Client .....	211
IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) .....	212
IMPB Global Settings .....	213
IMPB Port Settings .....	213
IMPB Entry Settings .....	215
MAC Block List .....	215
DHCP Snooping .....	216
ND Snooping .....	217
MAC-based Access Control (MAC) .....	218
MAC-based Access Control Settings .....	219
MAC-based Access Control Local Settings .....	220
MAC-based Access Control Authentication State .....	221
Web-based Access Control (WAC) .....	222
WAC Global Settings .....	224
WAC User Settings .....	225
WAC Port Settings .....	225
WAC Authentication State .....	226
WAC Customize Page .....	227
Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) .....	228
JWAC Global Settings .....	228
JWAC Port Settings .....	230
JWAC User Settings .....	231
JWAC Authentication State .....	232
JWAC Customize Page Language .....	233
JWAC Customize Page .....	233

---

---

Compound Authentication .....	235
Compound Authentication Settings .....	235
Compound Authentication Guest VLAN Settings .....	236
Compound Authentication MAC Format Settings .....	237
Port Security .....	237
Port Security Settings .....	237
Port Security VLAN Settings .....	239
Port Security Entries .....	240
ARP Spoofing Prevention Settings .....	240
BPDU Attack Protection .....	241
Loopback Detection Settings .....	242
Traffic Segmentation Settings .....	244
NetBIOS Filtering Settings .....	244
DHCP Server Screening .....	245
DHCP Server Screening Port Settings .....	245
DHCP Offer Permit Entry Settings .....	246
Filter DHCPv6 Server .....	247
Filter ICMPv6 .....	247
Access Authentication Control .....	248
Enable Admin .....	249
Authentication Policy Settings .....	250
Application Authentication Settings .....	251
Authentication Server Group Settings .....	251
Authentication Server Settings .....	253
Login Method Lists Settings .....	254
Enable Method Lists Settings .....	255
Local Enable Password Settings .....	256
SSL Settings .....	256
SSH .....	258
SSH Settings .....	259
SSH Authentication Method and Algorithm Settings .....	260
SSH User Authentication List .....	261
Trusted Host Settings .....	262
Safeguard Engine Settings .....	263
DoS Attack Prevention Settings .....	264
IGMP Access Control Settings .....	266
ND Spoofing Prevention Settings .....	267
<b>Chapter 9      Network Application .....</b>	<b>268</b>
DHCP .....	268
DHCP Relay .....	268
DHCP Server .....	275
DHCPv6 Server .....	283
DHCPv6 Relay .....	286
DHCP Local Relay Settings .....	289
DHCP Local Relay Option 82 Settings .....	290
DHCPv6 Local Relay Settings .....	290
DNS Resolver .....	291
DNS Resolver Global Settings .....	291
DNS Resolver Static Name Server Settings .....	291
DNS Resolver Dynamic Name Server Table .....	292

---

---

DNS Resolver Static Host Name Settings.....	292
DNS Resolver Dynamic Host Name Table.....	293
PPPoE Circuit ID Insertion Settings.....	293
RCP Server Settings.....	294
SMTP Settings.....	294
SNTP.....	296
SNTP Settings.....	296
Time Zone Settings.....	296
Flash File System Settings.....	298
<b>Chapter 10 OAM.....</b>	<b>300</b>
CFM.....	300
CFM Settings.....	300
CFM Port Settings.....	306
CFM MIPCCM Table.....	307
CFM Loopback Settings.....	307
CFM Linktrace Settings.....	308
CFM Packet Counter.....	309
CFM Fault Table.....	311
CFM MP Table.....	312
Ethernet OAM.....	312
Ethernet OAM Settings.....	312
Ethernet OAM Configuration Settings.....	313
Ethernet OAM Event Log.....	314
Ethernet OAM Statistics.....	315
DULD Settings.....	316
Cable Diagnostics.....	317
<b>Chapter 11 Monitoring.....</b>	<b>319</b>
Utilization.....	319
CPU Utilization.....	319
DRAM & Flash Utilization.....	319
Port Utilization.....	320
Statistics.....	320
Port Statistics.....	321
Packet Size.....	328
Historical Counter & Utilization.....	330
Mirror.....	331
Port Mirror Settings.....	331
RSPAN Settings.....	332
Ping Test.....	333
Trace Route.....	335
Peripheral.....	336
Device Environment.....	336
External Alarm Settings.....	337
<b>Chapter 12 Save and Tools.....</b>	<b>338</b>
Save Configuration / Log.....	338
Download firmware.....	338
Download Firmware From TFTP.....	338
Download Firmware From FTP.....	339
Download Firmware From HTTP.....	340
Download Firmware from RCP.....	340

---

---

Upload Firmware .....	341
Upload Firmware To TFTP .....	341
Upload Firmware To FTP .....	341
Upload Firmware To HTTP.....	342
Upload Firmware to RCP.....	342
Download Configuration.....	343
Download Configuration From TFTP.....	343
Download Configuration From FTP .....	344
Download Configuration From HTTP .....	344
Download Configuration from RCP .....	345
Upload Configuration .....	345
Upload Configuration To TFTP.....	346
Upload Configuration To FTP.....	346
Upload Configuration To HTTP .....	347
Upload Configuration to RCP .....	348
Upload Log File .....	349
Upload Log To TFTP .....	349
Upload Log To FTP .....	349
Upload Log To HTTP.....	350
Upload Log to RCP.....	351
Reset .....	351
Reboot System.....	352
<b>Appendix A Password Recovery Procedure.....</b>	<b>354</b>
<b>Appendix B System Log Entries .....</b>	<b>355</b>
<b>Appendix C Trap Log Entries .....</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>Appendix D RADIUS Attributes Assignment .....</b>	<b>376</b>

## Intended Readers

### *Typographical Conventions* *Notes, Notices and Cautions*

The **DGS-3000 Series Web UI Reference Guide** contains information for setup and management of the Switch. This manual is intended for network managers familiar with network management concepts and terminology.

## Typographical Conventions

Convention	Description
[ ]	In a command line, square brackets indicate an optional entry. For example: [copy filename] means that optionally you can type copy followed by the name of the file. Do not type the brackets.
<b>Bold font</b>	Indicates a button, a toolbar icon, menu, or menu item. For example: Open the <b>File</b> menu and choose <b>Cancel</b> . Used for emphasis. May also indicate system messages or prompts appearing on screen. For example: <b>You have mail</b> . <b>Bold font</b> is also used to represent filenames, program names and commands. For example: <b>use the copy command</b> .
Boldface Typewriter Font	Indicates commands and responses to prompts that must be typed exactly as printed in the manual.
Initial capital letter	Indicates a window name. Names of keys on the keyboard have initial capitals. For example: Click Enter.
<b>Menu Name &gt; Menu Option</b>	<b>Menu Name &gt; Menu Option</b> Indicates the menu structure. <b>Device &gt; Port &gt; Port Properties</b> means the Port Properties menu option under the Port menu option that is located under the Device menu.

## Notes, Notices and Cautions



A **NOTE** indicates important information that helps make better use of the device.



A **NOTICE** indicates either potential damage to hardware or loss of data and tells how to avoid the problem.



A **CAUTION** indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

# Chapter 1 Web-based Switch Configuration

## *Introduction*

### *Login to the Web Manager*

### *Web-based User Interface*

### *Web Pages*

## Introduction

Most software functions of the DGS-3000 Series switches can be managed, configured and monitored via the embedded web-based (HTML) interface. Manage the Switch from remote stations anywhere on the network through a standard browser. The browser acts as a universal access tool and can communicate directly with the Switch using the HTTP protocol.

## Login to the Web Manager

To begin managing the Switch, simply run the browser installed on your computer and point it to the IP address you have defined for the device. The URL in the address bar should read something like: `http://123.123.123.123`, where the numbers 123 represent the IP address of the Switch.



**NOTE:** The factory default IP address is 10.90.90.90.

This opens the management module's user authentication window, as seen below.



**Figure 1-1 Enter Network Password window**

Leave both the **User Name** field and the **Password** field blank and click **OK**. This will open the Web-based user interface. The Switch management features available in the web-based manager are explained below.

# Web-based User Interface

The user interface provides access to various Switch configuration and management windows, allows you to view performance statistics, and permits you to graphically monitor the system status.

## Areas of the User Interface

The figure below shows the user interface. Three distinct areas divide the user interface, as described in the table.

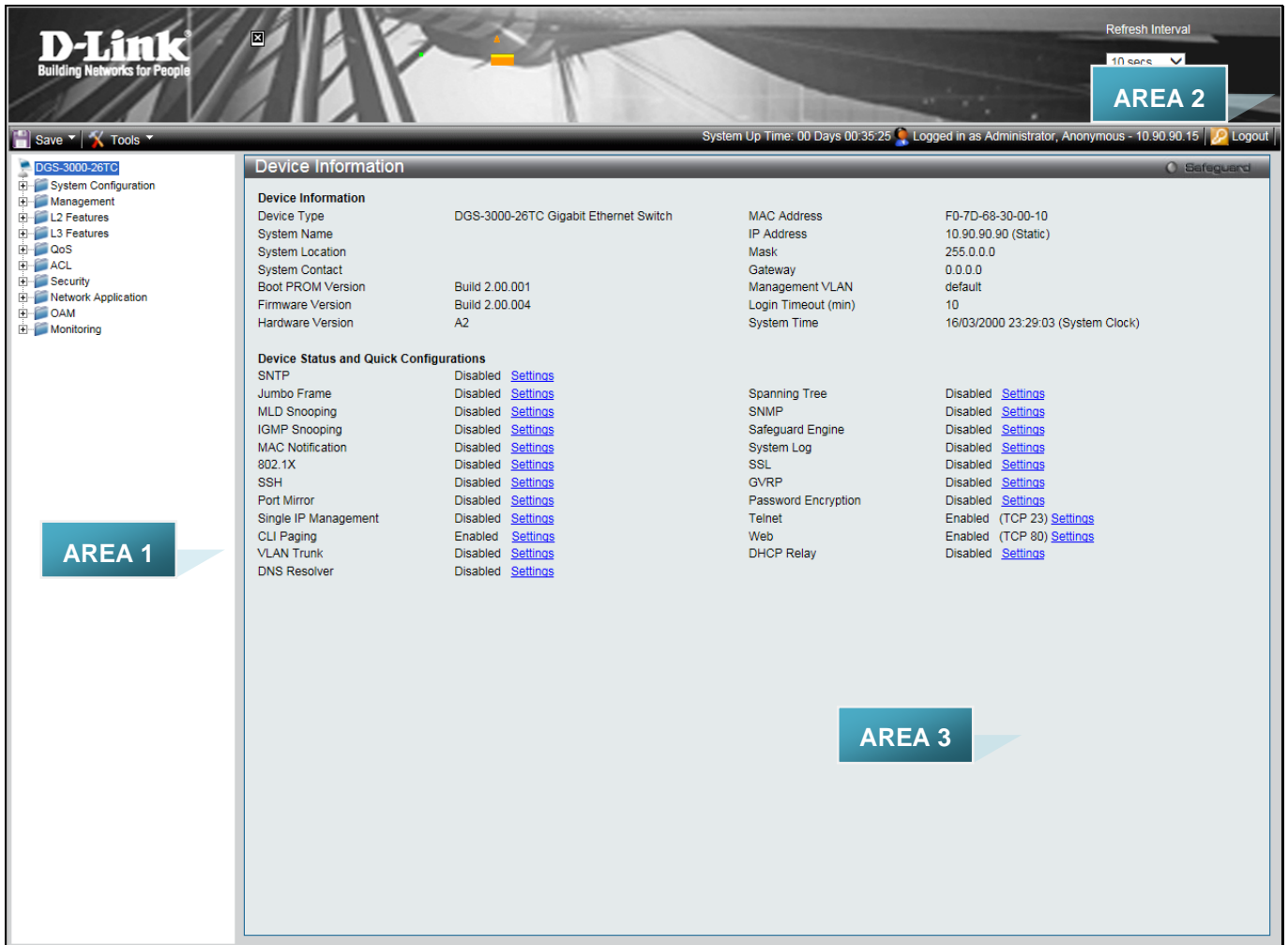


Figure 1-2 Main Web-Manager page

Area Number	Function
Area 1	Select the menu or window to display. Open folders and click the hyperlinked menu buttons and subfolders contained within them to display menus. Click the D-Link logo to go to the D-Link website.
Area 2	Presents a graphical near real-time image of the front panel of the Switch. This area displays the Switch's ports, console and management port, showing port activity. Some management functions, including save, reboot, download and upload are accessible here.
Area 3	Presents switch information based on user selection and the entry of configuration data.



## Web Pages

When connecting to the management mode of the Switch with a web browser, a login screen is displayed. Enter a user name and password to access the Switch's management mode.

Below is a list of the main folders available in the Web interface:

**System Configuration** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Switch's configuration.

**Management** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Switch's management.

**L2 Features** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Layer 2 functionality of the Switch.

**L3 Features** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Layer 3 functionality of the Switch.

**QoS** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Quality of Service functionality of the Switch.

**ACL** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Access Control List functionality of the Switch.

**Security** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Switch's security.

**Network Application** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding network applications handled by the Switch.

**OAM** - In this section the user will be able to configure features regarding the Switch's operations, administration and maintenance (OAM).

**Monitoring** - In this section the user will be able to monitor the Switch's configuration and statistics.



**NOTE:** Be sure to configure the user name and password in the User Accounts menu before connecting the Switch to the greater network.

## Chapter 2 System Configuration

[Device Information](#)  
[System Information Settings](#)  
[Port Configuration](#)  
[Serial Port Settings](#)  
[Warning Temperature Settings](#)  
[System Log configuration](#)  
[Time Range Settings](#)  
[Time Settings](#)  
[User Accounts Settings](#)  
[Command Logging Settings](#)

### Device Information

This window contains the main settings for all the major functions for the Switch. It appears automatically when you log on to the Switch. To return to the Device Information window after viewing other windows, click the **DGS-3000 Series** link.

The Device Information window shows the Switch's MAC Address (assigned by the factory and unchangeable), the Boot PROM Version, Firmware Version, Hardware Version, and many other important types of information. This is helpful to keep track of PROM and firmware updates and to obtain the Switch's MAC address for entry into another network device's address table, if necessary. In addition, this window displays the status of functions on the Switch to quickly assess their current global status.

Many functions are hyper-linked for easy access to enable quick configuration from this window.

Device Information			
<b>Device Information</b>			
Device Type	DGS-3000-26TC Gigabit Ethernet Switch	MAC Address	F0-7D-68-30-00-10
System Name		IP Address	10.90.90.90 (Static)
System Location		Mask	255.0.0.0
System Contact		Gateway	0.0.0.0
Boot PROM Version	Build 2.00.001	Management VLAN	default
Firmware Version	Build 2.00.004	Login Timeout (min)	10
Hardware Version	A2	System Time	16/03/2000 23:29:03 (System Clock)
<b>Device Status and Quick Configurations</b>			
SNTP	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Jumbo Frame	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
MLD Snooping	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
IGMP Snooping	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
MAC Notification	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
802.1X	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
SSH	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Port Mirror	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Single IP Management	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
CLI Paging	Enabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
VLAN Trunk	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
DNS Resolver	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Spanning Tree	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
SNMP	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Safeguard Engine	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
System Log	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
SSL	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
GVRP	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Password Encryption	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Telnet	Enabled (TCP 23)	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
Web	Enabled (TCP 80)	<a href="#">Settings</a>	
DHCP Relay	Disabled	<a href="#">Settings</a>	

Figure 2-1 Device Information window

Click the [Settings](#) link to navigate to the appropriate feature page for configuration.

### System Information Settings

The user can enter a **System Name**, **System Location**, and **System Contact** to aid in defining the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > System Information Settings**, as show below:

System Information Settings	
MAC Address	F0-7D-68-30-00-10
Firmware Version	Build 2.00.004
Hardware Version	A2
System Name	<input type="text"/>
System Location	<input type="text"/>
System Contact	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>	

Figure 2-2 System Information Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>System Name</b>	Enter a system name for the Switch, if so desired. This name will identify it in the Switch network.
<b>System Location</b>	Enter the location of the Switch, if so desired.
<b>System Contact</b>	Enter a contact name for the Switch, if so desired.

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.

## Port Configuration

### DDM

This folder contains windows that perform Digital Diagnostic Monitoring (DDM) functions on the Switch. There are windows that allow the user to view the digital diagnostic monitoring status of SFP modules inserting to the Switch and to configure alarm settings, warning settings, temperature threshold settings, voltage threshold settings, bias current threshold settings, Tx power threshold settings, and Rx power threshold settings.

### DDM Settings

The window is used to configure the action that will occur for specific ports when an exceeding alarm threshold or warning threshold event is encountered.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM Settings**, as show below:

**DDM Settings**
Safeguard

Trap State  Enabled  Disabled

Log State  Enabled  Disabled

Power Unit  mW  dBm Apply

---

From Port  To Port  Reload Threshold

---

From Port  To Port  State  Shutdown  Apply

Port	DDM State	Shutdown
21	Enabled	None
22	Enabled	None
23	Enabled	None
24	Enabled	None
25	Enabled	None
26	Enabled	None

Note: The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s).

Figure 2-3 DDM Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Trap State</b>	Specify whether to send the trap, when the operating parameter exceeds the alarm or warning threshold.
<b>Log State</b>	Specify whether to send the log, when the operating parameter exceeds the alarm or warning threshold.
<b>Power Unit</b>	Specify the global unit of DDM TX and RX power as mW or dBm.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the DDM state.
<b>Shutdown</b>	Specify whether to shut down the port, when the operating parameter exceeds the <i>Alarm</i> or <i>Warning</i> threshold. <i>Alarm</i> - Shutdown the port when the configured alarm threshold range is exceeded. <i>Warning</i> - Shutdown the port when the configured warning threshold range is exceeded. <i>None</i> - The port will never shutdown regardless if the threshold ranges are exceeded or not. This is the default.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Reload Threshold** button to reload the default threshold configuration of the specified ports on the Switch.

## DDM Temperature Threshold Settings

This window is used to configure the DDM Temperature Threshold Settings for specific ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM Temperature Threshold Settings**, as show below:

**DDM Temperature Threshold Settings**
Safeguard

From Port	To Port	High Alarm (-128-127.996)	Low Alarm (-128-127.996)	High Warning (-128-127.996)	Low Warning (-128-127.996)	
21	21	<input type="text"/> Celsius	<input type="text"/> Celsius	<input type="text"/> Celsius	<input type="text"/> Celsius	<input type="button" value="Apply"/>

Port	High Alarm (Celsius)	Low Alarm (Celsius)	High Warning (Celsius)	Low Warning (Celsius)
21	-	-	-	-
22	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-
24	-	-	-	-
25	-	-	-	-
26	-	-	-	-

Note: The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s). (A) means that the threshold is administratively configured.

Figure 2-4 DDM Temperature Threshold Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>High Alarm (-128-127.996)</b>	This is the highest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>Low Alarm (-128-127.996)</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>High Warning (-128-127.996)</b>	This is the highest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.
<b>Low Warning (-128-127.996)</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DDM Voltage Threshold Settings

This window is used to configure the DDM Voltage Threshold Settings for specific ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM Voltage Threshold Settings**, as show below:

**DDM Voltage Threshold Settings**
Safeguard

From Port	To Port	High Alarm (0-6.5535)	Low Alarm (0-6.5535)	High Warning (0-6.5535)	Low Warning (0-6.5535)	
21	21	<input type="text"/> Volt	<input type="text"/> Volt	<input type="text"/> Volt	<input type="text"/> Volt	<input type="button" value="Apply"/>

Port	High Alarm (Volt)	Low Alarm (Volt)	High Warning (Volt)	Low Warning (Volt)
21	-	-	-	-
22	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-
24	-	-	-	-
25	-	-	-	-
26	-	-	-	-

Note: The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s). (A) means that the threshold is administratively configured.

Figure 2-5 DDM Voltage Threshold Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>High Alarm (0-6.5535)</b>	This is the highest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>Low Alarm (0-6.5535)</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>High Warning (0-6.5535)</b>	This is the highest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.
<b>Low Warning (0-6.5535)</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DDM Bias Current Threshold Settings

This window is used to configure the threshold of the bias current for specific ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM Bias Current Threshold Settings**, as show below:

**DDM Bias Current Threshold Settings**
Safeguard

From Port	To Port	High Alarm (0-131)	Low Alarm (0-131)	High Warning (0-131)	Low Warning (0-131)	
21	21	<input type="text"/> mA	<input type="text"/> mA	<input type="text"/> mA	<input type="text"/> mA	<input type="button" value="Apply"/>

Port	High Alarm (mA)	Low Alarm (mA)	High Warning (mA)	Low Warning (mA)
21	-	-	-	-
22	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-
24	-	-	-	-
25	-	-	-	-
26	-	-	-	-

Note: The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s). (A) means that the threshold is administratively configured.

Figure 2-6 DDM Bias Current Threshold Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>High Alarm (0-131)</b>	This is the highest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>Low Alarm (0-131)</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>High Warning (0-131)</b>	This is the highest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.
<b>Low Warning (0-131)</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DDM TX Power Threshold Settings

This window is used to configure the threshold of Tx power for specific ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM TX Power Threshold Settings**, as show below:

**DDM TX Power Threshold Settings**
Safeguard

From Port	To Port	High Alarm (0-6.5535)	Low Alarm (0-6.5535)	High Warning (0-6.5535)	Low Warning (0-6.5535)	Apply
21	21	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="text"/> mW	

Port	High Alarm (mW)	Low Alarm (mW)	High Warning (mW)	Low Warning (mW)
21	-	-	-	-
22	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-
24	-	-	-	-
25	-	-	-	-
26	-	-	-	-

Note: The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s). (A) means that the threshold is administratively configured.

Figure 2-7 DDM TX Power Threshold Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>High Alarm</b>	This is the highest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>Low Alarm</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>High Warning</b>	This is the highest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.
<b>Low Warning</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DDM RX Power Threshold Settings

This window is used to configure the threshold of RX power for specific ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM RX Power Threshold Settings**, as show below:



**DDM RX Power Threshold Settings**
Safeguard

From Port	To Port	High Alarm (0-6.5535)	Low Alarm (0-6.5535)	High Warning (0-6.5535)	Low Warning (0-6.5535)	
21	21	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="text"/> mW	<input type="button" value="Apply"/>

Port	High Alarm (mW)	Low Alarm (mW)	High Warning (mW)	Low Warning (mW)
21	-	-	-	-
22	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-
24	-	-	-	-
25	-	-	-	-
26	-	-	-	-

**Note:** The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s). (A) means that the threshold is administratively configured.

Figure 2-8 DDM RX Power Threshold Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>High Alarm</b>	This is the highest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>Low Alarm</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the alarm. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the alarm will be taken.
<b>High Warning</b>	This is the highest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter rises above this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.
<b>Low Warning</b>	This is the lowest threshold for the warning. When the operating parameter falls below this value, action associated with the warning will be taken.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DDM Status Table

This window is used to display the current operating digital diagnostic monitoring parameters and their values on the SFP module for specified ports.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > DDM > DDM Status Table**, as show below:

DDM Status Table					
Port	Temperature (Celsius)	Voltage (V)	Bias Current (mA)	TX Power (mW)	RX Power (mW)
21	-	-	-	-	-
22	-	-	-	-	-
23	-	-	-	-	-
24	-	-	-	-	-
25	-	-	-	-	-
26	-	-	-	-	-

**Note:** The Port(s) 1-20 is(are) not SFP Port(s). (A) means that the threshold is administratively configured.

Figure 2-9 DDM Status Table window

## Port Settings

This page used to configure the details of the switch ports.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > Port Settings**, as show below:

**Port Settings** Safeguard

From Port:  To Port:  State:  Flow Control:  Address Learning:  MDIX:  Medium Type:  AutoSpeed Downgrade:

Speed/Duplex:  Capability Advertised:  10 Half  10 Full  100 Half  100 Full  1000 Full  Auto Negotiation:

Port	State	Speed/Duplex	Flow Control	Connection	MDIX	Address Learning	AutoSpeed Downgrade
01	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	1000M/Full/None	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
02	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
03	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
04	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
05	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
06	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
07	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
08	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
09	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
10	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
11	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
12	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
13	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
14	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
15	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
16	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
17	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
18	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
19	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
20	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
21 (C)	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
21 (F)	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	-	Enabled	-
22 (C)	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled
22 (F)	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	-	Enabled	-
23 (C)	Enabled	Auto	Disabled	Link Down	Auto	Enabled	Disabled

**Note:** ANE means Auto Negotiation Error.

Figure 2-10 Port Settings window

**To configure switch ports:**

1. Choose the port or sequential range of ports using the From Port and To Port drop-down menus.
2. Use the remaining drop-down menus to configure the parameters described below:

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the appropriate port range used for the configuration here.
<b>State</b>	Toggle the State field to either enable or disable a given port or group of ports.
<b>Speed/Duplex</b>	<p>Toggle the Speed/Duplex field to select the speed and full-duplex/half-duplex state of the port. <i>Auto</i> denotes auto-negotiation among 10, 100 and 1000 Mbps devices, in full- or half-duplex (except 1000 Mbps which is always full duplex). The <i>Auto</i> setting allows the port to automatically determine the fastest settings the device the port is connected to can handle, and then to use those settings. The other options are <i>10M Half</i>, <i>10M Full</i>, <i>100M Half</i>, <i>100M Full</i>, <i>1000M Full_Master</i>, and <i>1000M Full_Slave</i>. There is no automatic adjustment of port settings with any option other than <i>Auto</i>.</p> <p>The Switch allows the user to configure three types of gigabit connections; <i>1000M Full_Master</i>, and <i>1000M Full_Slave</i>. Gigabit connections only support full duplex connections and take on certain characteristics that are different from the other choices listed.</p> <p>The <i>1000M Full_Master</i> and <i>1000M Full_Slave</i> parameters refer to connections running a 1000BASE-T cable for connection between the Switch port and other device capable of a gigabit connection. The master setting (<i>1000M Full_Master</i>) will allow the port to advertise capabilities related to duplex, speed and physical layer type. The master setting will also determine the master and slave relationship between the two connected physical layers. This relationship is necessary for establishing the timing control between the two physical layers. The timing control is set on a master physical layer by a local source. The slave setting (<i>1000M Full_Slave</i>) uses loop timing, where the timing comes from a data stream received from the master. If one connection is set for <i>1000M Full_Master</i>, the other side of the connection must be set for <i>1000M Full_Slave</i>. Any other configuration will result in a link down status for both ports.</p>
<b>Flow Control</b>	Displays the flow control scheme used for the various port configurations. Ports configured for full-duplex use 802.3x flow control, half-duplex ports use backpressure flow control, and Auto ports use an automatic selection of the two. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>MDIX</b>	<p><i>Auto</i> - Select auto for auto sensing of the optimal type of cabling.</p> <p><i>Normal</i> - Select normal for normal cabling. If set to normal state, the port is in MDIX mode and can be connected to a PC NIC using a straight-through cable or a port (in MDIX mode) on another switch through a cross-over cable.</p> <p><i>Cross</i> - Select cross for cross cabling. If set to cross state, the port is in MDI mode, and can be connected to a port (in MDIX mode) on another switch through a straight cable.</p>
<b>Address Learning</b>	Enable or disable MAC address learning for the selected ports. When <i>Enabled</i> , destination and source MAC addresses are automatically listed in the forwarding table. When address learning is <i>Disabled</i> , MAC addresses must be manually entered into the forwarding table. This is sometimes done for reasons of security or efficiency. See the section on Forwarding/Filtering for information on entering MAC addresses into the forwarding table. The default setting is <i>Enabled</i> .
<b>Medium Type</b>	If configuring the Combo ports, this defines the type of transport medium to be used.
<b>AutoSpeed Downgrade</b>	Enable or disable automatically downgrading advertised speed. This function only takes effect, when <b>Speed/Duplex</b> is configured as <i>Auto</i> .
<b>Auto Negotiation</b>	Select the auto-negotiation method.

*Restart An* - Select to restart auto-negotiation process.

*Remote Fault Advertised* - When this option is selected, fault conditions will be remotely advertised when the next auto-negotiation process takes place. When selecting **Disabled**, remote fault advertisement is disabled. When selecting **Offline**, local devices that were powered off or removed from the active configuration will be advertised at the next auto-negotiation. When selecting **Link Fault**, local devices that disconnected due to link failure will be advertised at the next auto-negotiation. When selecting **ANE**, the resolution that precludes operation between local devices and link partners will be advertised at the next auto-negotiation.

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display section of this page.

## Port Description Settings

The Switch supports a port description feature where the user may name various ports.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > Port Description Settings**, as show below:

**Figure 2-11 Port Description Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

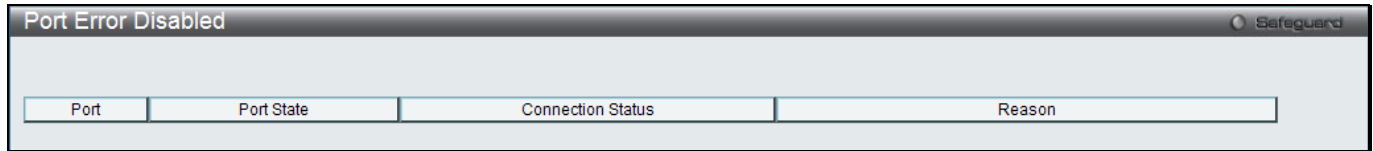
Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the appropriate port range used for the configuration here.
<b>Medium Type</b>	Specify the medium type for the selected ports. If configuring the Combo ports, the Medium Type defines the type of transport medium to be used, whether <i>Copper</i> or <i>Fiber</i> .
<b>Description</b>	Users may then enter a description for the chosen port(s).

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.

## Port Error Disabled

The following window displays the information about ports that have been disconnected by the Switch when the port is disabled by some protocols.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > Port Error Disabled**, as show below:



Port	Port State	Connection Status	Reason
------	------------	-------------------	--------

Figure 2-12 Port Error Disabled

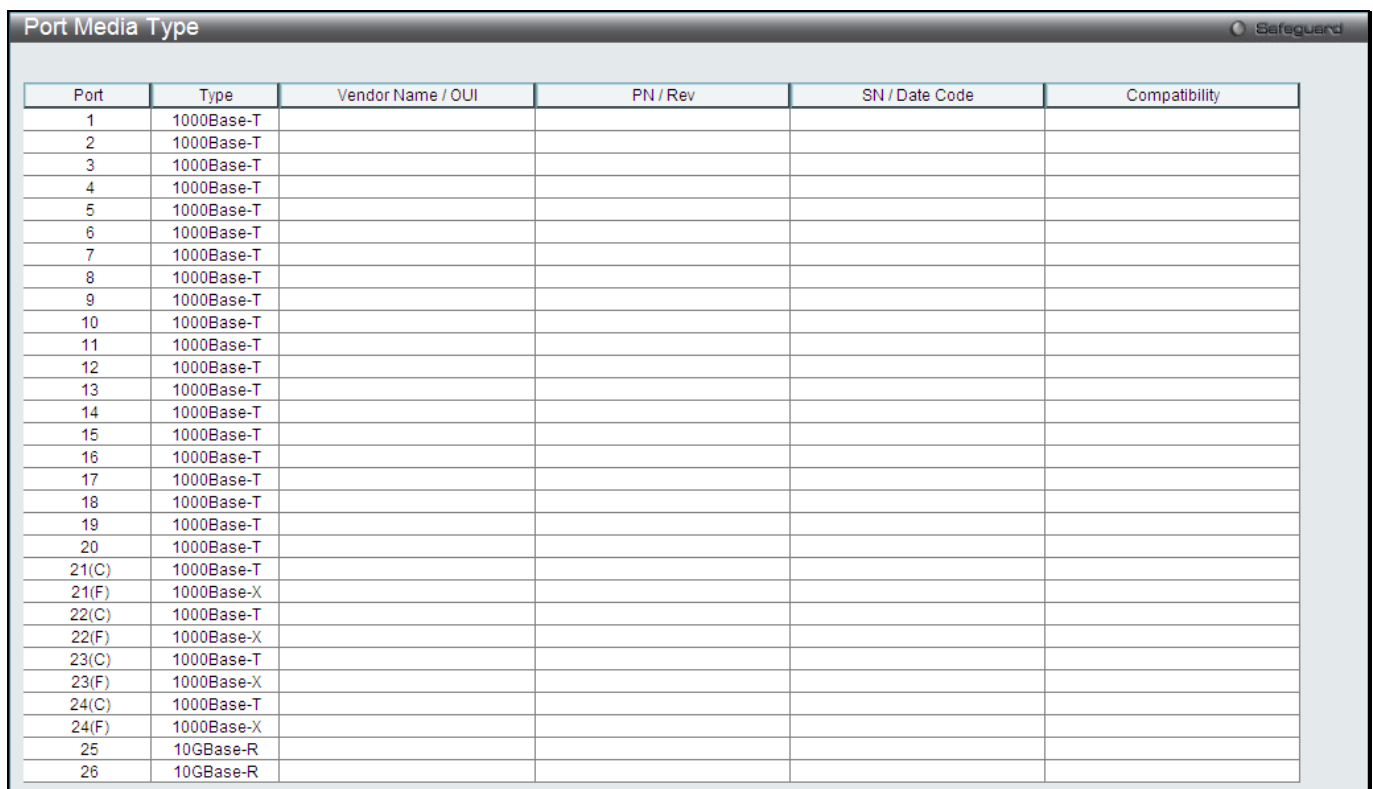
The fields that can be displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Display the port that has been error disabled.
<b>Port State</b>	Describe the current running state of the port, whether enabled or disabled.
<b>Connection Status</b>	Display the uplink status of the individual ports, whether enabled or disabled.
<b>Reason</b>	Describe the reason why the port has been error-disabled, such as it has become a shutdown port for storm control.

## Port Media Type

The following window displays the information about the port media type.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > Port Media Type**, as shown below:



Port	Type	Vendor Name / OUI	PN / Rev	SN / Date Code	Compatibility
1	1000Base-T				
2	1000Base-T				
3	1000Base-T				
4	1000Base-T				
5	1000Base-T				
6	1000Base-T				
7	1000Base-T				
8	1000Base-T				
9	1000Base-T				
10	1000Base-T				
11	1000Base-T				
12	1000Base-T				
13	1000Base-T				
14	1000Base-T				
15	1000Base-T				
16	1000Base-T				
17	1000Base-T				
18	1000Base-T				
19	1000Base-T				
20	1000Base-T				
21(C)	1000Base-T				
21(F)	1000Base-X				
22(C)	1000Base-T				
22(F)	1000Base-X				
23(C)	1000Base-T				
23(F)	1000Base-X				
24(C)	1000Base-T				
24(F)	1000Base-X				
25	10GBase-R				
26	10GBase-R				

Figure 2-13 Port Media Type window

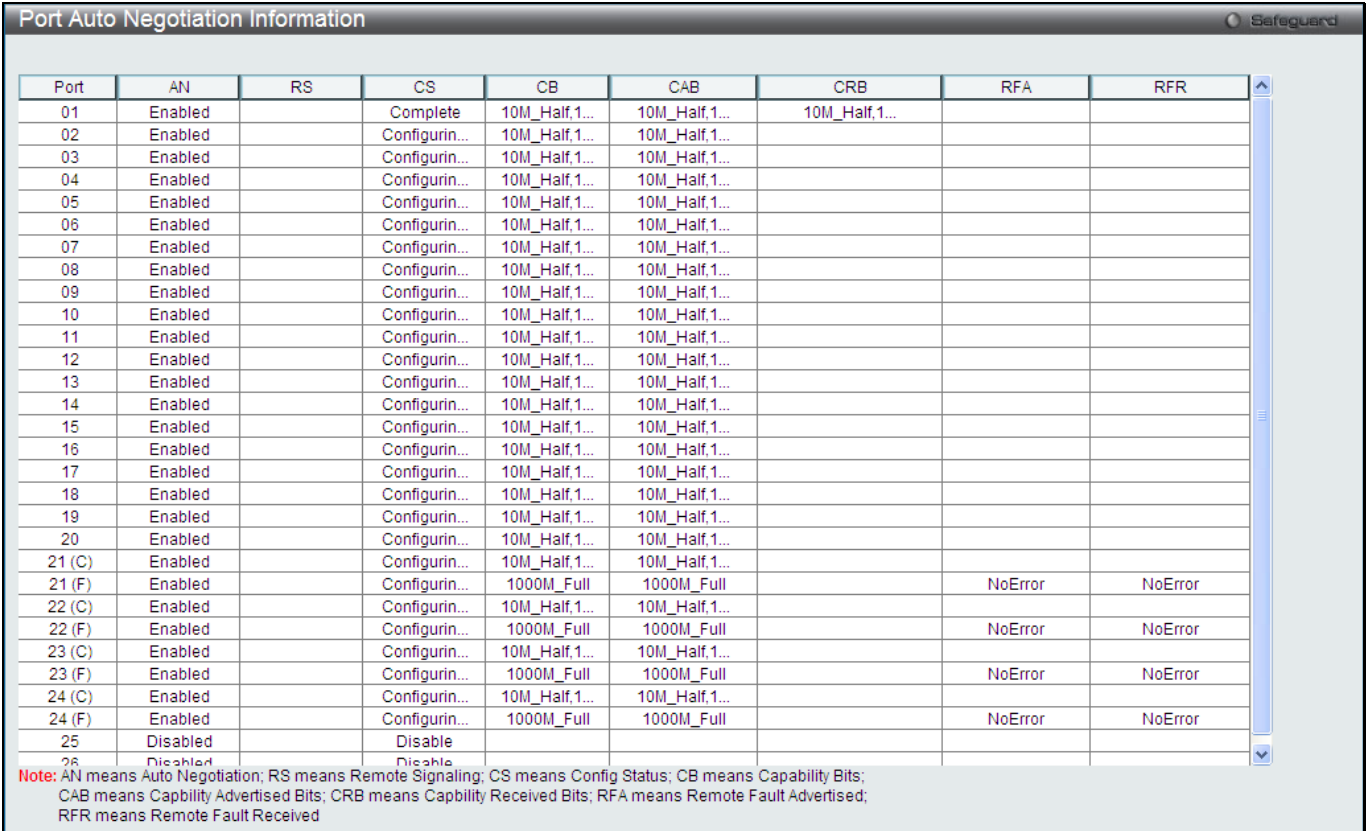
The fields that can be displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Display the port number.
Type	Display the port media type.
Vendor Name / OUI	Display the name of the SFP vendor and its IEEE company ID.
PN / Rev	Display the part number and revision level of the part number provided by the SFP vendor.
SN / Date Code	Display the serial number provided by the SFP vendor and the manufacturing date code.
Compatibility	Display the fiber type, baud rate and wavelength of the SFP.

## Port Auto Negotiation Information

The following window displays the information about port Auto-negotiation.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > Port Auto Negotiation Information**, as shown below:



The screenshot shows a window titled "Port Auto Negotiation Information" with a "Safeguard" icon in the top right. The window contains a table with the following columns: Port, AN, RS, CS, CB, CAB, CRB, RFA, and RFR. The table lists ports 01 through 26. Ports 01-20 are standard ports, while ports 21-24 are SFP ports labeled with (C) and (F). Ports 25 and 26 are disabled. The table shows various negotiation statuses and capabilities for each port.

Port	AN	RS	CS	CB	CAB	CRB	RFA	RFR
01	Enabled		Complete	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...		
02	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
03	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
04	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
05	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
06	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
07	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
08	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
09	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
10	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
11	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
12	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
13	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
14	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
15	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
16	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
17	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
18	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
19	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
20	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
21 (C)	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
21 (F)	Enabled		Configurin...	1000M_Full	1000M_Full		NoError	NoError
22 (C)	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
22 (F)	Enabled		Configurin...	1000M_Full	1000M_Full		NoError	NoError
23 (C)	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
23 (F)	Enabled		Configurin...	1000M_Full	1000M_Full		NoError	NoError
24 (C)	Enabled		Configurin...	10M_Half,1...	10M_Half,1...			
24 (F)	Enabled		Configurin...	1000M_Full	1000M_Full		NoError	NoError
25	Disabled		Disable					
26	Disabled		Disable					

**Note:** AN means Auto Negotiation; RS means Remote Signaling; CS means Config Status; CB means Capability Bits; CAB means Capability Advertised Bits; CRB means Capability Received Bits; RFA means Remote Fault Advertised; RFR means Remote Fault Received

Figure 2-14 Port Auto Negotiation Information window

## Jumbo Frame Settings

The Switch supports jumbo frames. Jumbo frames are Ethernet frames with more than 1518 bytes of payload. The Switch supports jumbo frames with a maximum frame size of up to 12228 bytes.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > Jumbo Frame Settings**, as show below:

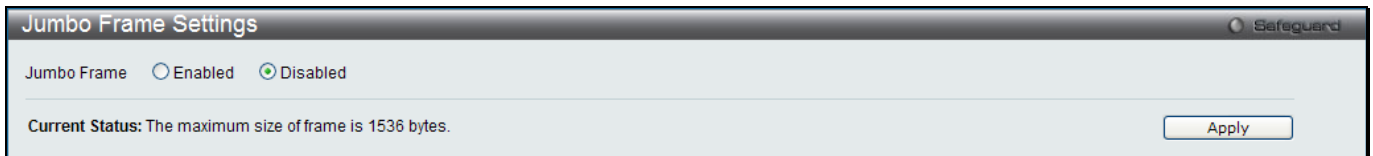


Figure 2-15 Jumbo Frame Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Jumbo Frame</b>	Use the radio buttons to enable or disable the Jumbo Frame function on the Switch. The default is Disabled. When disabled, the maximum frame size is 1536 bytes. When enabled, the maximum frame size is 12228 bytes.

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.

## EEE Settings

Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE) is defined in IEEE 802.3az. It is designed to reduce the energy consumption of a link when no packets are being sent.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Port Configuration > EEE Settings**, as shown below:

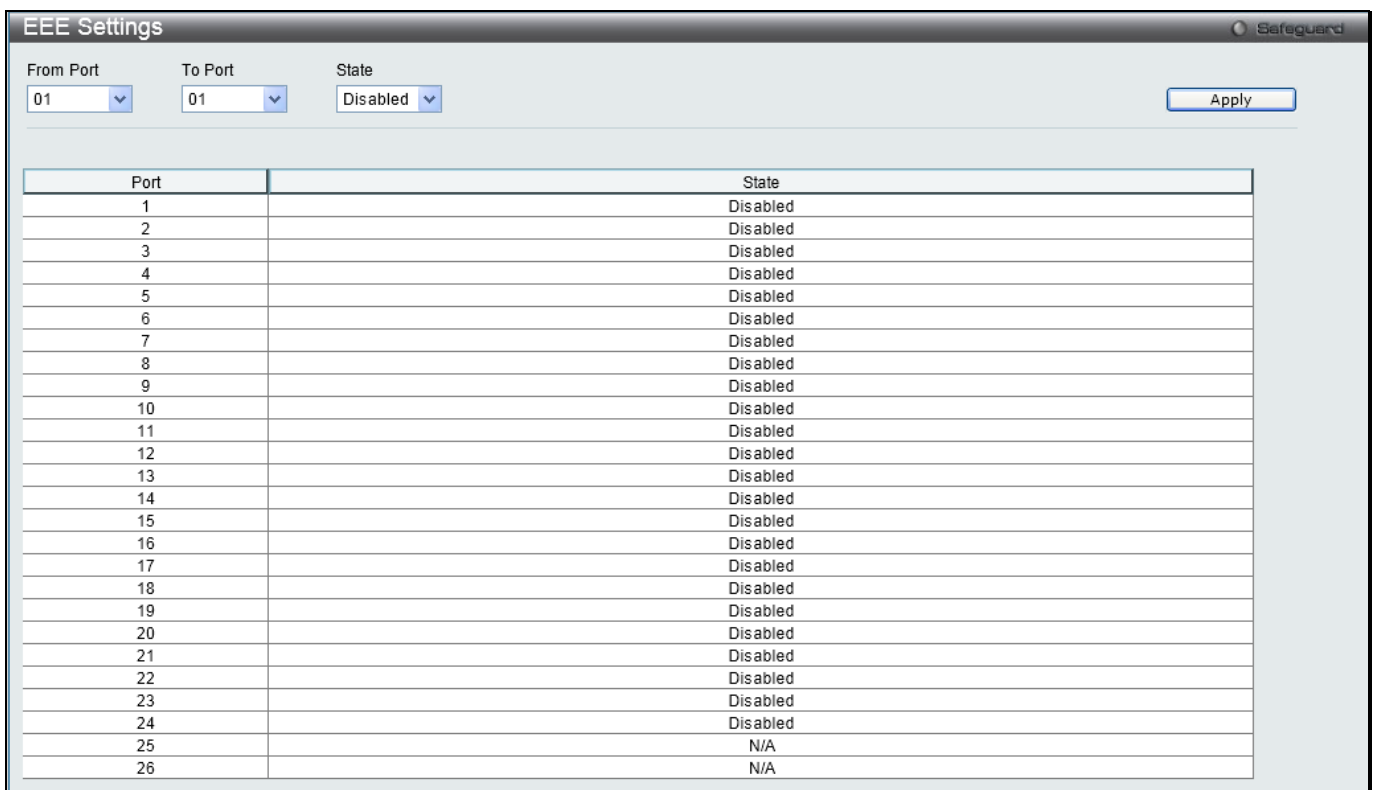


Figure 2-16 EEE Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the appropriate port range used for the configuration here.
<b>State</b>	Select to enable or disable the state of this feature here.

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.



**NOTE:** EEE and ERPS are mutually exclusive functions.

## Serial Port Settings

This window allows the user to adjust the Baud Rate and the Auto Logout values.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Serial Port Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-17 Serial Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Baud Rate</b>	Specify the baud rate for the serial port on the Switch. There are four possible baud rates to choose from, <i>9600</i> , <i>19200</i> , <i>38400</i> and <i>115200</i> . For a connection to the Switch using the console port, the baud rate must be set to <i>115200</i> , which is the default setting.
<b>Auto Logout</b>	Select the logout time used for the console interface. This automatically logs the user out after an idle period of time, as defined. Choose from the following options: <i>2</i> , <i>5</i> , <i>10</i> , <i>15 minutes</i> or <i>Never</i> . The default setting is <i>10 minutes</i> .
<b>Data Bits</b>	Display the data bits used for the serial port connection.
<b>Parity Bits</b>	Display the parity bits used for the serial port connection.
<b>Stop Bits</b>	Display the stop bits used for the serial port connection.

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.

## Warning Temperature Settings

This window allows the user to configure the system warning temperature parameters.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Warning Temperature Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-18 Warning Temperature Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Traps State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the traps state option of the warning temperature setting.



<b>Log State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the log state option of the warning temperature setting.
<b>High Threshold (-500-500)</b>	Enter the high threshold value of the warning temperature setting.
<b>Low Threshold (-500-500)</b>	Enter the low threshold value of the warning temperature setting.

Click the **Apply** button to implement changes made.

## System Log Configuration

### System Log Settings

The Switch allows users to choose a method for which to save the switch log to the flash memory of the Switch. To view the following window, click **System Configuration > System Log Configuration > System Log Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-19 System Log Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>System Log</b>	Use the radio buttons to enable or disable the system log settings.
<b>Save Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the method for saving the switch log to the flash memory. The user has three options: <i>On Demand</i> – Users who choose this method will only save log files when they manually tell the Switch to do so, either using the Save Log link in the Save folder. <i>Time Interval</i> – Users who choose this method can configure a time interval by which the Switch will save the log files, in the box adjacent to this configuration field. The user may set a time between 1 and 65535 minutes. <i>Log Trigger</i> – Users who choose this method will have log files saved to the Switch every time a log event occurs on the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

### System Log Server Settings

The Switch can send System log messages to up to four designated servers using the System Log Server. To view the following window, click **System Configuration > System Log Configuration > System Log Server Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-20 System Log Server Settings

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Server ID</b>	Syslog server settings index (1 to 4).
<b>Severity</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the higher level of messages that will be sent. All messages which level is higher than selecting level will be sent. The options are <i>Emergency (0)</i> , <i>Alert (1)</i> , <i>Critical (2)</i> , <i>Error (3)</i> , <i>Warning (4)</i> , <i>Notice (5)</i> , <i>Informational (6)</i> and <i>Debug (7)</i> .
<b>Server IPv4 Address</b>	The IPv4 address of the Syslog server.
<b>Server IPv6 Address</b>	The IPv6 address of the Syslog server.
<b>Facility</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select <i>Local 0</i> , <i>Local 1</i> , <i>Local 2</i> , <i>Local 3</i> , <i>Local 4</i> , <i>Local 5</i> , <i>Local 6</i> , or <i>Local 7</i> .
<b>UDP Port (514 or 6000-65535)</b>	Type the UDP port number used for sending Syslog messages. The default is 514.
<b>Status</b>	Choose <i>Enabled</i> or <i>Disabled</i> to activate or deactivate.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all servers configured.

## System Log

Users can view and delete the local history log as compiled by the Switch's management agent.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > System Log Configuration > System Log**, as show below:

Figure 2-21 System Log window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Log Type</b>	In the drop-down menu the user can select the log type that will be displayed. <i>Severity</i> - When selecting <i>Severity</i> from the drop-down menu, a secondary tick must be made. Secondary ticks are <b>Emergency, Alert, Critical, Error, Warning, Notice, Informational</b> and <b>Debug</b> . To view all information in the log, simply tick the <b>All</b> check box. <i>Module List</i> - When selecting <i>Module List</i> , the module name must be manually entered. Available modules are MSTP, ERROR_LOG and ERPS. <i>Attack Log</i> - When selecting <i>Attack Log</i> all attacks will be listed.
<b>Index</b>	A counter incremented whenever an entry to the Switch's history log is made. The table displays the last entry (highest sequence number) first.
<b>Time</b>	Display the time in days, hours, minutes, and seconds.
<b>Level</b>	Display the level of the log entry.
<b>Log Text</b>	Display text describing the event that triggered the history log entry.

Click the **Find** button to display the log in the display section according to the selection made.

Click the **Clear Log** button to clear the entries from the log in the display section.

Click the **Clear Attack Log** button to clear the entries from the attack log in the display section.

The Switch can record event information in its own log. Click **Go** to go to the next page of the **System Log** window.

## System Log & Trap Settings

The Switch allows users to configure the system log source IP interface addresses here.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > System Log Configuration > System Log & Trap Settings**, as show below:

The screenshot shows a web interface window titled "System Log & Trap Settings". It features a "Safeguard" icon in the top right corner. The window is divided into two main sections. The first section, "System Log Source IP Interface Settings", contains three input fields for "Interface Name", "IPv4 Address", and "IPv6 Address", followed by "Apply" and "Clear" buttons. The second section, "Trap Source IP Interface Settings", also contains three input fields for "Interface Name", "IPv4 Address", and "IPv6 Address", followed by "Apply" and "Clear" buttons.

Figure 2-22 System Log & Trap Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the IP interface name used.
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	Enter the IPv4 address used.
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the IPv6 address used.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

## System Severity Settings

The Switch can be configured to allow alerts be logged or sent as a trap to an SNMP agent. The level at which the alert triggers either a log entry or a trap message can be set as well. Use the System Severity Settings window to set the criteria for alerts. The current settings are displayed below the System Severity Table.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > System Log Configuration > System Severity Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-23 System Severity Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>System Severity</b>	Choose how the alerts are used from the drop-down menu. Select <i>Log</i> to send the alert of the Severity Type configured to the Switch's log for analysis. Choose <i>Trap</i> to send it to an SNMP agent for analysis, or select <i>All</i> to send the chosen alert type to an SNMP agent and the Switch's log for analysis.
<b>Severity Level</b>	This drop-down menu allows you to select the level of messages that will be sent. The options are <i>Emergency (0)</i> , <i>Alert (1)</i> , <i>Critical (2)</i> , <i>Error (3)</i> , <i>Warning (4)</i> , <i>Notice (5)</i> , <i>Information (6)</i> and <i>Debug (7)</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Time Range Settings

Time range is a time period that the respective function will take an effect on, such as ACL. For example, the administrator can configure the time-based ACL to allow users to surf the Internet on every Saturday and every Sunday, meanwhile to deny users to surf the Internet on weekdays.

The user may enter up to 64 time range entries on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Time Range Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-24 Time Range Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Range Name</b>	Enter a name of no more than 32 alphanumeric characters that will be used to identify this time range on the Switch. This range name will be used in the Access Profile table to identify the access profile and associated rule to be enabled during this time range.
<b>Hours (HH MM)</b>	This parameter is used to set the time in the day that this time range is to be enabled using

<b>SS)</b>	the following parameters: <i>Start Time</i> - Use this parameter to identify the starting time of the time range, in hours, minutes and seconds, based on the 24-hour time system. <i>End Time</i> - Use this parameter to identify the ending time of the time range, in hours, minutes and seconds, based on the 24-hour time system.
<b>Weekdays</b>	Use the check boxes to select the corresponding days of the week that this time range is to be enabled. Tick the Select All Days check box to configure this time range for every day of the week.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made. Current configured entries will be displayed in the table in the bottom half of the window shown above.

## Time Settings

Users can configure the time settings for the Switch.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > Time Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-25 Time Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Date (DD / MM / YYYY)</b>	Enter the current day, month, and year to update the system clock.
<b>Time (HH:MM:SS)</b>	Enter the current time in hours, minutes, and seconds.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## User Accounts Settings

The Switch allows the control of user privileges.

To view the following window, click **System Configuration > User Accounts Settings**, as show below:

Figure 2-26 User Accounts Settings window

To add a new user, type in a User Name and New Password and retype the same password in the Confirm New Password field. Choose the level of privilege (Admin, Operator, Power User or User) from the Access Right drop-down menu.

Management	Admin	Operator	Power User	User
Configuration	Read/Write	Read/Write–partly	Read/Write–partly	No
Network Monitoring	Read/Write	Read/Write	Read-only	Read-only
Community Strings and Trap Stations	Read/Write	Read-only	Read-only	Read-only
Update Firmware and Configuration Files	Read/Write	Read/Write	No	No
System Utilities	Read/Write	Read-only	Read-only	Read-only
Factory Reset	Read/Write	No	No	No
User Account Management				
Add/Update/Delete User Accounts	Read/Write	No	No	No
View User Accounts	Read/Write	No	No	No

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>User Name</b>	Enter a new user name for the Switch.
<b>Password</b>	Enter a new password for the Switch.
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Re-type in a new password for the Switch.
<b>Access Right</b>	Specify the access right for this user.
<b>Encryption</b>	Specify that encryption will be applied to this account. Option to choose from are <i>Plain Text</i> , and <i>SHA-1</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTICE:** In case of lost passwords or password corruption, refer to Appendix A Password Recovery Procedure, which will guide you through the steps necessary to resolve this issue.



**NOTE:** The username and password should be less than 16 characters.

## Command Logging Settings

This window is used to enable or disable the command logging settings.

To view this window, click **System Configuration > Command Logging Settings**, as shown below:

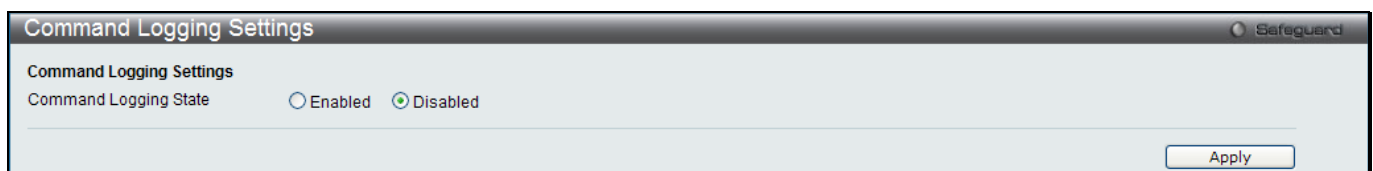


Figure 2-27 Command Logging Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Command Logging State</b>	Use the radio buttons to enable or disable the function.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** When the switch is under the booting procedure, all configuration commands will not be logged. When the user uses AAA authentication to logged in, the user name should not be changed if the user has used the Enable Admin function to replace its privilege.

## Chapter 3 Management

[ARP](#)  
[Gratuitous ARP](#)  
[IPv6 Neighbor Settings](#)  
[IP Interface](#)  
[Management Settings](#)  
[Session Table](#)  
[Single IP Management](#)  
[SNMP Settings](#)  
[Telnet Settings](#)  
[Web Settings](#)  
[Power Saving](#)

### ARP

#### Static ARP Settings

The Address Resolution Protocol is a TCP/IP protocol that converts IP addresses into physical addresses. This table allows network managers to view, define, modify, and delete ARP information for specific devices. Static entries can be defined in the ARP table. When static entries are defined, a permanent entry is entered and is used to translate IP addresses to MAC addresses.

To view the following window, click **Management > ARP > Static ARP Settings**, as show below:

Interface Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Type	Edit	Delete
System	10.0.0.0	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF	Local/Broadcast	Edit	Delete
System	10.90.90.90	00-01-02-03-04-00	Local	Edit	Delete
System	10.255.255.255	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF	Local/Broadcast	Edit	Delete

Figure 3-1 Static ARP Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>ARP Aging Time (0-65535)</b>	The ARP entry age-out time, in minutes. The default is 20 minutes.
<b>IP Address</b>	The IP address of the ARP entry.
<b>MAC Address</b>	The MAC address of the ARP entry.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

### ARP Table

Users can display current ARP entries on the Switch.



To view the following window, click **Management > ARP > ARP Table**, as show below:

Interface Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Type
System	10.0.0.0	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF	Local/Broadcast
System	10.90.90.10	00-0C-6E-AA-B9-C0	Dynamic
System	10.90.90.90	00-01-02-03-04-00	Local
System	10.255.255.255	FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF	Local/Broadcast

Figure 3-2 ARP Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter or view the Interface name used.
<b>IP Address</b>	Enter or view the IP Address used.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter or view the MAC Address used.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Show Static** button to display only the static entries in the display table.

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all the entries listed in the table.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## Gratuitous ARP

### Gratuitous ARP Global Settings

The user can enable or disable the gratuitous ARP global settings here.

To view the following window, click **Management > Gratuitous ARP > Gratuitous ARP Global Settings**, as show below:

Figure 3-3 Gratuitous ARP Global Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Send On IP Interface Status Up</b>	The command is used to enable/disable the sending of gratuitous ARP request packets while the IPIF interface is up. This is used to automatically announce the interface's IP address to other nodes. By default, the state is <b>Enabled</b> , and only one gratuitous ARP packet will be broadcast.
<b>Send On Duplicate IP Detected</b>	The command is used to enable/disable the sending of gratuitous ARP request packet while a duplicate IP is detected. By default, the state is <b>Enabled</b> . For this command, the duplicate IP detected means that the system received an ARP request packet that is sent by an IP address that match the system's own IP address. In this

	case, the system knows that somebody out there uses an IP address that is conflict with the system. In order to reclaim the correct host of this IP address, the system can send out the gratuitous ARP request packets for this duplicate IP address.
<b>Gratuitous ARP Learning</b>	Normally, the system will only learn the ARP reply packet or a normal ARP request packet that asks for the MAC address that corresponds to the system's IP address. The command is used to enable/disable learning of ARP entry in ARP cache based on the received gratuitous ARP packet. The gratuitous ARP packet is sent by a source IP address that is identical to the IP that the packet is queries for. By default, the state is <b>Enabled</b> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** With the gratuitous ARP learning, the system will not learn new entry but only do the update on the ARP table based on the received gratuitous ARP packet.

## Gratuitous ARP Settings

The user can configure the IP interface's gratuitous ARP parameter.

To view the following window, click **Management > Gratuitous ARP > Gratuitous ARP Settings**, as show below:

Gratuitous ARP Settings			
<b>Gratuitous ARP Trap/Log</b>			
Trap	Log	Interface Name	
Disabled	Enabled		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> All
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>			
<b>Gratuitous ARP Periodical Send Interval</b>			
Interface Name	Interval Time (0-65535)		
<input type="button" value="Apply"/>			
<b>Total Entries: 1</b>			
Interface Name	Gratuitous ARP Trap	Gratuitous ARP Log	Gratuitous ARP Periodical Send Interval
System	Disabled	Enabled	0

Figure 3-4 Gratuitous ARP Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Trap</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the trap option. By default the trap is disabled.
<b>Log</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the logging option. By default the event log is enabled.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the interface name of the Layer 3 interface. Select <b>All</b> to enable or disable gratuitous ARP trap or log on all interfaces.
<b>Interval Time (0-65535)</b>	Enter the periodically send gratuitous ARP interval time in seconds. 0 means that gratuitous ARP request will not be sent periodically. By default the interval time is 0.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## IPv6 Neighbor Settings

The user can configure the Switch's IPv6 neighbor settings. The Switch's current IPv6 neighbor settings will be displayed in the table at the bottom of this window.

To view the following window, click **Management > IPv6 Neighbor Settings**, as show below:

IPv6 Neighbor Settings
Safeguard

Interface Name

Neighbor IPv6 Address

Link Layer MAC Address

---

Interface Name   All

State

---

**Total Entries: 0**

Neighbor	Link Layer Address	Interface Name	State	Port	VID

State: (I) means Incomplete state. (R) means Reachable state. (S) means State state.  
(D) means Delay state. (P) means Probe state. (T) means Static state.

Figure 3-5 IPv6 Neighbor Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the interface name of the IPv6 neighbor.
<b>Neighbor IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the neighbor IPv6 address.
<b>Link Layer MAC Address</b>	Enter the link layer MAC address.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the name of the IPv6 neighbor. Tick the <b>All</b> check box to search for all current interfaces on the Switch.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select All, Address, Static, or Dynamic. When the user selects address from the drop-down menu, the user will be able to enter an IP address in the space provided next to the state option.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

## IP Interface

### System IP Address Settings

The IP address may initially be set using the console interface prior to connecting to it through the Ethernet. The Web manager will display the Switch's current IP settings.



**NOTE:** The Switch's factory default IP address is 10.90.90.90 with a subnet mask of 255.0.0.0 and a default gateway of 0.0.0.0.

To view the following window, click **Management > IP Interface > System IP Address Settings**, as show below:

Figure 3-6 System IP Address Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Static</b>	Allow the entry of an IP address, subnet mask, and a default gateway for the Switch. These fields should be of the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where each xxx is a number (represented in decimal form) between 0 and 255. This address should be a unique address on the network assigned for use by the network administrator.
<b>DHCP</b>	The Switch will send out a DHCP broadcast request when it is powered up. The DHCP protocol allows IP addresses, network masks, and default gateways to be assigned by a DHCP server. If this option is set, the Switch will first look for a DHCP server to provide it with this information before using the default or previously entered settings.
<b>BOOTP</b>	The Switch will send out a BOOTP broadcast request when it is powered up. The BOOTP protocol allows IP addresses, network masks, and default gateways to be assigned by a central BOOTP server. If this option is set, the Switch will first look for a BOOTP server to provide it with this information before using the default or previously entered settings.

The following table will describe the fields that are about the **System** Interface.

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Display the System interface name.
<b>Management VLAN Name</b>	This allows the entry of a VLAN name from which a management station will be allowed to manage the Switch using TCP/IP (in-band via Web manager or Telnet). Management stations that are on VLANs other than the one entered here will not be able to manage the Switch in-band unless their IP addresses are entered in the <b>Trusted Host</b> window ( <b>Security &gt; Trusted Host</b> ). If VLANs have not yet been configured for the Switch, the default VLAN contains all of the Switch's ports. There are no entries in the Trusted Host table, by default, so any management station that can connect to the Switch can access the Switch until a management VLAN is specified or Management Station IP addresses are assigned.
<b>Interface Admin State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the configuration on this interface. If the state is disabled, the IP interface cannot be accessed.
<b>IP Address</b>	This field allows the entry of an IPv4 address to be assigned to this IP interface.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	A Bitmask that determines the extent of the subnet that the Switch is on. Should be of the form xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx, where each xxx is a number (represented in decimal) between 0 and 255. The value should be 255.0.0.0 for a Class A network, 255.255.0.0 for a Class B network, and 255.255.255.0 for a Class C network, but custom subnet masks are allowed.
<b>Gateway</b>	IP address that determines where packets with a destination address outside the current subnet should be sent. This is usually the address of a router or a host acting as an IP gateway. If your network is not part of an intranet, or you do not want the

Switch to be accessible outside your local network, you can leave this field unchanged.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Interface Settings

Users can display the Switch's current IP interface settings.

To view the following window, click **Management > IP Interface > Interface Settings**, as show below:

**Figure 3-7 Interface Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the name of the IP interface to search for.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **IPv4 Edit** button to edit the IPv4 settings for the specific entry.

Click the **IPv6 Edit** button to edit the IPv6 settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.



**NOTE:** To create IPv6 interfaces, the user has to create an IPv4 interface then edit it to IPv6.

Click the **Add** button to see the following window.

**Figure 3-8 IPv4 Interface Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the name of the IP interface being created.
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	Enter the IPv4 address used.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Enter the IPv4 subnet mask used.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN Name used.

<b>Interface Admin State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the Interface Admin State.
<b>Secondary Interface</b>	Select to specify the interface as the secondary interface.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **IPv4 Edit** button to see the following window.

**Figure 3-9 IPv4 Interface Settings – Edit window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Get IP From</b>	Use the drop-down menu to specify the method that this Interface uses to acquire an IP address.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the name of the IP interface being configured.
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	Enter the IPv4 address used.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	Enter the IPv4 subnet mask used.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN Name used.
<b>IPv4 State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable IPv4 State.
<b>Interface Admin State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the Interface Admin State.
<b>DHCP Option 12 State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable insertion of option 12 in the DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST message.
<b>DHCP Option 12 Host Name</b>	Enter the host name to be inserted in the DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST message.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **IPv6 Edit** button to see the following window.

Figure 3-10 IPv6 Interface Settings window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Display the IPv6 interface name.
<b>IPv6 State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable IPv6 State.
<b>Interface Admin State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the Interface Admin State.
<b>IPv6 Network Address</b>	Here the user can enter the IPv6 global or link-local address.
<b>DHCPv6 Client</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable DHCPv6 client.
<b>NS Retransmit Time (0-4294967295)</b>	Enter the Neighbor solicitation's retransmit timer in millisecond here. It has the same value as the RA retransmit time in the config ipv6 nd ra command. If this field is configured, it will duplicate the entry into the RA field.
<b>Automatic Link Local Address</b>	Here the user can select to enable or disable the Automatic Link Local Address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the [View All IPv6 Address](#) link to view all the current IPv6 address.

Click the [View All IPv6 Address](#) link to see the following window.

Figure 3-11 IPv6 Interface Settings window

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

## Management Settings

Users can stop the scrolling of multiple pages beyond the limits of the console when using the Command Line Interface.

This window is also used to enable the DHCP auto configuration feature on the Switch. When enabled, the Switch is instructed to receive a configuration file from a TFTP server, which will set the Switch to become a DHCP client automatically on boot-up. To employ this method, the DHCP server must be set up to deliver the TFTP server IP address and configuration file name information in the DHCP reply packet. The TFTP server must be up and running and hold the necessary configuration file stored in its base directory when the request is received from the Switch. For more information about loading a configuration file for use by a client, see the DHCP server and/or TFTP server software instructions. The user may also consult the **Upload Log File** window description located in the **Tools** section of this manual.

If the Switch is unable to complete the DHCP auto configuration, the previously saved configuration file present in the Switch's memory will be used.

Users can also configure Password Encryption on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **Management > Management Settings**, as show below:

**Figure 3-12 Management Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>CLI Paging State</b>	Command Line Interface paging stops each page at the end of the console. This allows you to stop the scrolling of multiple pages of text beyond the limits of the console. CLI Paging is Enabled by default. To disable it, click the Disabled radio button.
<b>DHCP Auto Configuration State</b>	Enable or disable the Switch's DHCP auto configuration feature. When enabled, the Switch is instructed to receive a configuration file from a TFTP server, which will set the Switch to become a DHCP client automatically on boot-up. To employ this method, the DHCP server must be set up to deliver the TFTP server IP address and configuration file name information in the DHCP reply packet. The TFTP server must be up and running and hold the necessary configuration file stored in its base directory when the request is received from the Switch.
<b>Autoconfig Timeout (1-65535)</b>	Enter a time between 1 and 65535 for the auto-configuration timeout.
<b>Password Encryption State</b>	Password encryption will encrypt the password configuration in configuration files. Password encryption is Disabled by default. To enable password encryption, click the Enabled radio button.
<b>Running Configuration</b>	Under the Password Recovery option, the running configuration can be enabled or disable. Being enabled, will allow the user to perform a password recovery of the running configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Session Table

Users can display the management sessions since the Switch was last rebooted.

To view the following window, click **Management > Session Table**, as show below:



Session Table				
Refresh				
ID	Live Time	From	Level	Name
8	07:19:00.720	Serial Port	login	Anonymous

Figure 3-13 Session Table window

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new entries will appear.

## Single IP Management

D-Link Single IP Management is a concept that will stack switches together over Ethernet instead of using stacking ports or modules. There are some advantages in implementing the “Single IP Management” feature:

1. SIM can simplify management of small workgroups or wiring closets while scaling the network to handle increased bandwidth demand.
2. SIM can reduce the number of IP address needed in your network.
3. SIM can eliminate any specialized cables for stacking connectivity and remove the distance barriers that typically limit your topology options when using other stacking technology.

Switches using D-Link Single IP Management (labeled here as SIM) must conform to the following rules:

1. SIM is an optional feature on the Switch and can easily be enabled or disabled through the Command Line Interface or Web Interface. SIM grouping has no effect on the normal operation of the Switch in the user’s network.
2. There are three classifications for switches using SIM. The **Commander Switch (CS)**, which is the master switch of the group, **Member Switch (MS)**, which is a switch that is recognized by the CS a member of a SIM group, and a **Candidate Switch (CaS)**, which is a Switch that has a physical link to the SIM group but has not been recognized by the CS as a member of the SIM group.
3. A SIM group can only have one Commander Switch (CS).
4. A SIM group accepts up to 32 switches (numbered 1-32), not including the Commander Switch (numbered 0).
5. Members of a SIM group cannot cross a router.
6. There is no limit to the number of SIM groups in the same IP subnet (broadcast domain); however a single switch can only belong to one group.
7. If multiple VLANs are configured, the SIM group will only utilize the System interface’s VLAN on any switch.
8. SIM allows intermediate devices that do not support SIM. This enables the user to manage switches that are more than one hop away from the CS.

The SIM group is a group of switches that are managed as a single entity. The Switch may take on three different roles:

1. **Commander Switch (CS)** – This is a switch that has been manually configured as the controlling device for a group, and takes on the following characteristics:
  - a. It has an IP Address.
  - b. It is not a command switch or member switch of another Single IP group.
  - c. It is connected to the member switches through its management VLAN.
2. **Member Switch (MS)** – This is a switch that has joined a single IP group and is accessible from the CS, and it takes on the following characteristics:
  - a. It is not a CS or MS of another IP group.
  - b. It is connected to the CS through the CS management VLAN.
3. **Candidate Switch (CaS)** – This is a switch that is ready to join a SIM group but is not yet a member of the SIM group. The Candidate Switch may join the SIM group of the Switch by manually configuring it to be a MS of a SIM group. A switch configured as a CaS is not a member of a SIM group and will take on the following characteristics:
  - a. It is not a CS or MS of another Single IP group.
  - b. It is connected to the CS through the CS management VLAN

The following rules also apply to the above roles:

1. Each device begins in a Candidate state.
2. CSs must change their role to CaS and then to MS, to become a MS of a SIM group. Thus, the CS cannot directly be converted to a MS.
3. The user can manually configure a CS to become a CaS.
4. A MS can become a CaS by:
  - a. Being configured as a CaS through the CS.
  - b. If report packets from the CS to the MS time out.
5. The user can manually configure a CaS to become a CS
6. The CaS can be configured through the CS to become a MS.

After configuring one switch to operate as the CS of a SIM group, additional DGS-3000 Series switches may join the group by manually configuring the Switch to be a MS. The CS will then serve as the in band entry point for access to the MS. The CS's IP address will become the path to all MS's of the group and the CS's Administrator's password, and/or authentication will control access to all MS's of the SIM group.

With SIM enabled, the applications in the CS will redirect the packet instead of executing the packets. The applications will decode the packet from the administrator, modify some data, and then send it to the MS. After execution, the CS may receive a response packet from the MS, which it will encode and send it back to the administrator.

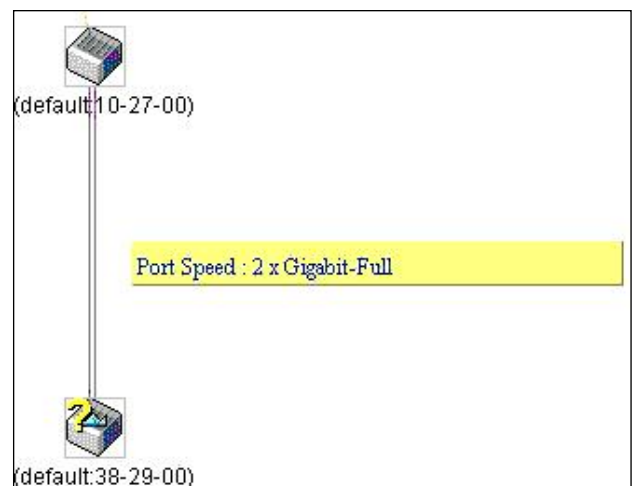
When a CaS becomes a MS, it automatically becomes a member of the first SNMP community (includes read/write and read only) to which the CS belongs. However, if a MS has its own IP address, it can belong to SNMP communities to which other switches in the group, including the CS, do not belong.

### Upgrade to v1.61

To better improve SIM management, the DGS-3000 Series switches have been upgraded to version 1.61 in this release. Many improvements have been made, including:

- The Commander Switch (CS) now has the capability to automatically rediscover member switches that have left the SIM group, either through a reboot or web malfunction. This feature is accomplished through the use of Discover packets and Maintenance packets that previously set SIM members will emit after a reboot. Once a MS has had its MAC address and password saved to the CS's database, if a reboot occurs in the MS, the CS will keep this MS information in its database and when a MS has been rediscovered, it will add the MS back into the SIM tree automatically. No configuration will be necessary to rediscover these switches.

There are some instances where pre-saved MS switches cannot be rediscovered. For example, if the Switch is still powered down, if it has become the member of another group, or if it has been configured to be a Commander Switch, the rediscovery process cannot occur.



- The topology map now includes new features for connections that are a member of a port trunking group. It will display the speed and number of Ethernet connections creating this port trunk group, as shown in the adjacent picture.
- This version will support switch upload and downloads for firmware, configuration files and log files, as follows:
  - **Firmware** – The switch now supports MS firmware downloads from a TFTP server.
  - **Configuration Files** – This switch now supports downloading and uploading of configuration files both to (for configuration restoration) and from (for configuration backup) MS's, using a TFTP server.

- **Log** – The Switch now supports uploading MS log files to a TFTP server.
- The user may zoom in and zoom out when utilizing the topology window to get a better, more defined view of the configurations.

## Single IP Settings

The Switch is set as a Candidate (CaS) as the factory default configuration and Single IP Management is disabled. To view the following window, click **Management > Single IP Management > Single IP Settings**, as show below:

Figure 3-14 Single IP Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>SIM State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to either enable or disable the SIM state on the Switch. <i>Disabled</i> will render all SIM functions on the Switch inoperable.
<b>Trap State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable sending the trap.
<b>Role State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to change the SIM role of the Switch. The two choices are: <i>Candidate</i> – A Candidate Switch (CaS) is not the member of a SIM group but is connected to a Commander Switch. This is the default setting for the SIM role of the Switch. <i>Commander</i> – Choosing this parameter will make the Switch a Commander Switch (CS). The user may join other switches to this Switch, over Ethernet, to be part of its SIM group. Choosing this option will also enable the Switch to be configured for SIM.
<b>Group Name</b>	Enter a Group Name in this textbox. This is optional and only available when SIM State is <b>Enabled</b> and Role State is <b>Commander</b> . This name is used to segment switches into different SIM groups.
<b>Discovery Interval (30-90)</b>	The user may set the discovery protocol interval, in seconds that the Switch will send out discovery packets. Returning information to a Commander Switch will include information about other switches connected to it. (Ex. MS, CaS). The user may set the Discovery Interval from 30 to 90 seconds. The default value is 30 seconds.
<b>Hold Time Count (100-255)</b>	This parameter may be set for the time, in seconds; the Switch will hold information sent to it from other switches, utilizing the Discovery Interval. The user may set the hold time from 100 to 255 seconds. The default value is 100 seconds.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

After enabling the Switch to be a Commander Switch (CS), the **Single IP Management** folder will then contain four added links to aid the user in configuring SIM through the web, including **Topology**, **Firmware Upgrade**, **Configuration Backup/Restore** and **Upload Log File**.

## Topology

This window will be used to configure and manage the Switch within the SIM group and requires Java script to function properly on your computer.

The Java Runtime Environment on your server should initiate and lead you to the Topology window, as seen below.

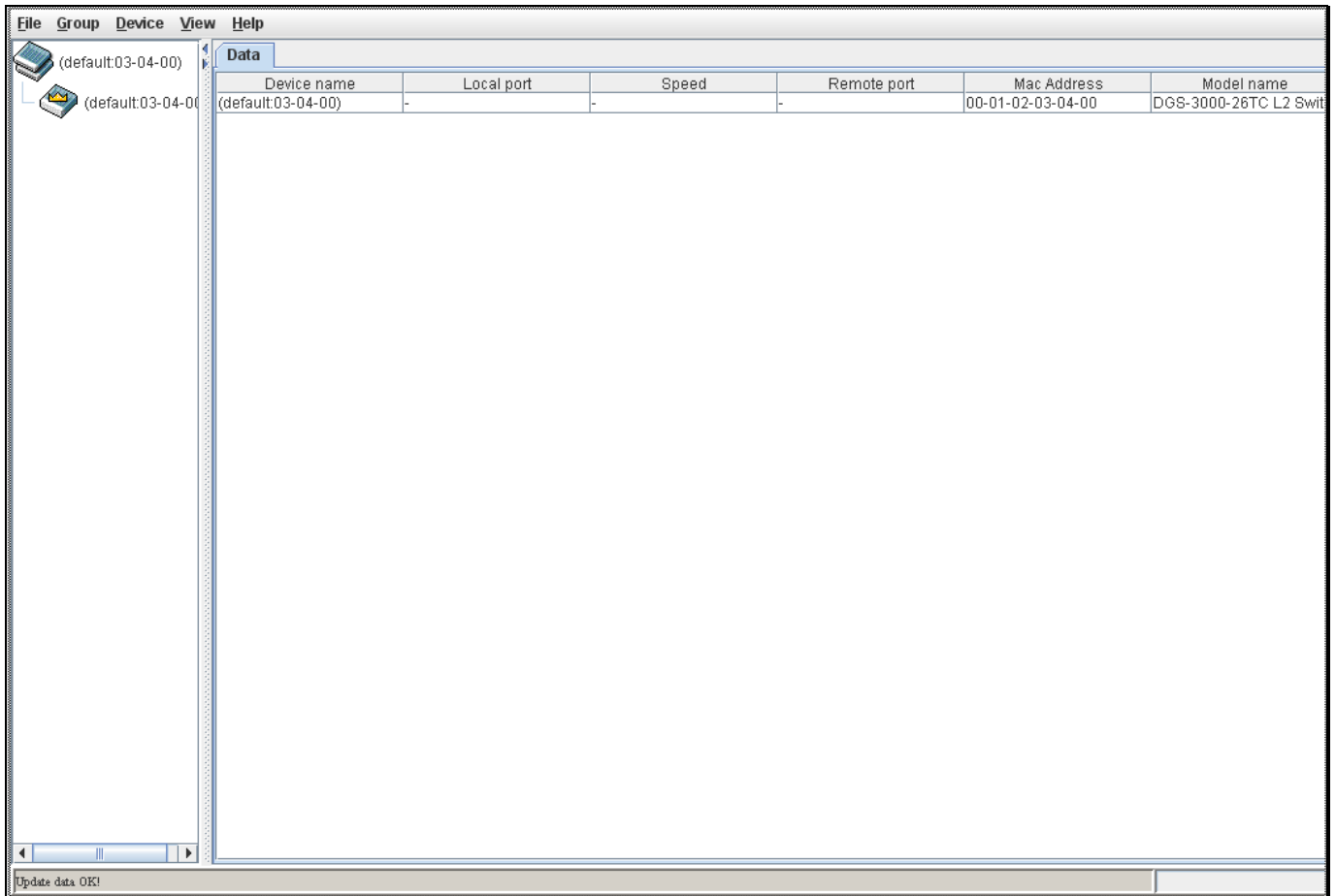


Figure 3-15 Single IP Management window - Tree View

The Topology window holds the following information on the **Data** tab:

Parameter	Description
<b>Device Name</b>	This field will display the Device Name of the switches in the SIM group configured by the user. If no device is configured by the name, it will be given the name default and tagged with the last six digits of the MAC Address to identify it.
<b>Local Port</b>	Displays the number of the physical port on the CS that the MS or CaS is connected to. The CS will have no entry in this field.
<b>Speed</b>	Displays the connection speed between the CS and the MS or CaS.
<b>Remote Port</b>	Displays the number of the physical port on the MS or CaS to which the CS is connected. The CS will have no entry in this field.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Displays the MAC Address of the corresponding Switch.
<b>Model Name</b>	Displays the full Model Name of the corresponding Switch.

To view the Topology View window, open the **View** drop-down menu in the toolbar and then click **Topology**, which will open the following Topology Map. This window will refresh itself periodically (20 seconds by default).

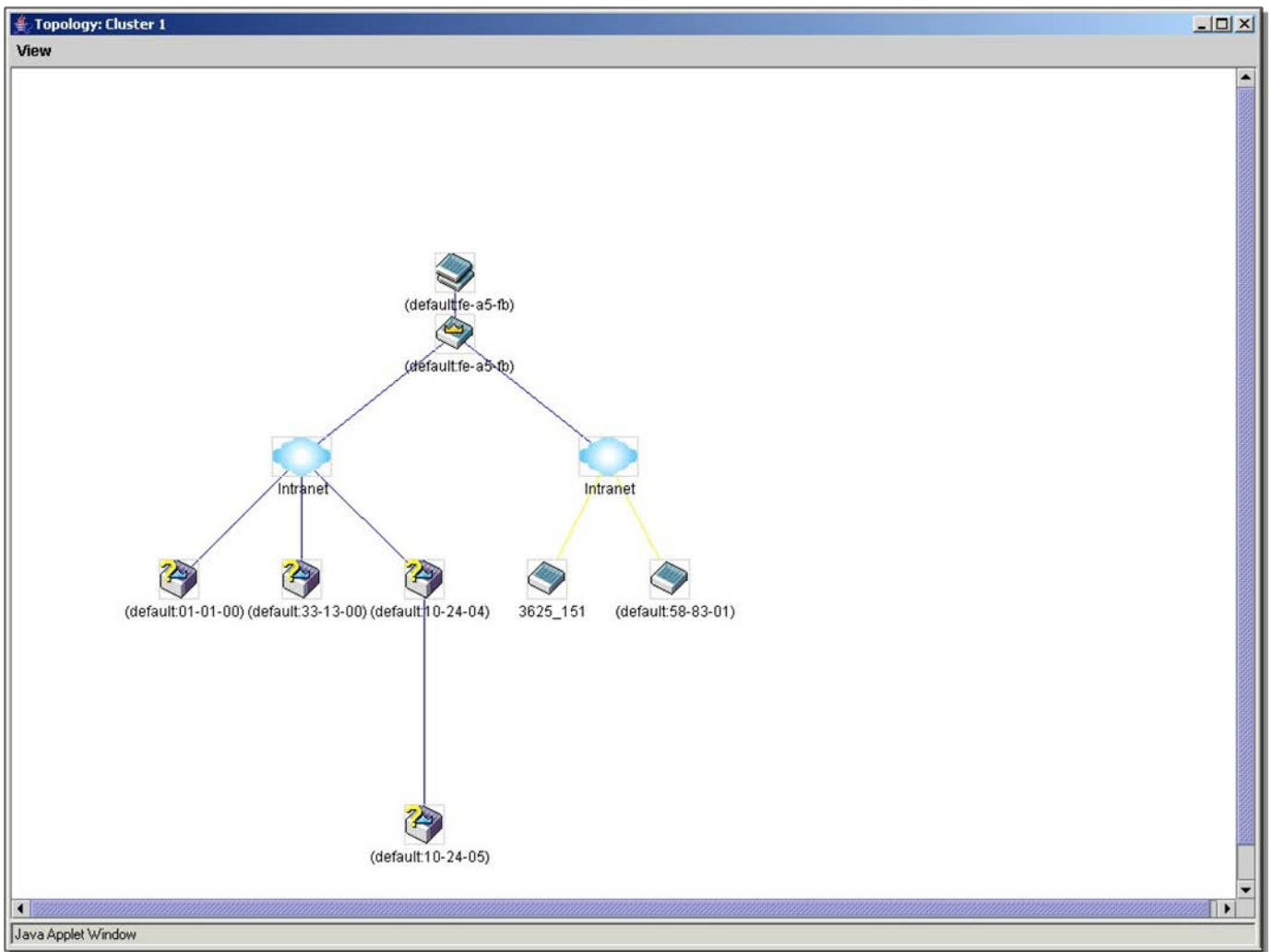


Figure 3-16 Topology view

This window will display how the devices within the Single IP Management Group connect to other groups and devices. Possible icons on this window are as follows:

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Group		Layer 3 member switch
	Layer 2 commander switch		Member switch of other group
	Layer 3 commander switch		Layer 2 candidate switch
	Commander switch of other group		Layer 3 candidate switch
	Layer 2 member switch.		Unknown device
	Non-SIM devices		

**Tool Tips**

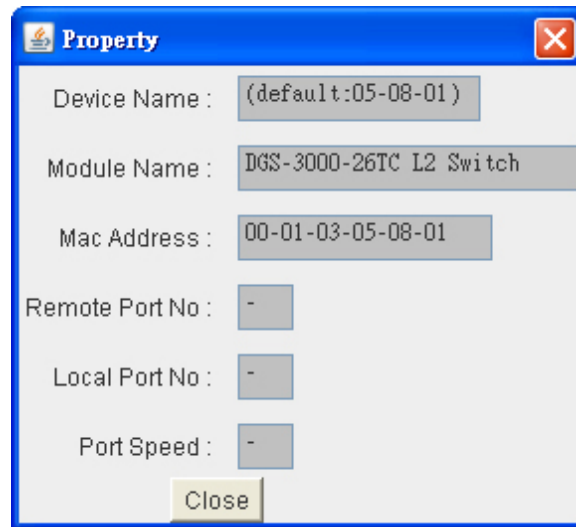
In the Topology view window, the mouse plays an important role in configuration and in viewing device information. Setting the mouse cursor over a specific device in the topology window (tool tip) will display the same information about a specific device as the Tree view does. See the window below for an example.



**Figure 3-19 Right-Clicking a Group Icon**

The following options may appear for the user to configure:

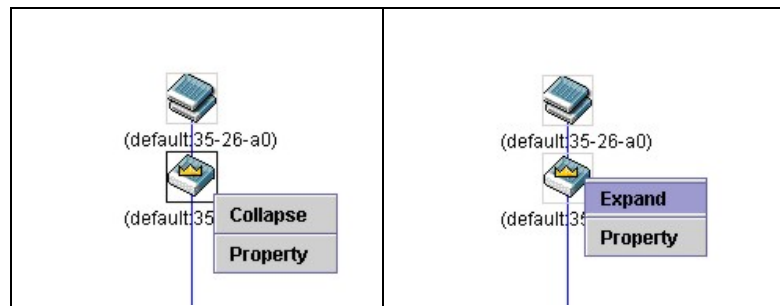
- **Collapse** – To collapse the group that will be represented by a single icon.
- **Expand** – To expand the SIM group, in detail.
- **Property** – To pop up a window to display the group information.

**Figure 3-20 Property window**

Parameter	Description
<b>Device Name</b>	This field will display the Device Name of the switches in the SIM group configured by the user. If no Device Name is configured by the name, it will be given the name default and tagged with the last six digits of the MAC Address to identify it.
<b>Module Name</b>	Displays the full module name of the switch that was right-clicked.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Displays the MAC Address of the corresponding Switch.
<b>Remote Port No</b>	Displays the number of the physical port on the MS or CaS that the CS is connected to. The CS will have no entry in this field.
<b>Local Port No</b>	Displays the number of the physical port on the CS that the MS or CaS is connected to. The CS will have no entry in this field.
<b>Port Speed</b>	Displays the connection speed between the CS and the MS or CaS

Click the **Close** button to close the property window.

### Commander Switch Icon

**Figure 3-21 Right-clicking a Commander Icon**

The following options may appear for the user to configure:

- **Collapse** – To collapse the group that will be represented by a single icon.
- **Expand** – To expand the SIM group, in detail.
- **Property** – To pop up a window to display the group information.



### Member Switch Icon

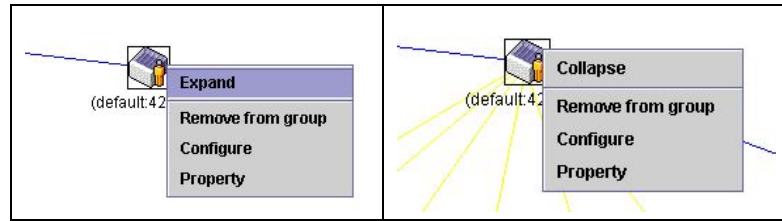


Figure 3-22 Right-clicking a Member icon

The following options may appear for the user to configure:

- **Collapse** – To collapse the group that will be represented by a single icon.
- **Expand** – To expand the SIM group, in detail.
- **Remove from group** – Remove a member from a group.
- **Configure** – Launch the web management to configure the Switch.
- **Property** – To pop up a window to display the device information.

### Candidate Switch Icon

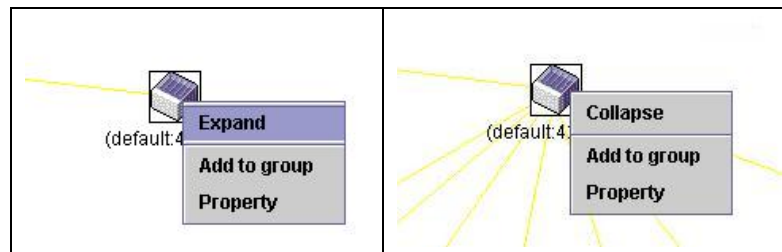


Figure 3-23 Right-clicking a Candidate icon

The following options may appear for the user to configure:

- **Collapse** – To collapse the group that will be represented by a single icon.
- **Expand** – To expand the SIM group, in detail.
- **Add to group** – Add a candidate to a group. Clicking this option will reveal the following dialog box for the user to enter a password for authentication from the Candidate Switch before being added to the SIM group. Click **OK** to enter the password or **Cancel** to exit the dialog box.



Figure 3-24 Input password window

- **Property** – To pop up a window to display the device information.

### Menu Bar

The **Single IP Management** window contains a menu bar for device configurations, as seen below.



Figure 3-25 Menu Bar of the Topology View

### File

- **Print Setup** – Will view the image to be printed.
- **Print Topology** – Will print the topology map.
- **Preference** – Will set display properties, such as polling interval, and the views to open at SIM startup.



**Group**

1. **Add to group** – Add a candidate to a group. Clicking this option will reveal the following dialog box for the user to enter a password for authentication from the Candidate Switch before being added to the SIM group. Click **OK** to enter the password or **Cancel** to exit the dialog box.



Figure 3-26 Input password window

2. **Remove from Group** – Remove an MS from the group.

**Device**

3. **Configure** – Will open the Web manager for the specific device.

**View**

4. **Refresh** – Update the views with the latest status.
5. **Topology** – Display the Topology view.

**Help**

- **About** – Will display the SIM information, including the current SIM version.



Figure 3-27 About window

## Firmware Upgrade

This screen is used to upgrade the firmware from the Commander Switch to the Member Switch. Member Switches will be listed in the table and will be specified by **ID**, **Port** (port on the CS where the MS resides), **MAC Address**, **Model Name** and **Version**.

To view the following window, click **Management > Single IP Management > Firmware Upgrade**, as show below:

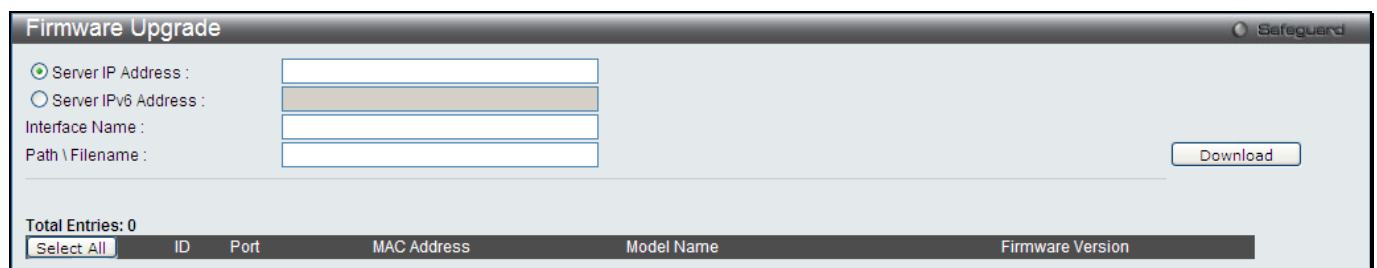


Figure 3-28 Firmware Upgrade window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Server IP Address	Click the radio button and enter the IP address of the TFTP server.

<b>Server IPv6 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IPv6 address of the TFTP server.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the interface name.
<b>Path \ Filename</b>	Enter the path and file name of the firmware.

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Configuration File Backup/Restore

This screen is used to download/upload configuration files from the Commander Switch to the Member Switch, using a TFTP server. Member Switches will be listed in the table and will be specified by **ID**, **Port** (port on the CS where the MS resides), **MAC Address**, **Model Name** and **Firmware Version**.

To view the following window, click **Management > Single IP Management > Configuration File Backup/Restore**, as show below:

**Figure 3-29 Configuration File Backup/Restore window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IP address of the TFTP server.
<b>Server IPv6 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IPv6 address of the TFTP server.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the interface name.
<b>Path \ Filename</b>	Enter the path and file name of the configuration file.

Click **Restore** to initiate the file transfer from a TFTP server to the Switch.

Click **Backup** to backup the configuration file to a TFTP server.

## Upload Log File

The following window is used to upload log files from SIM member switches to a specified PC.

To view the following window, click **Management > Single IP Management > Upload Log File**, as show below:

**Figure 3-30 Upload Log File window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IP address of the TFTP server.
<b>Server IPv6 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IPv6 address of the TFTP server.
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the interface name.
<b>Path \ Filename</b>	Enter the path and file name of the local computer.

Click **Upload** to initiate the file transfer.

## SNMP Settings

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an OSI Layer 7 (Application Layer) designed specifically for managing and monitoring network devices. SNMP enables network management stations to read and modify the settings of gateways, routers, switches, and other network devices. Use SNMP to configure system features for proper operation, monitor performance and detect potential problems in the Switch, switch group or network.

Managed devices that support SNMP include software (referred to as an agent), which runs locally on the device. A defined set of variables (managed objects) is maintained by the SNMP agent and used to manage the device. These objects are defined in a Management Information Base (MIB), which provides a standard presentation of the information controlled by the on-board SNMP agent. SNMP defines both the format of the MIB specifications and the protocol used to access this information over the network.

The Switch supports the SNMP versions 1, 2c, and 3. The three versions of SNMP vary in the level of security provided between the management station and the network device.

In SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, user authentication is accomplished using 'community strings', which function like passwords. The remote user SNMP application and the Switch SNMP must use the same community string. SNMP packets from any station that has not been authenticated are ignored (dropped).

The default community strings for the Switch used for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c management access are:

- **public** – Allows authorized management stations to retrieve MIB objects.
- **private** – Allows authorized management stations to retrieve and modify MIB objects.

SNMPv3 uses a more sophisticated authentication process that is separated into two parts. The first part is to maintain a list of users and their attributes that are allowed to act as SNMP managers. The second part describes what each user on that list can do as an SNMP manager.

The Switch allows groups of users to be listed and configured with a shared set of privileges. The SNMP version may also be set for a listed group of SNMP managers. Thus, you may create a group of SNMP managers that are allowed to view read-only information or receive traps using SNMPv1 while assigning a higher level of security to another group, granting read/write privileges using SNMPv3.

Using SNMPv3 individual users or groups of SNMP managers can be allowed to perform or be restricted from performing specific SNMP management functions. The functions allowed or restricted are defined using the Object Identifier (OID) associated with a specific MIB. An additional layer of security is available for SNMPv3 in that SNMP messages may be encrypted. To read more about how to configure SNMPv3 settings for the Switch read the next section.

### Traps

Traps are messages that alert network personnel of events that occur on the Switch. The events can be as serious as a reboot (someone accidentally turned OFF the Switch), or less serious like a port status change. The Switch generates traps and sends them to the trap recipient (or network manager). Typical traps include trap messages for Authentication Failure, Topology Change and Broadcast/Multicast Storm.

### MIBs

The Switch in the Management Information Base (MIB) stores management and counter information. The Switch uses the standard MIB-II Management Information Base module. Consequently, values for MIB objects can be retrieved from any SNMP-based network management software. In addition to the standard MIB-II, the Switch also supports its own proprietary enterprise MIB as an extended Management Information Base. Specifying the MIB Object Identifier may also retrieve the proprietary MIB. MIB values can be either read-only or read-write.

The Switch incorporates a flexible SNMP management for the switching environment. SNMP management can be customized to suit the needs of the networks and the preferences of the network administrator. Use the SNMP V3 menus to select the SNMP version used for specific tasks.

The Switch supports the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) versions 1, 2c, and 3. The administrator can specify the SNMP version used to monitor and control the Switch. The three versions of SNMP vary in the level of security provided between the management station and the network device.

SNMP settings are configured using the menus located on the SNMP V3 folder of the Web manager. Workstations on the network that are allowed SNMP privileged access to the Switch can be restricted with the Management Station IP Address menu.

## SNMP Global Settings

SNMP global state settings can be enabled or disabled.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Global Settings**, as show below:

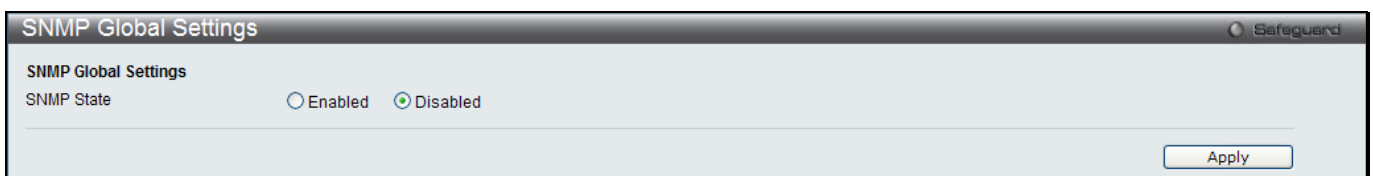


Figure 3-31 SNMP Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
SNMP State	Enable this option to use the SNMP feature.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## SNMP Traps Settings

Users can enable and disable the SNMP trap support function of the switch and SNMP authentication failure trap support, respectively.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Traps Settings**, as show below:

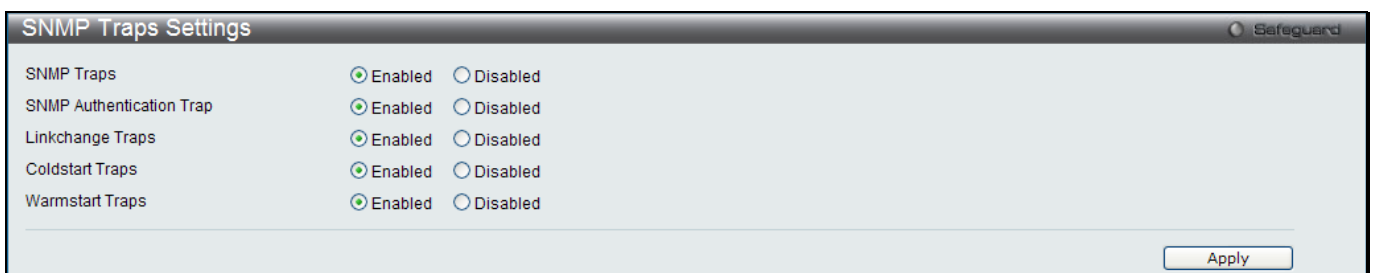


Figure 3-32 SNMP Traps Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<b>SNMP Traps</b>	Enable this option to use the SNMP Traps feature.
<b>SNMP Authentication Trap</b>	Enable this option to use the SNMP Authentication Traps feature.
<b>Linkchange Traps</b>	Enable this option to use the SNMP Link Change Traps feature.
<b>Coldstart Traps</b>	Enable this option to use the SNMP Cold Start Traps feature.
<b>Warmstart Traps</b>	Enable this option to use the SNMP Warm Start Traps feature.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## SNMP Linkchange Traps Settings

On this page the user can configure the SNMP link change trap settings.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Linkchange Traps Settings**, as show below:

From Port	To Port	State
01	01	Enabled

Linkchange Traps: Enabled

Port	State
1	Enabled
2	Enabled
3	Enabled
4	Enabled
5	Enabled
6	Enabled
7	Enabled
8	Enabled
9	Enabled
10	Enabled
11	Enabled
12	Enabled
13	Enabled
14	Enabled
15	Enabled
16	Enabled
17	Enabled
18	Enabled
19	Enabled
20	Enabled
21	Enabled
22	Enabled
23	Enabled
24	Enabled
25	Enabled
26	Enabled

Figure 3-33 SNMP Linkchange Traps Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

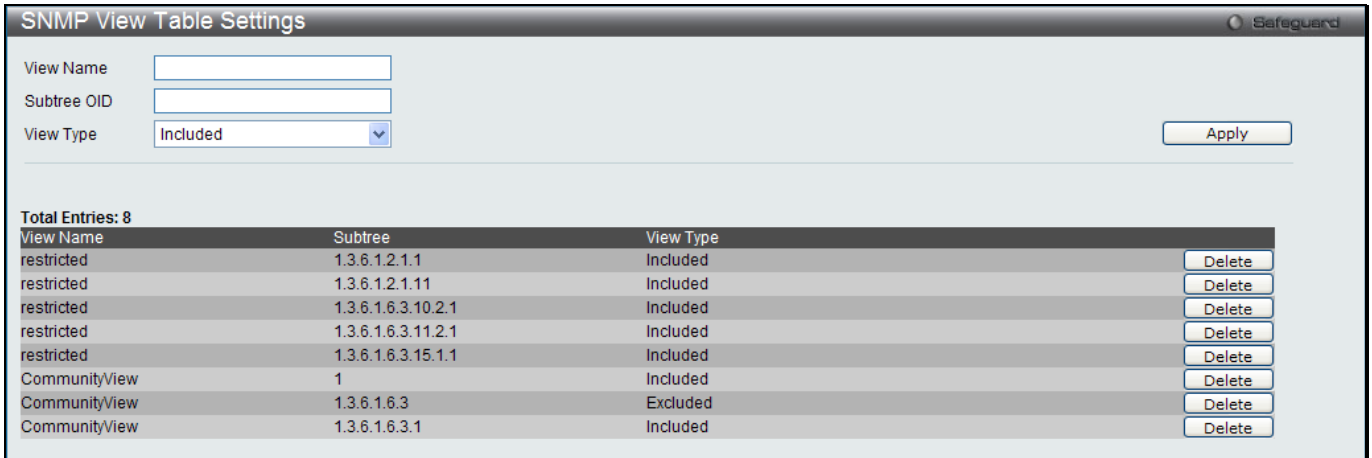
Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the starting and ending ports to use.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the SNMP link change Trap.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## SNMP View Table Settings

Users can assign views to community strings that define which MIB objects can be accessed by a remote SNMP manager. The SNMP Group created with this table maps SNMP users (identified in the SNMP User Table) to the views created in the previous window.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP View Table Settings**, as show below:



The screenshot shows the 'SNMP View Table Settings' window. At the top, there are three input fields: 'View Name', 'Subtree OID', and 'View Type' (set to 'Included'). An 'Apply' button is on the right. Below is a table with 8 entries, each with a 'Delete' button.

View Name	Subtree	View Type	
restricted	1.3.6.1.2.1.1	Included	Delete
restricted	1.3.6.1.2.1.11	Included	Delete
restricted	1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1	Included	Delete
restricted	1.3.6.1.6.3.11.2.1	Included	Delete
restricted	1.3.6.1.6.3.15.1.1	Included	Delete
CommunityView	1	Included	Delete
CommunityView	1.3.6.1.6.3	Excluded	Delete
CommunityView	1.3.6.1.6.3.1	Included	Delete

Figure 3-34 SNMP View Table Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>View Name</b>	Type an alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters. This is used to identify the new SNMP view being created.
<b>Subtree OID</b>	Type the Object Identifier (OID) Subtree for the view. The OID identifies an object tree (MIB tree) that will be included or excluded from access by an SNMP manager.
<b>View Type</b>	Select Included to include this object in the list of objects that an SNMP manager can access. Select Excluded to exclude this object from the list of objects that an SNMP manager can access.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## SNMP Community Table Settings

Users can create an SNMP community string to define the relationship between the SNMP manager and an agent. The community string acts like a password to permit access to the agent on the Switch. One or more of the following characteristics can be associated with the community string:

1. An Access List of IP addresses of SNMP managers that are permitted to use the community string to gain access to the Switch's SNMP agent.
2. Any MIB view that defines the subset of all MIB objects will be accessible to the SNMP community.
3. Read/write or read-only level permission for the MIB objects accessible to the SNMP community.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Community Table Settings**, as show below:



The screenshot shows the 'SNMP Community Table Settings' window. It has an 'Add Community' section with fields for 'Community Name', 'View Name', and 'Access Right' (set to 'Read Only'). An 'Apply' button is on the right. Below is a table with 2 entries, each with a 'Delete' button.

Community Name	View Name	Access Right	
private	CommunityView	read_write	Delete
public	CommunityView	read_only	Delete

Figure 3-35 SNMP Community Table Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Community Name</b>	Type an alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters that is used to identify members of an SNMP community. This string is used like a password to give remote SNMP managers access to MIB objects in the Switch's SNMP agent.
<b>View Name</b>	Type an alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters that is used to identify the group of MIB objects that a remote SNMP manager is allowed to access on the Switch. The view name must exist in the SNMP View Table.
<b>Access Right</b>	<p><i>Read Only</i> – Specify that SNMP community members using the community string created can only read the contents of the MIBs on the Switch.</p> <p><i>Read Write</i> – Specify that SNMP community members using the community string created can read from, and write to the contents of the MIBs on the Switch.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## SNMP Group Table Settings

An SNMP Group created with this table maps SNMP users (identified in the SNMP User Table) to the views created in the previous window.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Group Table Settings**, as show below:

Group Name	Read View Name	Write View Name	Notify View Name	User-based Security Model	Security Level	
public	CommunityV...		CommunityV...	SNMPv1	NoAuthNoPriv	Delete
public	CommunityV...		CommunityV...	SNMPv2	NoAuthNoPriv	Delete
initial	restricted		restricted	SNMPv3	NoAuthNoPriv	Delete
private	CommunityV...	CommunityV...	CommunityV...	SNMPv1	NoAuthNoPriv	Delete
private	CommunityV...	CommunityV...	CommunityV...	SNMPv2	NoAuthNoPriv	Delete

Figure 3-36 SNMP Group Table Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Group Name</b>	Type an alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters. This is used to identify the new SNMP group of SNMP users.
<b>Read View Name</b>	This name is used to specify the SNMP group created can request SNMP messages.
<b>Write View Name</b>	Specify a SNMP group name for users that are allowed SNMP write privileges to the Switch's SNMP agent.
<b>Notify View Name</b>	Specify a SNMP group name for users that can receive SNMP trap messages generated by the Switch's SNMP agent.
<b>User-based Security Model</b>	<p><i>SNMPv1</i> – Specify that SNMP version 1 will be used.</p> <p><i>SNMPv2</i> – Specify that SNMP version 2c will be used. The SNMPv2 supports both centralized and distributed network management strategies. It includes improvements in the Structure of Management Information (SMI) and adds some security features.</p>

	<i>SNMPv3</i> – Specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used. SNMPv3 provides secure access to devices through a combination of authentication and encrypting packets over the network.
<b>Security Level</b>	<p>The Security Level settings only apply to SNMPv3.</p> <p><i>NoAuthNoPriv</i> – Specify that there will be no authorization and no encryption of packets sent between the Switch and a remote SNMP manager.</p> <p><i>AuthNoPriv</i> – Specify that authorization will be required, but there will be no encryption of packets sent between the Switch and a remote SNMP manager.</p> <p><i>AuthPriv</i> – Specify that authorization will be required, and that packets sent between the Switch and a remote SNMP manger will be encrypted.</p>

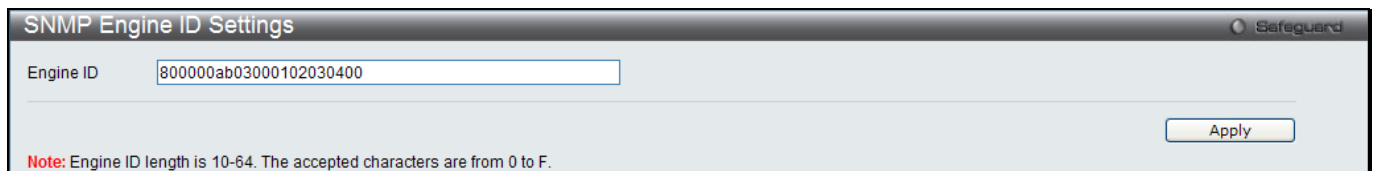
Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## SNMP Engine ID Settings

The Engine ID is a unique identifier used for SNMP V3 implementations on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Engine ID Settings**, as show below:



**Figure 3-37 SNMP Engine ID Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Engine ID</b>	To change the Engine ID, type the new Engine ID value in the space provided. The SNMP engine ID displays the identification of the SNMP engine on the Switch. The default value is suggested in RFC2271. The very first bit is 1, and the first four octets are set to the binary equivalent of the agent's SNMP management private enterprise number as assigned by IANA (D-Link is 171). The fifth octet is 03 to indicate the rest is the MAC address of this device. The sixth to eleventh octets is the MAC address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The Engine ID length is 10-64 and accepted characters can range from 0 to F.

## SNMP User Table Settings

This window displays all of the SNMP User's currently configured on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP User Table Settings**, as show below:



**SNMP User Table Settings** Safeguard

**Add User**

User Name:

SNMP Version:

Auth-Protocol by Password:

Priv-Protocol by Password:

Auth-Protocol by Key:

Priv-Protocol by Key:

Group Name:

SNMP V3 Encryption:

Password:

Password:

Key:

Key:

---

**Total Entries: 1**

User Name	Group Name	SNMP Version	Auth-Protocol	Priv-Protocol
initial	initial	V3	None	None

Figure 3-38 SNMP User Table Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>User Name</b>	An alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters. This is used to identify the SNMP users.
<b>Group Name</b>	This name is used to specify the SNMP group created can request SNMP messages.
<b>SNMP Version</b>	V3 – Indicates that SNMP version 3 is in use.
<b>SNMP V3 Encryption</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable encryption for SNMP V3. This is only operable in SNMP V3 mode. The choices are <i>None</i> , <i>Password</i> , or <i>Key</i> .
<b>Auth-Protocol</b>	<i>MD5</i> – Specify that the HMAC-MD5-96 authentication level will be used. This field is only operable when V3 is selected in the SNMP Version field and the Encryption field has been checked. This field will require the user to enter a password. <i>SHA</i> – Specify that the HMAC-SHA authentication protocol will be used. This field is only operable when V3 is selected in the SNMP Version field and the Encryption field has been checked. This field will require the user to enter a password.
<b>Priv-Protocol</b>	<i>None</i> – Specify that no authorization protocol is in use. <i>DES</i> – Specify that DES 56-bit encryption is in use, based on the CBC-DES (DES-56) standard. This field is only operable when V3 is selected in the SNMP Version field and the Encryption field has been checked. This field will require the user to enter a password.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## SNMP Host Table Settings

Users can set up SNMP trap recipients for IPv4.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP Host Table Settings**, as show below:

**SNMP Host Table Settings** Safeguard

**Add Host Table**

Host IP Address:

User-based Security Model:

Security Level:

Community String / SNMPv3 User Name:

---

**Total Entries: 2**

Host IP Address	User-based Security Model	Security Level	Community Name/SNMPv3 User Name
10.90.90.2	SNMPv3	NoAuthNoPriv	initial
10.90.90.1	SNMPv1		public

Figure 3-39 SNMP Host Table Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Host IP Address</b>	Type the IP address of the remote management station that will serve as the SNMP host for the Switch.
<b>User-based Security Model</b>	<i>SNMPv1</i> – Specify that SNMP version 1 will be used. <i>SNMPv2</i> – Specify that SNMP version 2 will be used. <i>SNMPv3</i> – Specify that SNMP version 3 will be used.
<b>Security Level</b>	<i>NoAuthNoPriv</i> – To specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used, with a NoAuth-NoPriv security level. <i>AuthNoPriv</i> – To specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used, with an Auth-NoPriv security level. <i>AuthPriv</i> – To specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used, with an Auth-Priv security level.
<b>Community String / SNMPv3 User Name</b>	Type in the community string or SNMP V3 user name as appropriate.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## SNMP v6Host Table Settings

Users can set up SNMP trap recipients for IPv6.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > SNMP v6Host Table Settings**, as shown below:

**3-40 SNMP v6Host Table Settings**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Host IPv6 Address</b>	Type the IPv6 address of the remote management station that will serve as the SNMP host for the Switch.
<b>User-based Security Model</b>	<i>SNMPv1</i> – Specify that SNMP version 1 will be used. <i>SNMPv2</i> – Specify that SNMP version 2 will be used. <i>SNMPv3</i> – Specify that SNMP version 3 will be used.
<b>Security Level</b>	<i>NoAuthNoPriv</i> – To specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used, with a NoAuth-NoPriv security level. <i>AuthNoPriv</i> – To specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used, with an Auth-NoPriv security level. <i>AuthPriv</i> – To specify that the SNMP version 3 will be used, with an Auth-Priv security level.
<b>Community String / SNMPv3 User Name</b>	Type in the community string or SNMP V3 user name as appropriate.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## RMON Settings

On this page the user can enable or disable remote monitoring (RMON) for the rising and falling alarm trap feature for the SNMP function on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **Management > SNMP Settings > RMON Settings**, as show below:

Figure 3-41 RMON Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RMON Rising Alarm Trap</b>	Enable this option to use the RMON Rising Alarm Trap Feature.
<b>RMON Falling Alarm Trap</b>	Enable this option to use the RMON Falling Alarm Trap Feature.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Telnet Settings

Users can configure Telnet Settings on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **Management > Telnet Settings**, as show below:

Figure 3-42 Telnet Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Telnet State</b>	Telnet configuration is Enabled by default. If you do not want to allow configuration of the system through Telnet choose Disabled.
<b>Port (1-65535)</b>	The TCP port number used for Telnet management of the Switch. The “well-known” TCP port for the Telnet protocol is 23.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Web Settings

Users can configure the Web settings on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **Management > Web Settings**, as show below:

Figure 3-43 Web Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Web Status</b>	Web-based management is Enabled by default. If you choose to disable this by clicking Disabled, you will lose the ability to configure the system through the web interface as soon as these settings are applied.
<b>Port (1-65535)</b>	The TCP port number used for web-based management of the Switch. The “well-known” TCP port for the Web protocol is 80.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Power Saving

### LED State Settings

This window is used to configure the port LED state.

To view the following window, click **Management > Power Saving > LED State Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 3-44 LED State Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>LED State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the port LED state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

### Power Saving Settings

This window allows the user to implement the Switch’s built-in power saving features and set the schedule to enforce the settings.

To view the following window, click **Management > Power Saving > Power Saving Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 3-45 Power Saving Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Power Saving Mode Link Detection State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the link detection state. When enabled, a port which has a link down status will be turned off to save power to the Switch. This will not affect the port's capabilities when the port status is link up.
<b>Power Saving Mode Length Detection State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable length detection state. When enabled, the Switch will automatically determine the length of the cable and adjust the power flow accordingly.
<b>Power Saving Mode LED State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable LED state. When enabled, the LED's state of ports will be turned off during the configured time range.
<b>Power Saving Mode Port State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable port state. When enabled, the ports will be shut down during the configured time range.
<b>Power Saving Mode Hibernation State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable hibernation state. When enabled, the Switch will go into a low power state and be idle during the configured time range. It will shut down all the ports, all network function (telnet, ping, etc.) will not work, and only the console connection will work via the RS232 port. If the Switch is an endpoint type PSE (Power Sourcing Equipment), it will not provide power to the port.
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop down menu to add or delete the schedule.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Specify the name of the schedule.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear Time Range** to remove all the entries.

## Power Saving LED Settings

This window is used to add or delete the power saving schedule on the LED of all ports.

To view the following window, click **Management > Power Saving > Power Saving LED Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 3-46 Power Saving LED Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop down menu to add or delete the schedule.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Specify the name of the schedule.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear Time Range** to remove all the entries.

## Power Saving Port Settings

This window is used to set the power saving state.

To view the following window, click **Management > Power Saving > Power Saving Port Settings**, as shown below:

**Figure 3-47 Power Saving Port Settings**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the appropriate port range used for the configuration.
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop down menu to add or delete the schedule.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Specify the name of the schedule.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear Time Range** to remove all the entries.

To learn more about the D-Link Green Technologies, go to <http://green.dlink.com/> for more details.

# Chapter 4 L2 Features

**VLAN**

**QinQ**

**Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Settings**

**Spanning Tree**

**Link Aggregation**

**FDB**

**L2 Multicast Control**

**Multicast Filtering**

**ERPS Settings**

**LLDP**

**NLB FDB Settings**

**Flex Link Settings**

## VLAN

### **Understanding IEEE 802.1p Priority**

Priority tagging is a function defined by the IEEE 802.1p standard designed to provide a means of managing traffic on a network where many different types of data may be transmitted simultaneously. It is intended to alleviate problems associated with the delivery of time critical data over congested networks. The quality of applications that are dependent on such time critical data, such as video conferencing, can be severely and adversely affected by even very small delays in transmission.

Network devices that are in compliance with the IEEE 802.1p standard have the ability to recognize the priority level of data packets. These devices can also assign a priority label or tag to packets. Compliant devices can also strip priority tags from packets. This priority tag determines the packet's degree of expeditiousness and determines the queue to which it will be assigned.

Priority tags are given values from 0 to 7 with 0 being assigned to the lowest priority data and 7 assigned to the highest. The highest priority tag 7 is generally only used for data associated with video or audio applications, which are sensitive to even slight delays, or for data from specified end users whose data transmissions warrant special consideration.

The Switch allows you to further tailor how priority tagged data packets are handled on your network. Using queues to manage priority tagged data allows you to specify its relative priority to suit the needs of your network. There may be circumstances where it would be advantageous to group two or more differently tagged packets into the same queue. Generally, however, it is recommended that the highest priority queue, Queue 7, be reserved for data packets with a priority value of 7. Packets that have not been given any priority value are placed in Queue 0 and thus given the lowest priority for delivery.

Strict mode and weighted round robin system are employed on the Switch to determine the rate at which the queues are emptied of packets. The ratio used for clearing the queues is 4:1. This means that the highest priority queue, Queue 7, will clear 4 packets for every 1 packet cleared from Queue 0.

Remember, the priority queue settings on the Switch are for all ports, and all devices connected to the Switch will be affected. This priority queuing system will be especially beneficial if your network employs switches with the capability of assigning priority tags.

### **VLAN Description**

A Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) is a network topology configured according to a logical scheme rather than the physical layout. VLANs can be used to combine any collection of LAN segments into an autonomous user group that appears as a single LAN. VLANs also logically segment the network into different broadcast domains so that packets are forwarded only between ports within the VLAN. Typically, a VLAN corresponds to a particular subnet, although not necessarily.

VLANs can enhance performance by conserving bandwidth, and improve security by limiting traffic to specific domains.

A VLAN is a collection of end nodes grouped by logic instead of physical location. End nodes that frequently communicate with each other are assigned to the same VLAN, regardless of where they are physically on the network. Logically, a VLAN can be equated to a broadcast domain, because broadcast packets are forwarded to only members of the VLAN on which the broadcast was initiated.

### **Notes about VLANs on the Switch**

- No matter what basis is used to uniquely identify end nodes and assign these nodes VLAN membership, packets cannot cross VLANs without a network device performing a routing function between the VLANs.
- The Switch supports IEEE 802.1Q VLANs. The port untagging function can be used to remove the 802.1Q tag from packet headers to maintain compatibility with devices that are tag-unaware.
- The Switch's default is to assign all ports to a single 802.1Q VLAN named "default."
- The "default" VLAN has a VID = 1.
- The member ports of Port-based VLANs may overlap, if desired.

### **IEEE 802.1Q VLANs**

Some relevant terms:

- **Tagging** – The act of putting 802.1Q VLAN information into the header of a packet.
- **Untagging** – The act of stripping 802.1Q VLAN information out of the packet header.
- **Ingress port** – A port on a switch where packets are flowing into the Switch and VLAN decisions must be made.
- **Egress port** – A port on a switch where packets are flowing out of the Switch, either to another switch or to an end station, and tagging decisions must be made.

IEEE 802.1Q (tagged) VLANs are implemented on the Switch. 802.1Q VLANs require tagging, which enables them to span the entire network (assuming all switches on the network are IEEE 802.1Q-compliant).

VLANs allow a network to be segmented in order to reduce the size of broadcast domains. All packets entering a VLAN will only be forwarded to the stations (over IEEE 802.1Q enabled switches) that are members of that VLAN, and this includes broadcast, multicast and unicast packets from unknown sources.

VLANs can also provide a level of security to your network. IEEE 802.1Q VLANs will only deliver packets between stations that are members of the VLAN.

Any port can be configured as either tagging or untagging. The untagging feature of IEEE 802.1Q VLANs allows VLANs to work with legacy switches that don't recognize VLAN tags in packet headers. The tagging feature allows VLANs to span multiple 802.1Q-compliant switches through a single physical connection and allows Spanning Tree to be enabled on all ports and work normally.

The IEEE 802.1Q standard restricts the forwarding of untagged packets to the VLAN the receiving port is a member of.



The main characteristics of IEEE 802.1Q are as follows:

- Assigns packets to VLANs by filtering.
- Assumes the presence of a single global spanning tree.
- Uses an explicit tagging scheme with one-level tagging.
- 802.1Q VLAN Packet Forwarding
- Packet forwarding decisions are made based upon the following three types of rules:
  - Ingress rules – rules relevant to the classification of received frames belonging to a VLAN.
  - Forwarding rules between ports – decides whether to filter or forward the packet.
  - Egress rules – determines if the packet must be sent tagged or untagged.

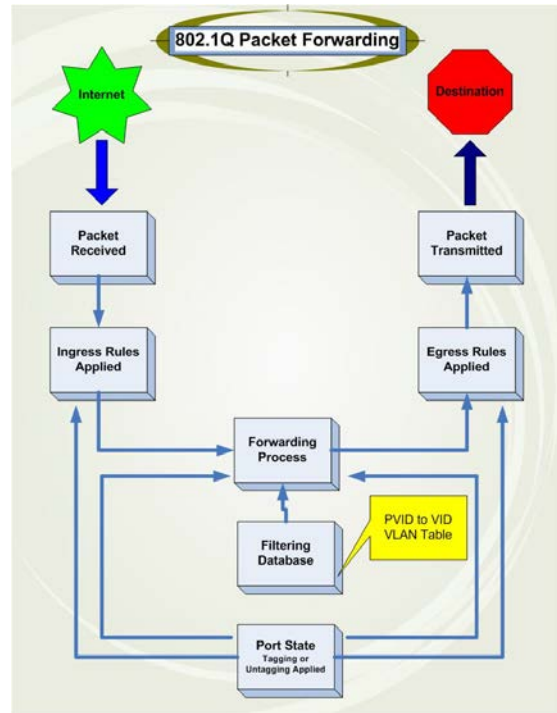


Figure 4-1 IEEE 802.1Q Packet Forwarding

### 802.1Q VLAN Tags

The figure below shows the 802.1Q VLAN tag. There are four additional octets inserted after the source MAC address. Their presence is indicated by a value of 0x8100 in the EtherType field. When a packet's EtherType field is equal to 0x8100, the packet carries the IEEE 802.1Q/802.1p tag. The tag is contained in the following two octets and consists of 3 bits of user priority, 1 bit of Canonical Format Identifier (CFI – used for encapsulating Token Ring packets so they can be carried across Ethernet backbones), and 12 bits of VLAN ID (VID). The 3 bits of user priority are used by 802.1p. The VID is the VLAN identifier and is used by the 802.1Q standard. Because the VID is 12 bits long, 4094 unique VLANs can be identified.

The tag is inserted into the packet header making the entire packet longer by 4 octets. All of the information originally contained in the packet is retained.

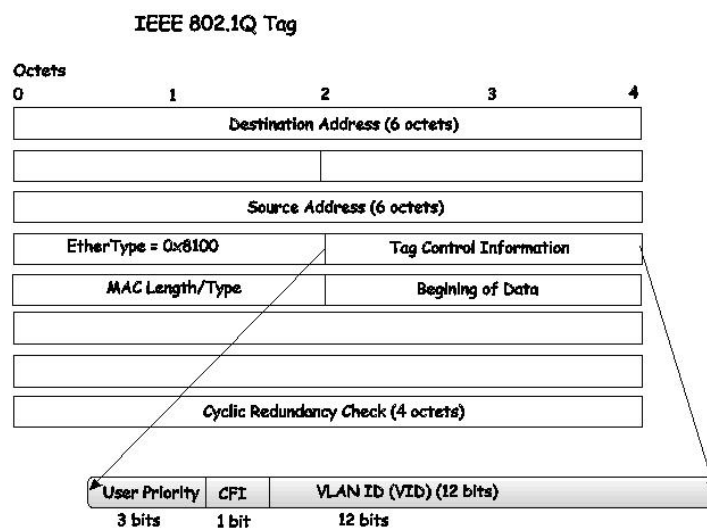


Figure 4-2 IEEE 802.1Q Tag

The EtherType and VLAN ID are inserted after the MAC source address, but before the original EtherType/Length or Logical Link Control. Because the packet is now a bit longer than it was originally, the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) must be recalculated.

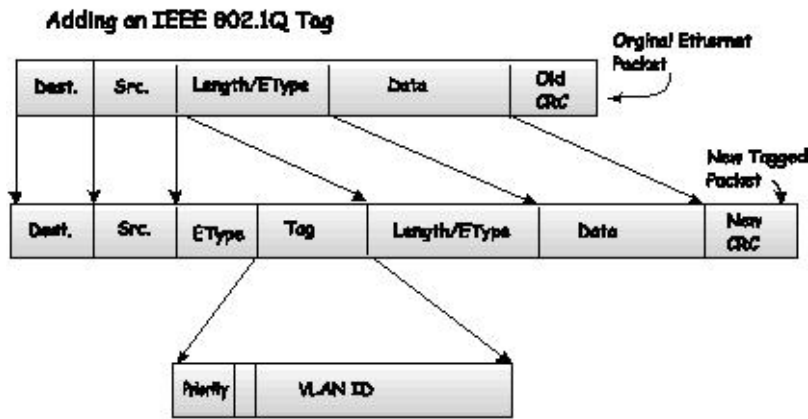


Figure 4-3 Adding an IEEE 802.1Q Tag

### **Port VLAN ID**

Packets that are tagged (are carrying the 802.1Q VID information) can be transmitted from one 802.1Q compliant network device to another with the VLAN information intact. This allows 802.1Q VLANs to span network devices (and indeed, the entire network, if all network devices are 802.1Q compliant).

Unfortunately, not all network devices are 802.1Q compliant. These devices are referred to as tag-unaware. 802.1Q devices are referred to as tag-aware.

Prior to the adoption of 802.1Q VLANs, port-based and MAC-based VLANs were in common use. These VLANs relied upon a Port VLAN ID (PVID) to forward packets. A packet received on a given port would be assigned that port's PVID and then be forwarded to the port that corresponded to the packet's destination address (found in the Switch's forwarding table). If the PVID of the port that received the packet is different from the PVID of the port that is to transmit the packet, the Switch will drop the packet.

Within the Switch, different PVIDs mean different VLANs (remember that two VLANs cannot communicate without an external router). So, VLAN identification based upon the PVIDs cannot create VLANs that extend outside a given switch (or switch stack).

Every physical port on a switch has a PVID. 802.1Q ports are also assigned a PVID, for use within the Switch. If no VLANs are defined on the Switch, all ports are then assigned to a default VLAN with a PVID equal to 1. Untagged packets are assigned the PVID of the port on which they were received. Forwarding decisions are based upon this PVID, in so far as VLANs are concerned. Tagged packets are forwarded according to the VID contained within the tag. Tagged packets are also assigned a PVID, but the PVID is not used to make packet-forwarding decisions, the VID is.

Tag-aware switches must keep a table to relate PVIDs within the Switch to VIDs on the network. The Switch will compare the VID of a packet to be transmitted to the VID of the port that is to transmit the packet. If the two VIDs are different, the Switch will drop the packet. Because of the existence of the PVID for untagged packets and the VID for tagged packets, tag-aware and tag-unaware network devices can coexist on the same network.

A switch port can have only one PVID, but can have as many VIDs as the Switch has memory in its VLAN table to store them.

Because some devices on a network may be tag-unaware, a decision must be made at each port on a tag-aware device before packets are transmitted – should the packet to be transmitted have a tag or not? If the transmitting port is connected to a tag-unaware device, the packet should be untagged. If the transmitting port is connected to a tag-aware device, the packet should be tagged.

### **Tagging and Untagging**

Every port on an 802.1Q compliant switch can be configured as tagging or untagging.

Ports with tagging enabled will put the VID number, priority and other VLAN information into the header of all packets that flow into and out of it.

If a packet has previously been tagged, the port will not alter the packet, thus keeping the VLAN information intact. Other 802.1Q compliant devices on the network to make packet-forwarding decisions can then use the VLAN information in the tag.

Ports with untagging enabled will strip the 802.1Q tag from all packets that flow into and out of those ports. If the packet doesn't have an 802.1Q VLAN tag, the port will not alter the packet. Thus, all packets received by and forwarded by an untagging port will have no 802.1Q VLAN information. (Remember that the PVID is only used internally within the Switch). Untagging is used to send packets from an 802.1Q-compliant network device to a non-compliant network device.

### **Ingress Filtering**

A port on a switch where packets are flowing into the Switch and VLAN decisions must be made is referred to as an ingress port. If ingress filtering is enabled for a port, the Switch will examine the VLAN information in the packet header (if present) and decide whether or not to forward the packet.

If the packet is tagged with VLAN information, the ingress port will first determine if the ingress port itself is a member of the tagged VLAN. If it is not, the packet will be dropped. If the ingress port is a member of the 802.1Q VLAN, the Switch then determines if the destination port is a member of the 802.1Q VLAN. If it is not, the packet is dropped. If the destination port is a member of the 802.1Q VLAN, the packet is forwarded and the destination port transmits it to its attached network segment.

If the packet is not tagged with VLAN information, the ingress port will tag the packet with its own PVID as a VID (if the port is a tagging port). The switch then determines if the destination port is a member of the same VLAN (has the same VID) as the ingress port. If it does not, the packet is dropped. If it has the same VID, the packet is forwarded and the destination port transmits it on its attached network segment.

This process is referred to as ingress filtering and is used to conserve bandwidth within the Switch by dropping packets that are not on the same VLAN as the ingress port at the point of reception. This eliminates the subsequent processing of packets that will just be dropped by the destination port.

### **Default VLANs**

The Switch initially configures one VLAN, VID = 1, called "default." The factory default setting assigns all ports on the Switch to the "default." As new VLANs are configured in Port-based mode, their respective member ports are removed from the "default."

Packets cannot cross VLANs. If a member of one VLAN wants to connect to another VLAN, the link must be through an external router.



**NOTE:** If no VLANs are configured on the Switch, then all packets will be forwarded to any destination port. Packets with unknown source addresses will be flooded to all ports. Broadcast and multicast packets will also be flooded to all ports.

An example is presented below:

VLAN Name	VID	Switch Ports
System (default)	1	5, 6, 7
Engineering	2	9, 10
Sales	5	1, 2, 3, 4

### **Port-based VLANs**

Port-based VLANs limit traffic that flows into and out of switch ports. Thus, all devices connected to a port are members of the VLAN(s) the port belongs to, whether there is a single computer directly connected to a switch, or an entire department.

On port-based VLANs, NICs do not need to be able to identify 802.1Q tags in packet headers. NICs send and receive normal Ethernet packets. If the packet's destination lies on the same segment, communications take place using normal Ethernet protocols. Even though this is always the case, when the destination for a packet lies on another switch port, VLAN considerations come into play to decide if the packet gets dropped by the Switch or delivered.

### **VLAN Segmentation**

Take for example a packet that is transmitted by a machine on Port 1 that is a member of VLAN 2. If the destination lies on another port (found through a normal forwarding table lookup), the Switch then looks to see if the other port (Port 10) is a member of VLAN 2 (and can therefore receive VLAN 2 packets). If Port 10 is not a member of VLAN 2, then the packet will be dropped by the Switch and will not reach its destination. If Port 10 is a member of VLAN 2, the packet will go through. This selective forwarding feature based on VLAN criteria is how VLANs segment networks. The key point being that Port 1 will only transmit on VLAN 2.

## 802.1Q VLAN Settings

The **VLAN List** tab lists all previously configured VLANs by VLAN ID and VLAN Name.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > 802.1Q VLAN Settings**, as show below:



**Figure 4-4 802.1Q VLAN Settings –VLAN List Tab window**

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

To create a new 802.1Q VLAN or modify an existing 802.1Q VLAN, click the **Add/Edit VLAN** tab.

A new tab will appear, as shown below, to configure the port settings and to assign a unique name and number to the new VLAN.

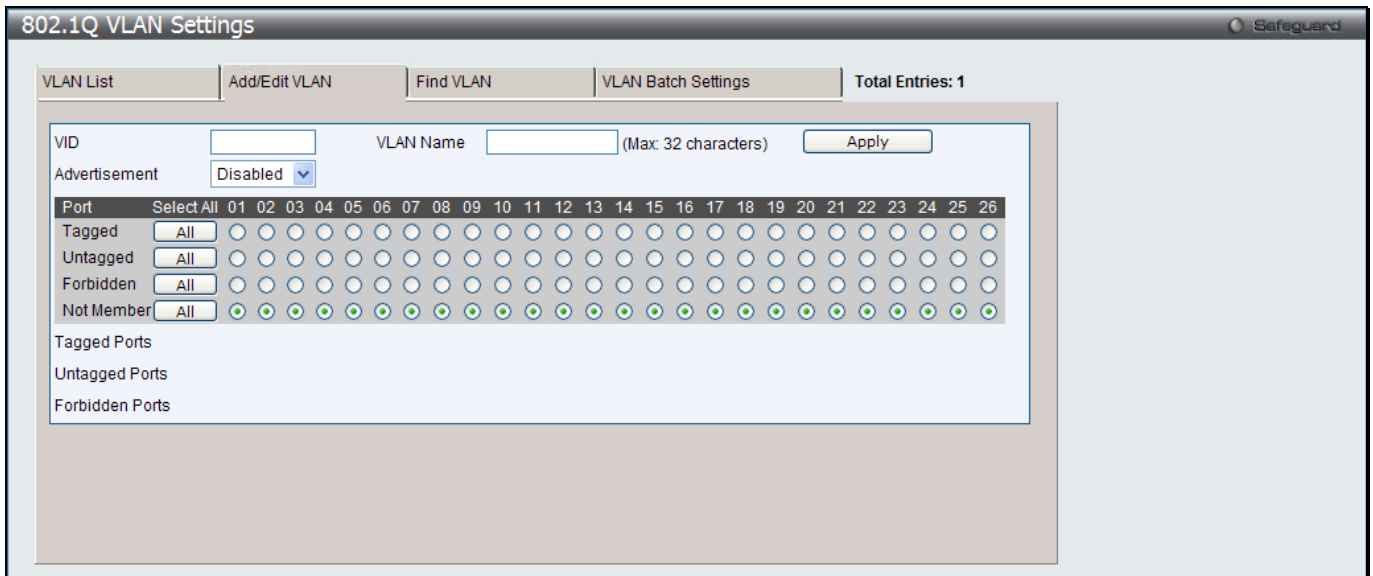


Figure 4-5 802.1Q VLAN Settings – Add/Edit VLAN Tab window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VID</b>	Allow the entry of a VLAN ID or displays the VLAN ID of an existing VLAN in the <b>Add/Edit VLAN</b> tab. VLANs can be identified by either the VID or the VLAN name.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Allow the entry of a name for the new VLAN or for editing the VLAN name in the <b>Add/Edit VLAN</b> tab.
<b>Advertisement</b>	Enable this function to allow the Switch sending out GVRP packets to outside sources, notifying that they may join the existing VLAN.
<b>Port</b>	Display all ports of the Switch for the configuration option.
<b>Tagged</b>	Specify the port as 802.1Q tagging. Clicking the radio button will designate the port as tagged. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all ports.
<b>Untagged</b>	Specify the port as 802.1Q untagged. Clicking the radio button will designate the port as untagged. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all ports.
<b>Forbidden</b>	Click the radio button to specify the port as not being a member of the VLAN and that the port is forbidden from becoming a member of the VLAN dynamically. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all ports.
<b>Not Member</b>	Click the radio button to allow an individual port to be specified as a non-VLAN member. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all ports.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

To search for a VLAN, click the **Find VLAN** tab. A new tab will appear, as shown below.

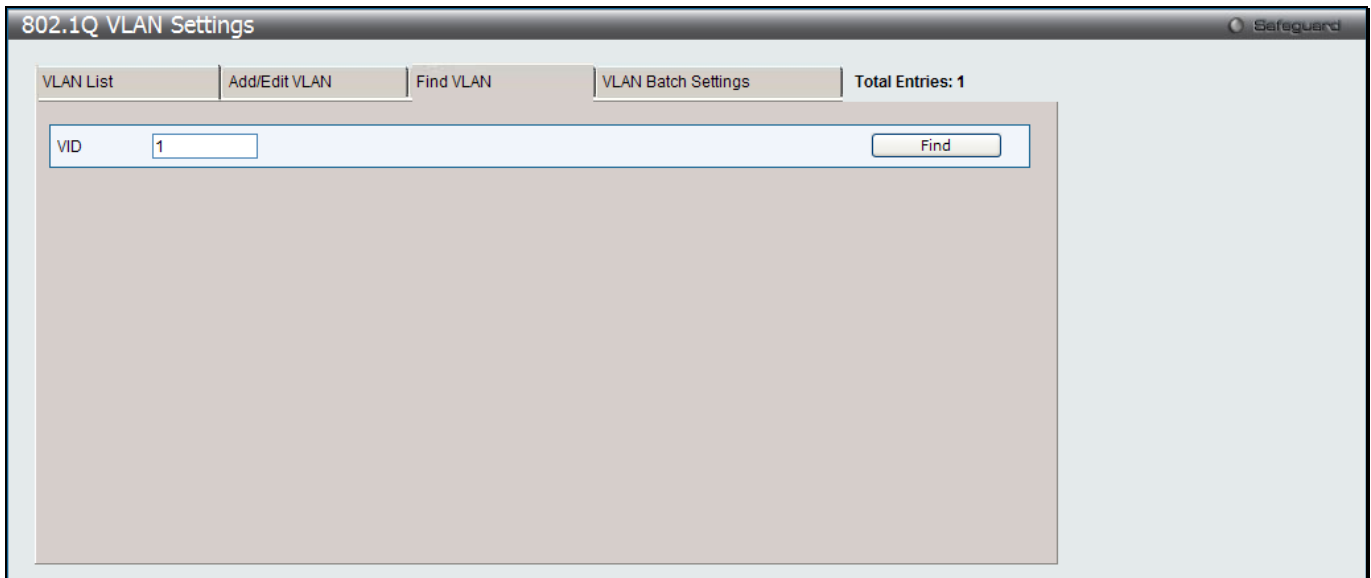


Figure 4-6 802.1Q VLAN Settings – Find VLAN Tab window

Enter the VLAN ID number in the field offered and then click the **Find** button. You will be redirected to the **VLAN List** tab.

To create, delete and configure a VLAN Batch entry click the **VLAN Batch Settings** tab, as shown below.

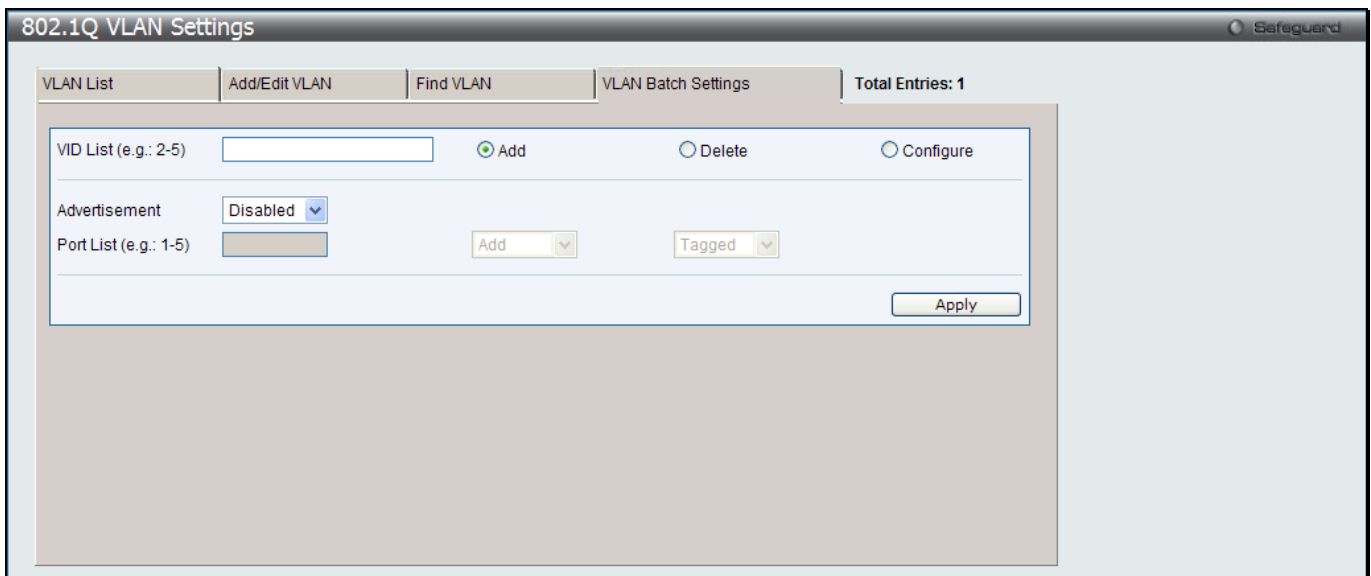


Figure 4-7 802.1Q VLAN Settings – VLAN Batch Settings Tab window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VID List</b>	Enter a VLAN ID List that can be added, deleted or configured.
<b>Advertisement</b>	Enabling this function will allow the Switch to send out GVRP packets to outside sources, notifying that they may join the existing VLAN.
<b>Port List</b>	Allows an individual port list to be added or deleted as a member of the VLAN.
<b>Tagged</b>	Specify the port as 802.1Q tagged. Use the drop-down menu to designate the port as tagged.
<b>Untagged</b>	Specify the port as 802.1Q untagged. Use the drop-down menu to designate the port as untagged.
<b>Forbidden</b>	Specify the port as not being a member of the VLAN and that the port is forbidden from becoming a member of the VLAN dynamically. Use the drop-down menu to designate

	the port as forbidden.
--	------------------------

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The Switch supports up to 4k static VLAN entries.

## 802.1v Protocol VLAN

### 802.1v Protocol Group Settings

The user can create Protocol VLAN groups and add protocols to that group. The 802.1v Protocol VLAN Group Settings support multiple VLANs for each protocol and allows the user to configure the untagged ports of different protocols on the same physical port. For example, it allows the user to configure an 802.1Q and 802.1v untagged port on the same physical port. The lower half of the table displays any previously created groups.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > 802.1v protocol VLAN > 802.1v Protocol Group Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-8 802.1v Protocol Group Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Group ID (1-16)</b>	Select an ID number for the group, between 1 and 16.
<b>Group Name</b>	This is used to identify the new Protocol VLAN group. Type an alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters.
<b>Protocol</b>	This function maps packets to protocol-defined VLANs by examining the type octet within the packet header to discover the type of protocol associated with it. Use the drop-down menu to toggle between <i>Ethernet II</i> , <i>IEEE802.3 SNAP</i> , and <i>IEEE802.3 LLC</i> .
<b>Protocol Value (0-FFFF)</b>	Enter a value for the Group. The protocol value is used to identify a protocol of the frame type specified. The form of the input is 0x0 to 0xffff. Depending on the frame type, the octet string will have one of the following values: For Ethernet II, this is a 16-bit (2-octet) hex value. For example, IPv4 is 800, IPv6 is 86dd, ARP is 806, etc. For IEEE802.3 SNAP, this is a 16-bit (2-octet) hex value. For IEEE802.3 LLC, this is a 2-octet IEEE 802.2 Link Service Access Point (LSAP) pair. The first octet is for Destination Service Access Point (DSAP) and the second octet is for Source.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries based on the information entered.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete Settings** button to remove the Protocol for the Protocol VLAN Group information for the specific entry.

Click the **Delete Group** button to remove the entry completely.



**NOTE:** The Group name value should be less than 33 characters.

## 802.1v Protocol VLAN Settings

The user can configure Protocol VLAN settings. The lower half of the table displays any previously created settings. To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > 802.1v protocol VLAN > 802.1v Protocol VLAN Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-9 802.1v Protocol VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Group ID</b>	Select a previously configured Group ID from the drop-down menu.
<b>Group Name</b>	Select a previously configured Group Name from the drop-down menu.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	This is the VLAN ID that, along with the VLAN Name, identifies the VLAN the user wishes to create.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	This is the VLAN Name that, along with the VLAN ID, identifies the VLAN the user wishes to create.
<b>802.1p Priority</b>	<p>This parameter is specified if you want to re-write the 802.1p default priority previously set in the Switch, which is used to determine the CoS queue to which packets are forwarded to. Once this field is specified, packets accepted by the Switch that match this priority are forwarded to the CoS queue specified previously by the user.</p> <p>Click the corresponding box if you want to set the 802.1p default priority of a packet to the value entered in the Priority (0-7) field, which meets the criteria specified previously in this command, before forwarding it on to the specified CoS queue. Otherwise, a packet will have its incoming 802.1p user priority re-written to its original value before being forwarded by the Switch.</p> <p>For more information on priority queues, CoS queues and mapping for 802.1p, see the QoS section of this manual.</p>
<b>Port List</b>	Select the specified ports you wish to configure by entering the port number in this field, or tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box.
<b>Search Port List</b>	This function allows the user to search all previously configured port list settings and display them on the lower half of the table. To search for a port list enter the port number you wish to view and click <b>Find</b> . To display all previously configured port lists on the bottom half of the screen click the <b>Show All</b> button, to clear all previously configured lists click the <b>Delete All</b> button.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Show All** button to display all the Protocol VLANs configured.



Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## GVRP

### GVRP Global Settings

Users can determine whether the Switch will share its VLAN configuration information with other GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP) enabled switches. In addition, Ingress Checking can be used to limit traffic by filtering incoming packets whose PVID does not match the PVID of the port. Results can be seen in the table under the configuration settings.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > GVRP > GVRP Global Settings**, as show below:

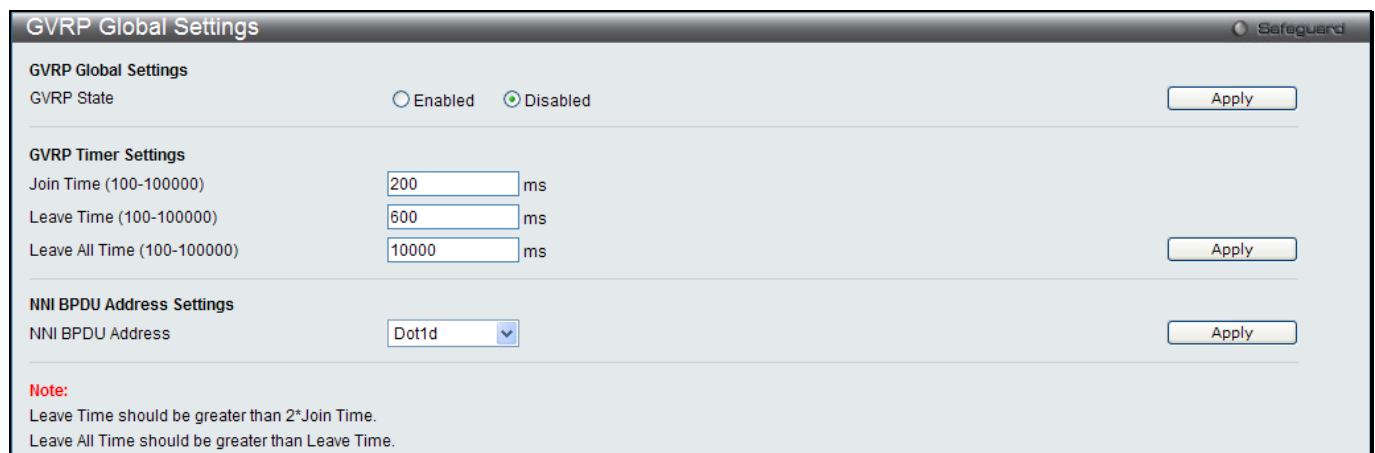


Figure 4-10 GVRP Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>GVRP State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the GVRP State.
<b>Join Time (100-100000)</b>	Enter the Join Time value in milliseconds.
<b>Leave Time (100-100000)</b>	Enter the Leave Time value in milliseconds.
<b>Leave All Time (100-100000)</b>	Enter the Leave All Time value in milliseconds.
<b>NNI BPDU Address</b>	Used to determine the GVRP PDU protocol address for GVRP in service provide site. It can use 802.1D GVRP address or 802.1ad service provider GVRP address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



**NOTE:** The **Leave Time** value should be greater than twice the **Join Time** value. The **Leave All Time** value should be greater than the **Leave Time** value.

### GVRP Port Settings

On this page the user can configure the GVRP port parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > GVRP > GVRP Port Settings**, as show below:

**GVRP Port Settings** Safeguard

From Port: 01 To Port: 01 PVID (1-4094):  GVRP: Disabled Ingress Checking: Enabled Acceptable Frame Type: All Apply

Port	PVID	GVRP	Ingress Checking	Acceptable Frame Type
1	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
2	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
3	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
4	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
5	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
6	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
7	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
8	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
9	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
10	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
11	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
12	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
13	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
14	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
15	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
16	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
17	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
18	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
19	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
20	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
21	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
22	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
23	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
24	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
25	1	Disabled	Enabled	All
26	1	Disabled	Enabled	All

Figure 4-11 GVRP Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the starting and ending ports to use.
<b>PVID (1-4094)</b>	This field is used to manually assign a PVID to a VLAN. The Switch's default is to assign all ports to the default VLAN with a VID of 1. The PVID is used by the port to tag outgoing, untagged packets, and to make filtering decisions about incoming packets. If the port is specified to accept only tagged frames - as tagging, and an untagged packet is forwarded to the port for transmission, the port will add an 802.1Q tag using the PVID to write the VID in the tag. When the packet arrives at its destination, the receiving device will use the PVID to make VLAN forwarding decisions. If the port receives a packet, and Ingress filtering is <i>Enabled</i> , the port will compare the VID of the incoming packet to its PVID. If the two are unequal, the port will drop the packet. If the two are equal, the port will receive the packet.
<b>GVRP</b>	The GARP VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP) enables the port to dynamically become a member of a VLAN. GVRP is <i>Disabled</i> by default.
<b>Ingress Checking</b>	This drop-down menu allows the user to enable the port to compare the VID tag of an incoming packet with the port VLAN membership. If enable ingress checking and the reception port is not the member port of the frame's VLAN, the frame shall be discarded.
<b>Acceptable Frame Type</b>	This field denotes the type of frame that will be accepted by the port. The user may choose between <i>Tagged Only</i> , which means only VLAN tagged frames will be accepted, and <i>All</i> , which mean both tagged and untagged frames will be accepted. <i>All</i> is enabled by default.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## MAC-based VLAN Settings

Users can create new MAC-based VLAN entries, search and delete existing entries. When a static MAC-based VLAN entry is created for a user, the traffic from this user will be able to be serviced under the specified VLAN.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > MAC-based VLAN Settings**, as show below:

MAC-based VLAN Settings

MAC Address   VID (1-4094)   VLAN Name

Total Entries: 1

MAC Address	VID	Status	Type
00-00-00-00-01-02	1	Active	Static

1/1 1

Figure 4-12 MAC-based VLAN Settings

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MAC Address</b>	Specify the MAC address.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Select this option and enter the VLAN ID.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Select this option and enter the VLAN name of a previously configured VLAN.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## Private VLAN Settings

A private VLAN is comprised of a primary VLAN, up to one isolated VLAN, and a number of community VLANs. A private VLAN ID is presented by the VLAN ID of the primary VLAN. The command used to associate or de-associate a secondary VLAN with a primary VLAN.

A secondary VLAN cannot be associated with multiple primary VLANs. The untagged member port of the primary VLAN is named as the promiscuous port. The tagged member port of the primary VLAN is named as the trunk port. A promiscuous port of a private VLAN cannot be promiscuous port of other private VLANs. The primary VLAN member port cannot be a secondary VLAN member at the same time, or vice versa. A secondary VLAN can only have the untagged member port. The member port of a secondary VLAN cannot be member port of other secondary VLAN at the same time. When a VLAN is associated with a primary VLAN as the secondary VLAN, the promiscuous port of the primary VLAN will behave as the untagged member of the secondary VLAN, and the trunk port of the primary VLAN will behave as the tagged member of the secondary VLAN. A secondary VLAN cannot be specified with advertisement. Only the primary VLAN can be configured as a layer 3 interface. The private VLAN member port cannot be configured with the traffic segmentation function.

This window allows the user to configure the private VLAN parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Private VLAN Settings**, as shown below:

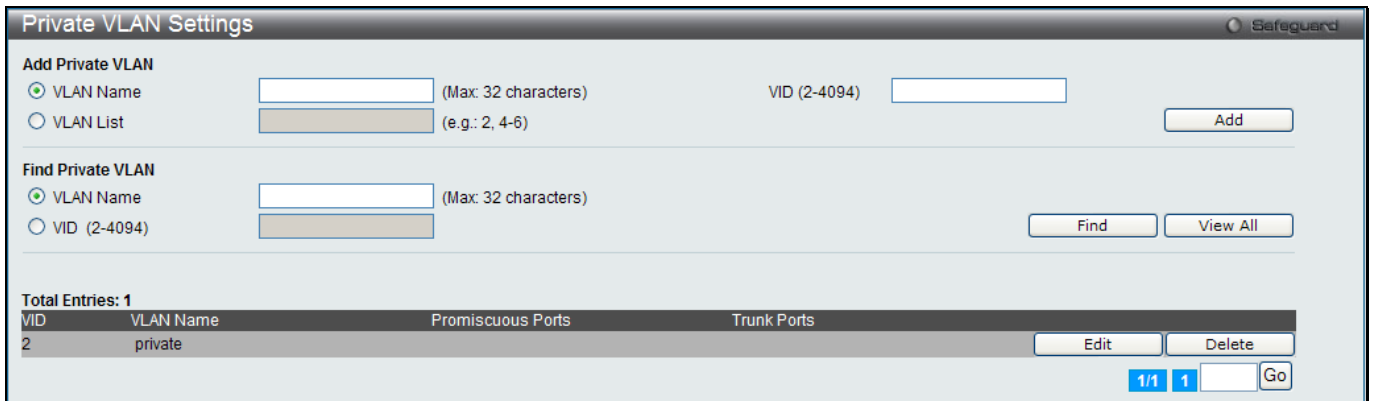


Figure 4-13 Private VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
VLAN Name	Enter a VLAN name.
VID (2-4094)	Enter a VID value.
VLAN List	Enter a list of VLAN ID.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the secondary VLAN.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

Click the **Edit** button to see the following window.



Figure 4-14 Private VLAN Settings - Edit window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Secondary VLAN Type	Use the drop-down menu to select secondary VLAN type between <i>Isolated</i> or <i>Community</i> .
Secondary VLAN Name	Enter a secondary VLAN name.
Secondary VLAN List	Enter a list of secondary VLAN ID.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the [View Private VLAN List](#) link to view all the private VLAN.

## PVID Auto Assign Settings

Users can enable or disable PVID Auto Assign Status. The default setting is enabled.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > PVID Auto Assign Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-15 PVID Auto Assign Settings window

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Super VLAN

This section is used to create a super VLAN. The specified VLAN must be an 802.1Q VLAN. If the specified VLAN does not exist, the operation will not be successful. If a user specifies the super VLAN name, the VLAN must be an existing 802.1Q VLAN. L3 route protocols, VRRP, multicast protocols, and IPV6 protocols cannot run on a super VLAN interface.

A super VLAN is used to aggregate multiple sub VLANs in the same IP subnet. A sub-VLAN is a L2 separate broadcast domain. The super VLAN cannot have any physical member ports; hosts reside on sub VLANs. Once an IP interface is bound to a super VLAN, the proxy ARP will enable automatically on the interface for communication between its sub VLANs. If an IP interface is bound to a super VLAN, it cannot bind to other VLANs. A super VLAN cannot be a sub VLAN of other super VLANs.

## Super VLAN Settings

This window is used to configure the super VLAN settings.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Super VLAN > Super VLAN Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 4-16 Super VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter a VLAN name.
<b>VID (2-4094)</b>	Enter a VID value.
<b>Sub VID List</b>	Enter a list of sub-VLANs.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Modify** button to configure the secondary VLAN.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Modify** button to see the following window.

Figure 4-17 Super VLAN Settings - Edit window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to add or delete the sub-VLANs.
<b>Sub VID List</b>	Enter a list of sub-VLANs.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## Sub VLAN Settings

This window is used to configure the sub VLANs of a super VLAN. A sub VLAN only can belong to one super VLAN and users cannot bind an IP interface to it.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Super VLAN > Sub VLAN Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 4-18 Sub VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter a VLAN name.
<b>VID List</b>	Click the radio button and enter a list of VLAN ID.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the [IP Range List](#) link to configure a range of IP addresses for sub-VLAN.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the [IP Range List](#) link, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-19 Sub VLAN Settings - IP Range List window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to add or delete the IP.
<b>From IP Address</b>	Enter the start IP address of the range.
<b>To IP Address</b>	Enter the end IP address of the range.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## Voice VLAN

### Voice VLAN Global Settings

Voice VLAN is a VLAN used to carry voice traffic from IP phone. Because the sound quality of an IP phone call will be deteriorated if the data is unevenly sent, the quality of service (QoS) for voice traffic shall be configured to ensure the transmission priority of voice packet is higher than normal traffic.

The switches determine whether a received packet is a voice packet by checking its source MAC address. If the source MAC addresses of packets comply with the organizationally unique identifier (OUI) addresses configured by the system, the packets are determined as voice packets and transmitted in voice VLAN.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Voice VLAN > Voice VLAN Global Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 4-20 Voice VLAN Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Voice VLAN State</b>	The state of the voice VLAN.
<b>Voice VLAN Name</b>	The name of the voice VLAN.
<b>Voice VID (1-4094)</b>	The VLAN ID of the voice VLAN.
<b>Priority</b>	The priority of the voice VLAN, the range is 0 – 7. The default priority is 5.

<b>Aging Time (1-65535)</b>	The aging time to set, the range is 1 – 65535 minutes. The default value is 720 minutes. The aging time is used to remove a port from voice VLAN if the port is an automatic VLAN member. When the last voice device stops sending traffic and the MAC address of this voice device is aged out, the voice VLAN aging timer will be started. The port will be removed from the voice VLAN after expiration of voice VLAN aging timer. If the voice traffic resumes during the aging time, the aging timer will be reset and stop.
<b>Log State</b>	Used to enable or disable sending of issue of voice VLAN log.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Voice VLAN Port Settings

This window is used to show the ports voice VLAN information.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Voice VLAN > Voice VLAN Port Settings**, as shown below:

From Port	To Port	State	Mode
01	01	Disabled	Auto Untagged

Port	State	Mode
1	Disabled	Auto Untagged
2	Disabled	Auto Untagged
3	Disabled	Auto Untagged
4	Disabled	Auto Untagged
5	Disabled	Auto Untagged
6	Disabled	Auto Untagged
7	Disabled	Auto Untagged
8	Disabled	Auto Untagged
9	Disabled	Auto Untagged
10	Disabled	Auto Untagged
11	Disabled	Auto Untagged
12	Disabled	Auto Untagged
13	Disabled	Auto Untagged
14	Disabled	Auto Untagged
15	Disabled	Auto Untagged
16	Disabled	Auto Untagged
17	Disabled	Auto Untagged
18	Disabled	Auto Untagged
19	Disabled	Auto Untagged
20	Disabled	Auto Untagged
21	Disabled	Auto Untagged
22	Disabled	Auto Untagged
23	Disabled	Auto Untagged
24	Disabled	Auto Untagged
25	Disabled	Auto Untagged
26	Disabled	Auto Untagged

Figure 4-21 Voice VLAN Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a range of port to display.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the state of the port.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure the mode of the port.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Voice VLAN OUI Settings

This window is used to configure the user-defined voice traffic's OUI. The OUI is used to identify the voice traffic. There are a number of pre-defined OUIs. The user can further define the user-defined OUIs if needed. The user-defined OUI cannot be the same as the pre-defined OUI.



To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Voice VLAN > Voice VLAN OUI Settings**, as shown below:

OUI Address	Mask	Description	Edit	Delete
00-01-E3-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	Siemens	Edit	Delete
00-03-6B-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	Cisco	Edit	Delete
00-09-6E-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	Avaya	Edit	Delete
00-0F-E2-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	Huawei&3COM	Edit	Delete
00-60-B9-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	NEC&Philips	Edit	Delete
00-D0-1E-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	Pingtel	Edit	Delete
00-E0-75-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	Veritel	Edit	Delete
00-E0-BB-00-00-00	FF-FF-FF-00-00-00	3COM	Edit	Delete

Figure 4-22 Voice VLAN OUI Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>OUI Address</b>	User defined OUI MAC address.
<b>Mask</b>	User defined OUI MAC address mask.
<b>Description</b>	The description for the user defined OUI.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## Voice VLAN Device

This window is used to show voice devices that are connected to the ports. The start time is the time when the device is detected on this port, the activate time is the latest time saw the device sending the traffic.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Voice VLAN > Voice VLAN Device**, as shown below:

Port	Voice Device	Start Time	Last Active Time
Total Entries: 0			

Figure 4-23 Voice VLAN Device window

## Voice VLAN LLDP-MED Voice Device

This window is used to show the voice devices being discovered by the LLDP-MED.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Voice VLAN > Voice VLAN LLDP-MED Voice Device**, as shown below:

Index	Local Port	Chassis ID Subtype	Chassis ID	Port ID Subtype	Port ID	Create Time	Remain Time
Total Entries: 0							

Figure 4-24 Voice VLAN LLDP-MED Voice Device window

## VLAN Trunk Settings

Enable VLAN on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without a VLAN Trunk, you must first configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with VLAN Trunk enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch, you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s). Refer to the following figure for an illustrated example.

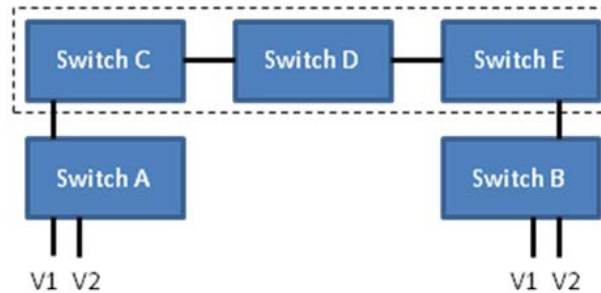


Figure 4-25 Example of VLAN Trunk

Users can combine a number of VLAN ports together to create VLAN trunks.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > VLAN Trunk Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-26 VLAN Trunk Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Trunk State</b>	Enable or disable the VLAN trunking global state.
<b>Ports</b>	The ports to be configured. By clicking the <b>Select All</b> button, all the ports will be included. By clicking the <b>Clear All</b> button, all the ports will not be included.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Browse VLAN

Users can display the VLAN status for each of the Switch's ports viewed by VLAN. Enter a VID (VLAN ID) in the field at the top of the window and click the **Find** button.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Browse VLAN**, as show below:

**Browse VLAN** Safeguard

VID:  Find

VID: 1  
 VLAN Name: default  
 VLAN Type: Static  
 Advertisement: Enabled

Total Entries: 2

01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U

1/2 1 2 > >>  Go

Note: T: Tagged Port, U: Untagged Port, F: Forbidden Port

Figure 4-27 Browse VLAN window

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.



**NOTE:** The abbreviations used on this page are **Tagged Port (T)**, **Untagged Port (U)** and **Forbidden Port (F)**.

## Show VLAN Ports

Users can display the VLAN ports of the Switch's viewed by VID. Enter a Port or a **Port List** in the field at the top of the window and click the **Find** button.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > VLAN > Show VLAN Ports**, as show below:

**Show VLAN Ports** Safeguard

Port List (e.g.: 1, 5-10)  Find View All

Total Entries: 26

Ports	VID	Untagged	Tagged	Dynamic	Forbidden
1	1	X	-	-	-
2	1	X	-	-	-
3	1	X	-	-	-
4	1	X	-	-	-
5	1	X	-	-	-
6	1	X	-	-	-
7	1	X	-	-	-
8	1	X	-	-	-
9	1	X	-	-	-
10	1	X	-	-	-

1/3 1 2 3 > >>  Go

Figure 4-28 Show VLAN Ports window

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## QinQ

Double or Q-in-Q VLANs allow network providers to expand their VLAN configurations to place customer VLANs within a larger inclusive VLAN, which adds a new layer to the VLAN configuration. This basically lets large ISP's create L2 Virtual Private Networks and also create transparent LANs for their customers, which will connect two or more customer LAN points without over-complicating configurations on the client's side. Not only will over-complication be avoided, but also now the administrator has over 4000 VLANs in which over 4000 VLANs can be placed, therefore greatly expanding the VLAN network and enabling greater support of customers utilizing multiple VLANs on the network.

Double VLANs are basically VLAN tags placed within existing IEEE 802.1Q VLANs which we will call SPVIDs (Service Provider VLAN IDs). These VLANs are marked by a TPID (Tagged Protocol ID), configured in hex form to be encapsulated within the VLAN tag of the packet. This identifies the packet as double-tagged and segregates it from other VLANs on the network, therefore creating a hierarchy of VLANs within a single packet.

Here is an example Double VLAN tagged packet.

Destination Address	Source Address	SPVLAN (TPID + Service Provider VLAN Tag)	802.1Q CEVLAN Tag (TPID + Customer VLAN Tag)	Ether Type	Payload
---------------------	----------------	---	--	------------	---------

Consider the example below:

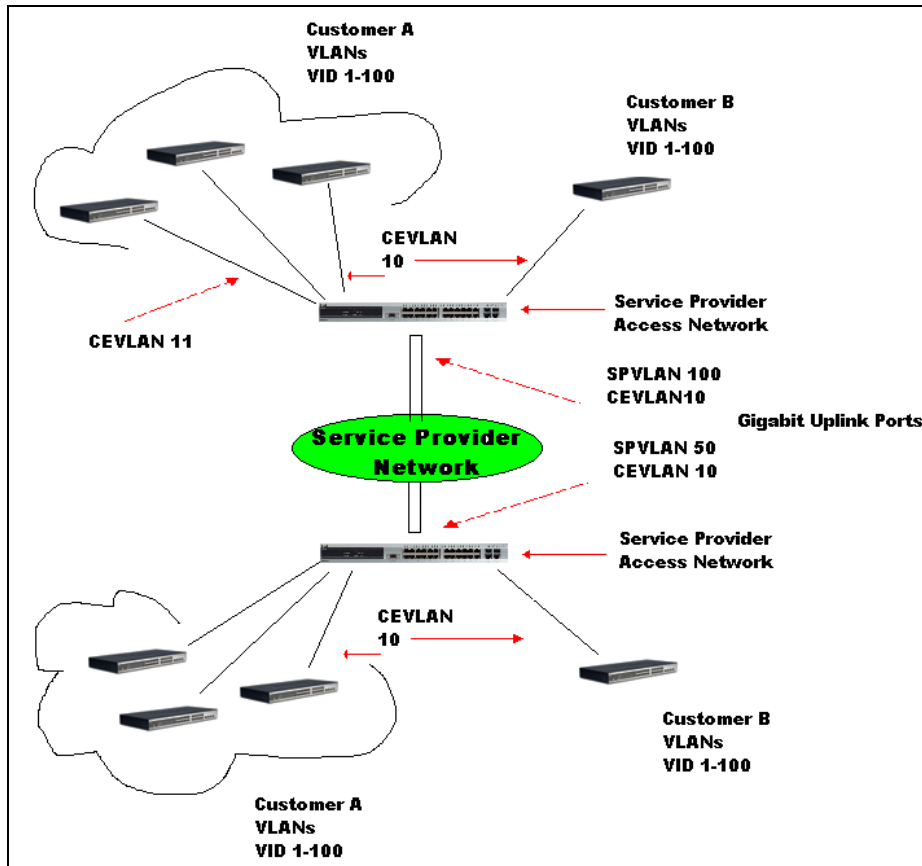


Figure 4-29 QinQ example window

In this example, the Service Provider Access Network switch (Provider edge switch) is the device creating and configuring Double VLANs. Both CEVLANS (Customer VLANs), 10 and 11, are tagged with the SPVID 100 on the Service Provider Access Network and therefore belong to one VLAN on the Service Provider’s network, thus being a member of two VLANs. In this way, the Customer can retain its normal VLAN and the Service Provider can congregate multiple Customer VLANs within one SPVLAN, thus greatly regulating traffic and routing on the Service Provider switch. This information is then routed to the Service Provider’s main network and regarded there as one VLAN, with one set of protocols and one routing behavior.

### Regulations for Double VLANs

Some rules and regulations apply with the implementation of the Double VLAN procedure.

1. All ports must be configured for the SPVID and its corresponding TPID on the Service Provider’s edge switch.
2. All ports must be configured as Access Ports or Uplink ports. Access ports can only be Ethernet ports while Uplink ports must be Gigabit ports.
3. Provider Edge switches must allow frames of at least 1522 bytes or more, due to the addition of the SPVID tag.
4. Access Ports must be an un-tagged port of the service provider VLANs. Uplink Ports must be a tagged port of the service provider VLANs.

5. The switch cannot have both double and normal VLANs co-existing. Once the change of VLAN is made, all Access Control lists are cleared and must be reconfigured.
6. Once Double VLANs are enabled, GVRP must be disabled.
7. All packets sent from the CPU to the Access ports must be untagged.
8. The following functions will not operate when the switch is in Double VLAN mode:
9. Guest VLANs.
10. Web-based Access Control.
11. IP Multicast Routing.
12. GVRP.
13. All Regular 802.1Q VLAN functions.

## QinQ Settings

This window is used to configure the Q-in-Q parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > QinQ > QinQ Settings**, as show below:

**QinQ Settings**

QinQ Global Settings

QinQ State:  Enabled  Disabled Apply

Inner TPID: 0x  (hex : 0x1-0xffff) Apply

From Port:  To Port:  Role:  Missdrop:  Outer TPID:  Add Inner Tag (hex : 0x1-0xffff):   Disabled Apply

Port	Role	Missdrop	Outer TPID	Add Inner Tag
1	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
2	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
3	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
4	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
5	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
6	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
7	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
8	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
9	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
10	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
11	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
12	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
13	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
14	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
15	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
16	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
17	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
18	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
19	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled
20	NNI	Disabled	0x88A8	Disabled

Figure 4-30 QinQ Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>QinQ State</b>	Click to enable or disable the Q-in-Q state.
<b>Inner TPID</b>	Enter an Inner TPID in SP-VLAN tag here.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to use in the configuration.
<b>Role</b>	Port role in Q-in-Q mode, it can be UNI port or NNI port
<b>Missdrop</b>	This option enables or disables C-VLAN based SP-VLAN assignment miss drop. If Missdrop is enabled, the packet that does not match any assignment rule in the Q-in-Q profile will be dropped. If disabled, then the packet will be forwarded and will be assigned to the PVID of the received port.

<b>Outer TPID</b>	Enter an Outer TPID in SP-VLAN tag here.
<b>Add Inner Tag</b>	Specify that an Inner Tag will be added to the entry. By default the <b>Disabled</b> option is selected.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## VLAN Translation Settings

This window is used to add translation relationship between C-VLAN and SP-VLAN. On ingress at UNI port, the C-VLAN tagged packets will be translated to SP-VLAN tagged packets by adding or replacing according the configured rule. On egress at this port, the SP-VLAN tag will be recovered to C-VLAN tag or be striped. The priority will be the priority in the SP-VLAN tag if the inner priority flag is disabled for the receipt port.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > QinQ > VLAN Translation Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-31 VLAN Translation Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to use in the configuration.
<b>CVID (1, 5-7)</b>	Enter the C-VLAN ID to match.
<b>Action</b>	The action indicates to add an S-tag before a C-tag or to replace the original C-tag by an S-tag.
<b>SVID (1-4094)</b>	Enter the SP-VLAN ID.
<b>Priority</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the priority of the s-tag.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove a specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Settings

This window is used to configure Layer 2 protocol tunneling settings.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Layer 2 Protocol tunneling Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-32 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling State</b>	Click to enable or disable the Layer 2 protocol tunneling state.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to use in the configuration.
<b>Type</b>	Specify the type of the ports. <i>UNI</i> - Specify the ports as UNI ports. <i>NNI</i> - Specify the ports as NNI ports. <i>None</i> - Disable tunnel on it.
<b>Tunneled Protocol</b>	Specify tunneled protocols on the UNI ports. <i>STP</i> - Specify to use the STP protocol. <i>GVRP</i> - Specify to use the GVRP protocol. <i>Protocol MAC</i> - Specify the destination MAC address of the L2 protocol packets that will tunneled on these UNI ports. The MAC address can be 01-00-0C-CC-CC-CC or 01-00-0C-CC-CC-CD. <i>All</i> - All tunnel enabled Layer 2 protocols will be tunneled on the ports.
<b>Threshold (0-65535)</b>	Specify the drop threshold for packets-per-second accepted on the UNI ports. The ports drop the PDU if the protocol's threshold is exceeded.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Spanning Tree

This Switch supports three versions of the Spanning Tree Protocol: 802.1D-1998 STP, 802.1D-2004 Rapid STP, and 802.1Q-2005 MSTP. 802.1D-1998 STP will be familiar to most networking professionals. However, since 802.1D-2004 RSTP and 802.1Q-2005 MSTP have been recently introduced to D-Link managed Ethernet switches, a brief introduction to the technology is provided below followed by a description of how to set up 802.1D-1998 STP, 802.1D-2004 RSTP, and 802.1Q-2005 MSTP.

### 802.1Q-2005 MSTP

Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol, or MSTP, is a standard defined by the IEEE community that allows multiple VLANs to be mapped to a single spanning tree instance, which will provide multiple pathways across the network. Therefore, these MSTP configurations will balance the traffic load, preventing wide scale disruptions when a single spanning tree instance fails. This will allow for faster convergences of new topologies for the failed instance. Frames designated for these VLANs will be processed quickly and completely throughout interconnected bridges utilizing any of the three spanning tree protocols (STP, RSTP or MSTP).

An MSTI ID will classify these instances. MSTP will connect multiple spanning trees with a Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST). The CIST will automatically determine each MSTP region, its maximum possible extent and will appear as one virtual bridge that runs a single spanning tree. Consequentially, frames assigned to different VLANs will follow different data routes within administratively established regions on the network, continuing to

allow simple and full processing of frames, regardless of administrative errors in defining VLANs and their respective spanning trees.

Each switch utilizing the MSTP on a network will have a single MSTP configuration that will have the following three attributes:

1. A configuration name defined by an alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters (defined in the **MST Configuration Identification** window in the Configuration Name field).
2. A configuration revision number (named here as a Revision Level and found in the **MST Configuration Identification** window) and;
3. A 4094-element table (defined here as a VID List in the **MST Configuration Identification** window), which will associate each of the possible 4094 VLANs supported by the Switch for a given instance.

To utilize the MSTP function on the Switch, three steps need to be taken:

1. The Switch must be set to the MSTP setting (found in the **STP Bridge Global Settings** window in the STP Version field)
2. The correct spanning tree priority for the MSTP instance must be entered (defined here as a Priority in the **MSTI Config Information** window when configuring MSTI ID settings).
3. VLANs that will be shared must be added to the MSTP Instance ID (defined here as a VID List in the **MST Configuration Identification** window when configuring an MSTI ID settings).

## 802.1D-2004 Rapid Spanning Tree

The Switch implements three versions of the Spanning Tree Protocol, the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) as defined by the IEEE 802.1Q-2005, the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) as defined by the IEEE 802.1D-2004 specification and a version compatible with the IEEE 802.1D-1998 STP. RSTP can operate with legacy equipment implementing IEEE 802.1D-1998; however the advantages of using RSTP will be lost.

The IEEE 802.1D-2004 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) evolved from the 802.1D-1998 STP standard. RSTP was developed in order to overcome some limitations of STP that impede the function of some recent switching innovations, in particular, certain Layer 3 functions that are increasingly handled by Ethernet switches. The basic function and much of the terminology is the same as STP. Most of the settings configured for STP are also used for RSTP. This section introduces some new Spanning Tree concepts and illustrates the main differences between the two protocols.

### Port Transition States

An essential difference between the three protocols is in the way ports transition to a forwarding state and in the way this transition relates to the role of the port (forwarding or not forwarding) in the topology. MSTP and RSTP combine the transition states disabled, blocking and listening used in 802.1D-1998 and creates a single state Discarding. In either case, ports do not forward packets. In the STP port transition states disabled, blocking or listening or in the RSTP/MSTP port state discarding, there is no functional difference, the port is not active in the network topology. Table 7-3 below compares how the three protocols differ regarding the port state transition.

All three protocols calculate a stable topology in the same way. Every segment will have a single path to the root bridge. All bridges listen for BPDU packets. However, BPDU packets are sent more frequently - with every Hello packet. BPDU packets are sent even if a BPDU packet was not received. Therefore, each link between bridges is sensitive to the status of the link. Ultimately this difference results in faster detection of failed links, and thus faster topology adjustment. A drawback of 802.1D-1998 is this absence of immediate feedback from adjacent bridges.

802.1Q-2005 MSTP	802.1D-2004 RSTP	802.1D-1998 STP	Forwarding	Learning
Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	No	No
<i>Discarding</i>	<i>Discarding</i>	<i>Blocking</i>	No	No
<i>Discarding</i>	<i>Discarding</i>	<i>Listening</i>	No	No
<i>Learning</i>	<i>Learning</i>	<i>Learning</i>	No	<b>Yes</b>
<b>Forwarding</b>	<b>Forwarding</b>	<b>Forwarding</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>Yes</b>



RSTP is capable of a more rapid transition to a forwarding state - it no longer relies on timer configurations - RSTP compliant bridges are sensitive to feedback from other RSTP compliant bridge links. Ports do not need to wait for the topology to stabilize before transitioning to a forwarding state. In order to allow this rapid transition, the protocol introduces two new variables: the edge port and the point-to-point (P2P) port.

### Edge Port

The edge port is a configurable designation used for a port that is directly connected to a segment where a loop cannot be created. An example would be a port connected directly to a single workstation. Ports that are designated as edge ports transition to a forwarding state immediately without going through the listening and learning states. An edge port loses its status if it receives a BPDU packet, immediately becoming a normal spanning tree port.

### P2P Port

A P2P port is also capable of rapid transition. P2P ports may be used to connect to other bridges. Under RSTP/MSTP, all ports operating in full-duplex mode are considered to be P2P ports, unless manually overridden through configuration.

### 802.1D-1998/802.1D-2004/802.1Q-2005 Compatibility

MSTP or RSTP can interoperate with legacy equipment and is capable of automatically adjusting BPDU packets to 802.1D-1998 format when necessary. However, any segment using 802.1D-1998 STP will not benefit from the rapid transition and rapid topology change detection of MSTP or RSTP. The protocol also provides for a variable used for migration in the event that legacy equipment on a segment is updated to use RSTP or MSTP.

The Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) operates on two levels:

- On the switch level, the settings are globally implemented.
- On the port level, the settings are implemented on a per-user-defined group of ports basis.



**NOTE:** STP should be disabled on the ring ports before enabling ERPS.

## STP Bridge Global Settings

On this page the user can configure the STP bridge global parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Spanning Tree > STP Bridge Global Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-33 STP Bridge Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<b>STP State</b>	Use the radio button to globally enable or disable STP.
<b>STP Version</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the desired version of STP: <i>STP</i> - Select this parameter to set the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) globally on the switch. <i>RSTP</i> - Select this parameter to set the Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) globally on the Switch. <i>MSTP</i> - Select this parameter to set the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) globally on the Switch.
<b>Forwarding BPDU</b>	This field can be <i>Enabled</i> or <i>Disabled</i> . When <i>Enabled</i> , it allows the forwarding of STP BPDU packets from other network devices. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>Bridge Max Age (6-40)</b>	The Max Age may be set to ensure that old information does not endlessly circulate through redundant paths in the network, preventing the effective propagation of the new information. Set by the Root Bridge, this value will aid in determining that the Switch has spanning tree configuration values consistent with other devices on the bridged LAN. The user may choose a time between 6 and 40 seconds. The default value is 20 seconds.
<b>Bridge Hello Time (1-2)</b>	The Hello Time can be set from 1 to 2 seconds. This is the interval between two transmissions of BPDU packets sent by the Root Bridge to tell all other switches that it is indeed the Root Bridge. This field will only appear here when STP or RSTP is selected for the STP Version. For MSTP, the Hello Time must be set on a port per port basis. The default is 2 seconds.
<b>Bridge Forward Delay (4-30)</b>	The Forward Delay can be from 4 to 30 seconds. Any port on the Switch spends this time in the listening state while moving from the blocking state to the forwarding state. The default is 15 seconds
<b>Tx Hold Count (1-10)</b>	Used to set the maximum number of Hello packets transmitted per interval. The count can be specified from 1 to 10. The default is 6.
<b>Max Hops (6-40)</b>	Used to set the number of hops between devices in a spanning tree region before the BPDU (bridge protocol data unit) packet sent by the Switch will be discarded. Each switch on the hop count will reduce the hop count by one until the value reaches zero. The Switch will then discard the BPDU packet and the information held for the port will age out. The user may set a hop count from 6 to 40. The default is 20.
<b>NNI BPDU Address</b>	Used to determine the BPDU protocol address for STP in service provide site. It can use 802.1D STP address or 802.1ad service provider STP address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



**NOTE:** The Bridge Hello Time cannot be longer than the Bridge Max Age. Otherwise, a configuration error will occur. Observe the following formulas when setting the above parameters:

Bridge Max Age  $\leq 2 \times$  (Bridge Forward Delay - 1 second)

Bridge Max Age  $> 2 \times$  (Bridge Hello Time + 1 second)

## STP Port Settings

STP can be set up on a port per port basis. It is advisable to define an STP Group to correspond to a VLAN group of ports.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Spanning Tree > STP Port Settings**, as show below:

**STP Port Settings** Safeguard

From Port: 01 To Port: 01

External Cost (0 = Auto): 0 Migrate: Yes Edge: True

P2P: Auto Port STP: Enabled Restricted Role: False

Restricted TCN: False Forward BPDU: Disabled

Apply

Port	External Cost	Edge	P2P	Port STP	Restricted Role	Restricted TCN	Forward BPDU	Hello Time
1	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
2	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
3	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
4	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
5	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
6	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
7	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
8	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
9	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
10	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2
11	Auto/200000	True/No	Auto/Yes	Enabled	False	False	Disabled	2/2

Port field:  
M = Trunk Master; T = Trunk Member  
External Cost, Edge, P2P and Hello Time fields:  
Value1/Value2 (Value1 = Configured value; Value2 = Actual value)

Figure 4-34 STP Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the starting and ending ports to be configured.
<b>External Cost (0=Auto)</b>	This defines a metric that indicates the relative cost of forwarding packets to the specified port list. Port cost can be set automatically or as a metric value. The default value is 0 (auto). Setting 0 for the external cost will automatically set the speed for forwarding packets to the specified port(s) in the list for optimal efficiency. The default port cost for a 100Mbps port is 200000 and the default port cost for a Gigabit port is 20000. Enter a value between 1 and 200000000 to determine the External Cost. The lower the number, the greater the probability the port will be chosen to forward packets.
<b>P2P</b>	Choosing the <i>True</i> parameter indicates a point-to-point (P2P) shared link. P2P ports are similar to edge ports; however they are restricted in that a P2P port must operate in full duplex. Like edge ports, P2P ports transition to a forwarding state rapidly thus benefiting from RSTP. A P2P value of <i>False</i> indicates that the port cannot have P2P status. <i>Auto</i> allows the port to have P2P status whenever possible and operate as if the P2P status were <i>True</i> . If the port cannot maintain this status, (for example if the port is forced to half-duplex operation) the P2P status changes to operate as if the P2P value were <i>False</i> . The default setting for this parameter is <i>Auto</i> .
<b>Restricted TCN</b>	Topology Change Notification is a simple BPDU that a bridge sends out to its root port to signal a topology change. Restricted TCN can be toggled between <i>True</i> and <i>False</i> . If set to <i>True</i> , this stops the port from propagating received topology change notifications and topology changes to other ports. The default is <i>False</i> .
<b>Migrate</b>	When operating in RSTP mode, selecting <i>Yes</i> forces the port that has been selected to transmit RSTP BPDUs.
<b>Port STP</b>	This drop-down menu allows you to enable or disable STP for the selected group of ports. The default is <i>Enabled</i> .
<b>Forward BPDU</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the flooding of BPDU packets when STP is disabled.
<b>Edge</b>	Choosing the <i>True</i> parameter designates the port as an edge port. Edge ports cannot create loops, however an edge port can lose edge port status if a topology change creates a potential for a loop. An edge port normally should not receive BPDU packets. If a BPDU packet is received, it automatically loses edge port status.

	Choosing the <i>False</i> parameter indicates that the port does not have edge port status. Alternatively, the <i>Auto</i> option is available.
<b>Restricted Role</b>	Use the drop-down menu to toggle Restricted Role between <i>True</i> and <i>False</i> . If set to <i>True</i> , the port will never be selected to be the Root port. The default is <i>False</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## MST Configuration Identification

This window allows the user to configure a MSTI instance on the Switch. These settings will uniquely identify a multiple spanning tree instance set on the Switch. The Switch initially possesses one CIST, or Common Internal Spanning Tree, of which the user may modify the parameters for but cannot change the MSTI ID for, and cannot be deleted.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Spanning Tree > MST Configuration Identification**, as show below:

Figure 4-35 MST Configuration Identification window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Configuration Name</b>	This name uniquely identifies the MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance). If a Configuration Name is not set, this field will show the MAC address to the device running MSTP.
<b>Revision Level (0-65535)</b>	This value, along with the Configuration Name, identifies the MSTP region configured on the Switch.
<b>MSTI ID (1-7)</b>	Enter a number between 1 and 7 to set a new MSTI on the Switch.
<b>Type</b>	This field allows the user to choose a desired method for altering the MSTI settings. The user has two choices: <i>Add VID</i> - Select this parameter to add VIDs to the MSTI ID, in conjunction with the VID List parameter. <i>Remove VID</i> - Select this parameter to remove VIDs from the MSTI ID, in conjunction with the VID List parameter.
<b>VID List</b>	This field is used to specify the VID range from configured VLANs set on the Switch. Supported VIDs on the Switch range from ID number 1 to 4094.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## STP Instance Settings

This window displays MSTIs currently set on the Switch and allows users to change the Priority of the MSTIs.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Spanning Tree > STP Instance Settings**, as show below:

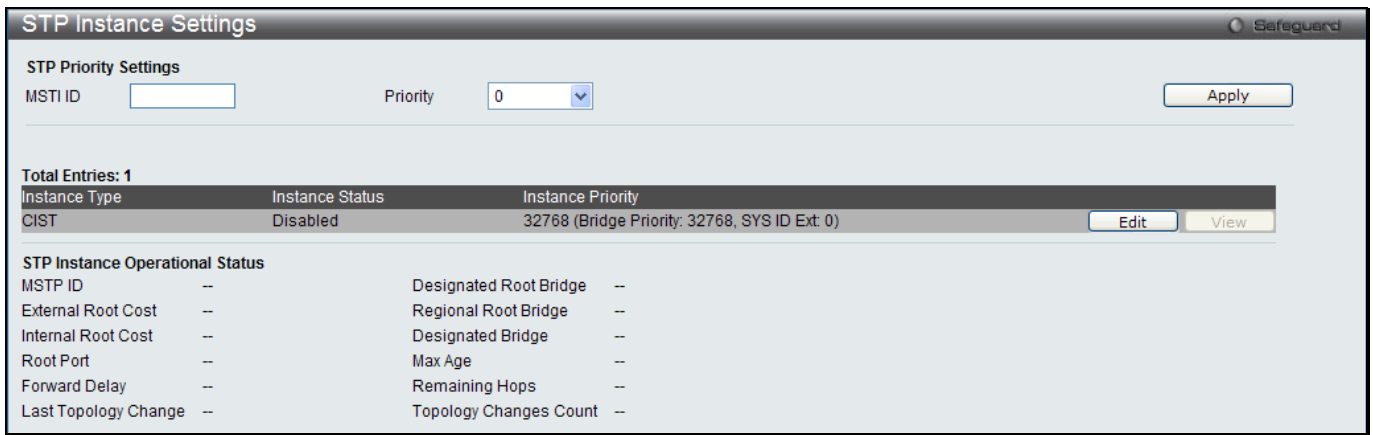


Figure 4-36 STP Instance Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MSTI ID</b>	Enter the MSTI ID in this field. An entry of 0 denotes the CIST (default MSTI).
<b>Priority</b>	Enter the priority in this field. The available range of values is from 0 to 61440.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **View** button to display the information of the specific entry.

## MSTP Port Information

This window displays the current MSTI configuration information and can be used to update the port configuration for an MSTI ID. If a loop occurs, the MSTP function will use the port priority to select an interface to put into the forwarding state. Set a higher priority value for interfaces to be selected for forwarding first. In instances where the priority value is identical, the MSTP function will implement the lowest MAC address into the forwarding state and other interfaces will be blocked. Remember that lower priority values mean higher priorities for forwarding packets.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Spanning Tree > MSTP Port Information**, as show below:

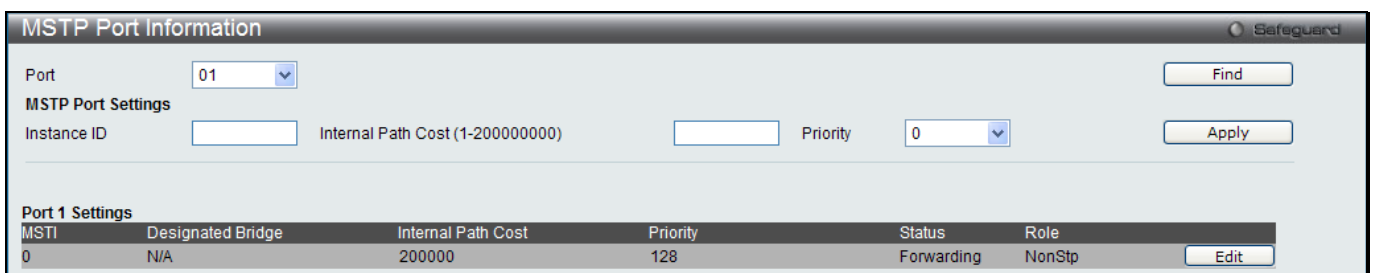


Figure 4-37 MSTP Port Information window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Select the port you want to configure.
<b>Instance ID</b>	The MSTI ID of the instance to be configured. Enter a value between 0 and 15. An entry of 0 in this field denotes the CIST (default MSTI).
<b>Internal Path Cost (1-200000000)</b>	This parameter is set to represent the relative cost of forwarding packets to specified ports when an interface is selected within an STP instance. Selecting this parameter with a value in the range of 1 to 200000000 will set the quickest route when a loop occurs. A lower Internal cost represents a quicker transmission. Selecting 0 (zero) for this parameter will set the quickest route automatically and optimally for an interface.

<b>Priority</b>	Enter a value between 0 and 240 to set the priority for the port interface. A higher priority will designate the interface to forward packets first. A lower number denotes a higher priority.
-----------------	--

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

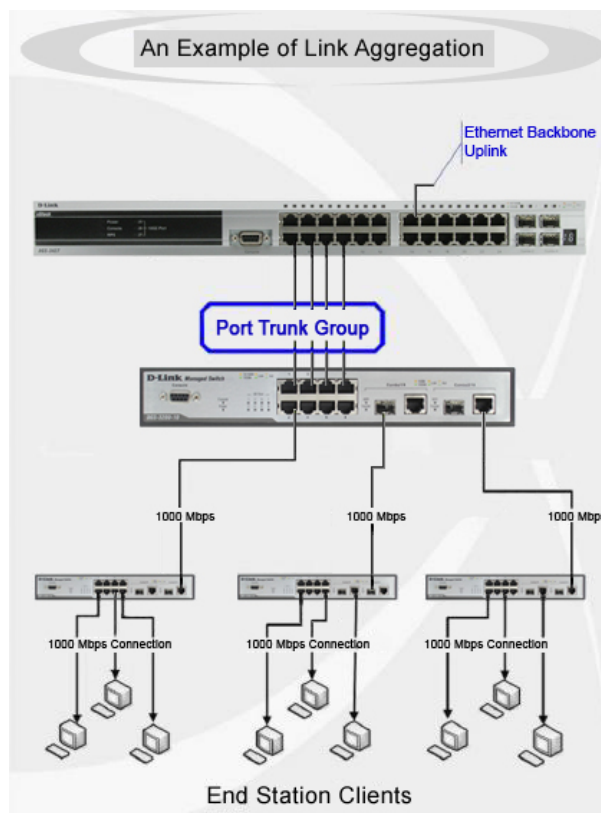
Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

## Link Aggregation

### Understanding Port Trunk Groups

Port trunk groups are used to combine a number of ports together to make a single high-bandwidth data pipeline. The DGS-3000-26TC supports up to 13 port trunk groups with two to eight ports in each group, the DGS-3000-24TC supports up to 12 port trunk groups with two to eight ports in each group, and the DGS-3000-10TC supports up to 5 port trunk groups with two to eight ports in each group. A potential bit rate of 8000Mbps can be achieved on the DGS-3000-10TC/24TC and 20000Mbps on the DGS-3000-26TC (when trunking the two 10Gbps ports).



**4-38 Example of Port Trunk Group**

The Switch treats all ports in a trunk group as a single port. Data transmitted to a specific host (destination address) will always be transmitted over the same port in a trunk group. This allows packets in a data stream to arrive in the same order they were sent.

Link aggregation allows several ports to be grouped together and to act as a single link. This gives a bandwidth that is a multiple of a single link's bandwidth.

Link aggregation is most commonly used to link a bandwidth intensive network device or devices, such as a server, to the backbone of a network.

All of the ports in the group must be members of the same VLAN, and their STP status, static multicast, traffic segmentation and 802.1p default priority configurations must be identical. Port locking, port mirroring, traffic control,



and 802.1X must not be enabled on the trunk group. Further, the LACP aggregated links must all be of the same speed and should be configured as full duplex.

The Master Port of the group is to be configured by the user, and all configuration options, including the VLAN configuration that can be applied to the Master Port, are applied to the entire link aggregation group.

Load balancing is automatically applied to the ports in the aggregated group, and a link failure within the group causes the network traffic to be directed to the remaining links in the group.

The Spanning Tree Protocol will treat a link aggregation group as a single link, on the switch level. On the port level, the STP will use the port parameters of the Master Port in the calculation of port cost and in determining the state of the link aggregation group. If two redundant link aggregation groups are configured on the Switch, STP will block one entire group; in the same way STP will block a single port that has a redundant link.



**NOTE:** If any ports within the trunk group become disconnected, packets intended for the disconnected port will be load shared among the other linked ports of the link aggregation group.

## Port Trunking Settings

On this page the user can configure the port trunk settings for the switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Link Aggregation > Port Trunking Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-39 Port Trunking Settings window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Algorithm</b>	This is the traffic hash algorithm among the ports of the link aggregation group. Options to choose from are <i>MAC Source</i> , <i>MAC Destination</i> , <i>MAC Source Destination</i> , <i>IP Source</i> , <i>IP Destination</i> and <i>IP Source Destination</i> .
<b>Group ID (1-13)</b>	Select an ID number for the group.
<b>Type</b>	This drop-down menu allows users to select between <i>Static</i> and <i>LACP</i> (Link Aggregation Control Protocol). <i>LACP</i> allows for the automatic detection of links in a Port Trunking Group.
<b>Master Port</b>	Choose the Master Port for the trunk group using the drop-down menu.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to toggle between <i>Enabled</i> and <i>Disabled</i> . This is used to turn a port trunking group on or off. This is useful for diagnostics, to quickly isolate a bandwidth intensive network device or to have an absolute backup aggregation group that is not under automatic control.
<b>Member Ports</b>	Choose the members of a trunked group. Up to eight ports can be assigned to a group.
<b>Active Ports</b>	Show the ports that are currently forwarding packets.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Clear All** button to clear out all the information entered.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.



**NOTE:** The maximum number of ports that can be configured in one Static Trunk or LACP Group are 8 ports.

## LACP Port Settings

In conjunction with the Trunking window, users can create port trunking groups on the Switch. Using the following window, the user may set which ports will be active and passive in processing and sending LACP control frames.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Link Aggregation > LACP Port Settings**, as show below:

Port	Activity
1	Passive
2	Passive
3	Passive
4	Passive
5	Passive
6	Passive
7	Passive
8	Passive
9	Passive
10	Passive
11	Passive
12	Passive
13	Passive
14	Passive
15	Passive
16	Passive
17	Passive
18	Passive
19	Passive
20	Passive
21	Passive
22	Passive
23	Passive
24	Passive
25	Passive
26	Passive

Figure 4-40 LACP Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	A consecutive group of ports may be configured starting with the selected port.
<b>Activity</b>	<p><i>Active</i> - Active LACP ports are capable of processing and sending LACP control frames. This allows LACP compliant devices to negotiate the aggregated link so the group may be changed dynamically as needs require. In order to utilize the ability to change an aggregated port group, that is, to add or subtract ports from the group, at least one of the participating devices must designate LACP ports as active. Both devices must support LACP.</p> <p><i>Passive</i> - LACP ports that are designated as passive cannot initially send LACP control frames. In order to allow the linked port group to negotiate adjustments and make changes dynamically, one end of the connection must have "active" LACP ports (see above).</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



# FDB

## Static FDB Settings

### Unicast Static FDB Settings

Users can set up static unicast forwarding on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > FDB > Static FDB Settings > Unicast Static FDB Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-41 Unicast Static FDB Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN name of the VLAN on which the associated unicast MAC address resides.
<b>VLAN List</b>	Click the radio button and enter a list of VLAN on which the associated unicast MAC address resides.
<b>MAC Address</b>	The MAC address to which packets will be statically forwarded. This must be a unicast MAC address.
<b>Port / Drop</b>	Allows the selection of the port number on which the MAC address entered above resides. This option could also drop the MAC address from the unicast static FDB. When selecting <i>Port</i> , enter the port number in the field.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

### Multicast Static FDB Settings

Users can set up static multicast forwarding on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > FDB > Static FDB Settings > Multicast Static FDB Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-42 Multicast Static FDB Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VID</b>	The VLAN ID of the VLAN the corresponding MAC address belongs to.
<b>Multicast MAC Address</b>	The static destination MAC address of the multicast packets. This must be a multicast MAC address.
<b>Port</b>	<p>Allows the selection of ports that will be members of the static multicast group and ports that are either forbidden from joining dynamically, or that can join the multicast group dynamically, using GMRP. The options are:</p> <p><i>None</i> - No restrictions on the port dynamically joining the multicast group. When <i>None</i> is chosen, the port will not be a member of the Static Multicast Group. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all the ports.</p> <p><i>Egress</i> - The port is a static member of the multicast group. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all the ports.</p>

Click the **Clear All** button to clear out all the information entered.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## MAC Notification Settings

MAC Notification is used to monitor MAC addresses learned and entered into the forwarding database. This window allows you to globally set MAC notification on the Switch. Users can set MAC notification for individual ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > FDB > MAC Notification Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-43 MAC Notification Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Enable or disable MAC notification globally on the Switch
<b>Interval (1-2147483647)</b>	The time in seconds between notifications. Value range to use is 1 to 2147483647.
<b>History Size (1-500)</b>	The maximum number of entries listed in the history log used for notification. Up to 500 entries can be specified.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the starting and ending ports for MAC notification.
<b>State</b>	Enable MAC Notification for the ports selected using the drop-down menu.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## MAC Address Aging Time Settings

Users can configure the MAC Address aging time on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > FDB > MAC Address Aging Time Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-44 MAC Address Aging Time Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MAC Address Aging Time (10-1000000)</b>	This field specify the length of time a learned MAC Address will remain in the forwarding table without being accessed (that is, how long a learned MAC Address

is allowed to remain idle). To change this option, type in a different value representing the MAC address' age-out time in seconds. The MAC Address Aging Time can be set to any value between *10* and *1000000* seconds. The default setting is *300* seconds.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## MAC Address Table

This allows the Switch's MAC address forwarding table to be viewed. When the Switch learns an association between a MAC address, VLAN and a port number, it makes an entry into its forwarding table. These entries are then used to forward packets through the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > FDB > MAC Address Table**, as show below:

VID	VLAN Name	MAC Address	Port	Type	Status
1	default	00-00-01-02-03-04	5	Static	Forward
1	default	00-01-02-03-04-00	CPU	Self	Forward
1	default	00-0C-6E-AA-B9-C0	1	Dynamic	Forward

Figure 4-45 MAC Address Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	The port to which the MAC address below corresponds.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter a VLAN Name for the forwarding table to be browsed by.
<b>VID List</b>	Enter a list of VLAN IDs for the forwarding table to be browsed by.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter a MAC address for the forwarding table to be browsed by.
<b>Security</b>	Tick the check box to display the FDB entries that are created by the security module.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear Dynamic Entries** button to delete all dynamic entries of the address table.

Click the **View All Entries** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Clear All Entries** button to remove all the entries listed in the table.

Click the **Add to Static MAC table** button to add the specific entry to the Static MAC table.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## ARP & FDB Table

On this page the user can find the ARP and FDB table parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > FDB > ARP & FDB Table**, as show below:

Interface	IP Address	MAC Address	VLAN Name	Port
System	10.90.90.10	00-0C-6E-AA-B9-C0	default	1

Figure 4-46 ARP &amp; FDB Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Select the port number to use for this configuration.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the MAC address to use for this configuration.
<b>IP Address</b>	Enter the IP address the use for this configuration.

Click the **Find by Port** button to locate a specific entry based on the port number selected.

Click the **Find by MAC** button to locate a specific entry based on the MAC address entered.

Click the **Find by IP Address** button to locate a specific entry based on the IP address entered.

Click the **View All Entries** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Add to IP MAC Port Binding Table** to add the specific entry to the IMPB Entry Settings window.

## L2 Multicast Control

### IGMP Snooping

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) snooping allows the Switch to recognize IGMP queries and reports sent between network stations or devices and an IGMP host. When enabled for IGMP snooping, the Switch can open or close a port to a specific device based on IGMP messages passing through the Switch.

### IGMP Snooping Settings

In order to use IGMP Snooping it must first be enabled for the entire Switch under IGMP Snooping Global Settings at the top of the window. You may then fine-tune the settings for each VLAN by clicking the corresponding **Edit** button. When enabled for IGMP snooping, the Switch can open or close a port to a specific multicast group member based on IGMP messages sent from the device to the IGMP host or vice versa. The Switch monitors IGMP messages and discontinues forwarding multicast packets when there are no longer hosts requesting that they continue.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-47 IGMP Snooping Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IGMP Snooping State</b>	Click to enable or disable the IGMP Snooping state.
<b>Max Learned Entry Value (1-1024)</b>	Enter the maximum learning entry value.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the IGMP Snooping Parameters Settings.

Click the [Modify Router Port](#) link to configure the IGMP Snooping Router Port Settings.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-48 IGMP Snooping Parameters Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Query Interval (1-65535)</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds between general query transmissions. The default setting is 125 seconds..
<b>Max Response Time (1-25)</b>	Specify the maximum time in seconds to wait for reports from members. The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>Robustness Value (1-7)</b>	Provides fine-tuning to allow for expected packet loss on a subnet. The value of the robustness value is used in calculating the following IGMP message intervals: By default, the robustness variable is set to 2.
<b>Last Member Query Interval (1-25)</b>	Specify the maximum amount of time between group-specific query messages, including those sent in response to leave-group messages. You might lower this interval to reduce the amount of time it takes a router to detect the loss of the last member of a group.
<b>Data Driven Group</b>	Specify the data driven group lifetime in seconds.

<b>Expiry Time (1-65535)</b>	
<b>Proxy Reporting Source IP</b>	Enter the source IP of proxy reporting integrated report.
<b>Proxy Reporting State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the proxy reporting. If enabled, multiple IGMP reports or leave for a specific (S, G) will be integrated into one report only before sending to the router port.
<b>Querier State</b>	Specify to enable or disable the querier state.
<b>Fast Leave</b>	Enable or disable the IGMP snooping fast leave function. If enabled, the membership is immediately removed when the system receive the IGMP leave message.
<b>State</b>	If the state is enable, it allows the switch to be selected as a IGMP Querier (sends IGMP query packets). If the state is disabled, then the switch can not play the role as a querier. <b>NOTE:</b> that if the Layer 3 router connected to the switch provides only the IGMP proxy function but does not provide the multicast routing function, then this state must be configured as disabled. Otherwise, if the Layer 3 router is not selected as the querier, it will not send the IGMP query packet. Since it will not also send the multicast-routing protocol packet, the port will be timed out as a router port.
<b>Report Suppression</b>	When enabled, multiple IGMP reports or leave for a specific (S, G) will be integrated into one report only before sending to the router port.
<b>Data Driven Learning State</b>	Specify to enable or disable the data driven learning state.
<b>Data Driven Learning Aged Out</b>	Specify to enable or disable the data driven learning aged out option.
<b>Version</b>	Specify the version of the IGMP general query sent by the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the [Modify Router Port](#) link, the following page will appear:

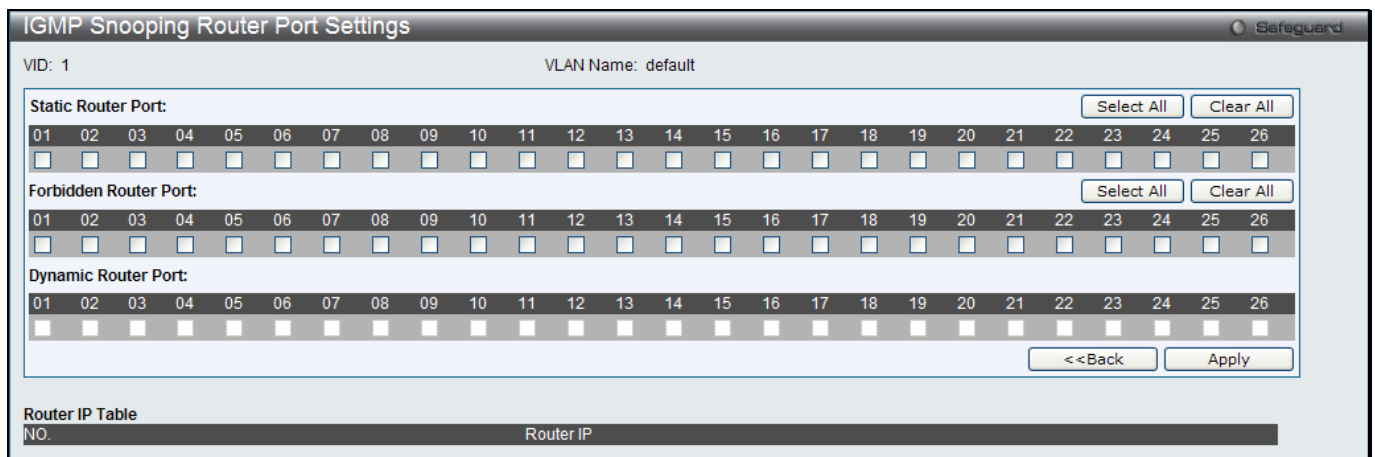


Figure 4-49 IGMP Snooping Router Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Static Router Port</b>	This section is used to designate a range of ports as being connected to multicast-enabled routers. This will ensure that all packets with such a router as its destination will reach the multicast-enabled router regardless of the protocol.
<b>Forbidden Router Port</b>	This section is used to designate a range of ports as being not connected to multicast-enabled routers. This ensures that the forbidden router port will not

	propagate routing packets out.
<b>Dynamic Router Port</b>	Displays router ports that have been dynamically configured.
<b>Ports</b>	Select the appropriate ports individually to include them in the Router Port configuration.

Click the **Select All** button to select all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Clear All** button to unselect all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## IGMP Snooping Rate Limit Settings

On this page the user can configure the IGMP snooping rate limit parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Rate Limit Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-50 IGMP Snooping Rate Limit Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port List</b>	Click the radio button and enter the port list used for this configuration.
<b>VID List</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VID list used for this configuration.
<b>Rate Limit (1-1000)</b>	Enter the IGMP snooping rate limit used. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to ignore the rate limit.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## IGMP Snooping Static Group Settings

Users can view the Switch's IGMP Snooping Group Table. IGMP Snooping allows the Switch to read the Multicast Group IP address and the corresponding MAC address from IGMP packets that pass through the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Static Group Settings**, as show below:



Figure 4-51 IGMP Snooping Static Group Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name of the multicast group.
<b>VID List</b>	Enter the VID list or of the multicast group.
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	Enter the IPv4 address.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Create** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-52 IGMP Snooping Static Group Settings window

Click the **Select All** button to select all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Clear All** button to unselect all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## IGMP Router Port

Users can display which of the Switch's ports are currently configured as router ports. A router port configured by a user (using the console or Web-based management interfaces) is displayed as a static router port, designated by S. A router port that is dynamically configured by the Switch is designated by D, while a Forbidden port is designated by F.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Router Port**, as show below:

Figure 4-53 IGMP Router Port window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
VID	Enter the VLAN ID of the multicast group.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.



**NOTE:** The abbreviations used on this page are **Static Router Port (S)**, **Dynamic Router Port (D)** and **Forbidden Router Port (F)**.

## IGMP Snooping Group

Users can view the Switch’s IGMP Snooping Group Table. IGMP Snooping allows the Switch to read the Multicast Group IP address and the corresponding MAC address from IGMP packets that pass through the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Group**, as show below:

Figure 4-54 IGMP Snooping Group window

The user may search the IGMP Snooping Group Table by either *VLAN Name* or *VID List* by entering it in the top left hand corner and clicking **Find**.

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
VLAN Name	The VLAN Name of the multicast group.
VID List	The VLAN ID list of the multicast group.
Port List	Specify the port number(s) used to find a multicast group.
Group IPv4 Address	Enter the IPv4 address.
Data Driven	If selected, only data driven groups will be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear Data Driven** button to delete the specific IGMP snooping group which is learned by the Data Driven feature of the specified VLAN.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Clear All Data Driven** button to delete all IGMP snooping groups which is learned by the Data Driven feature of specified VLANs.

## IGMP Snooping Forwarding Table

This page displays the switch's current IGMP snooping forwarding table. It provides an easy way for user to check the list of ports that the multicast group comes from and specific sources that it will be forwarded to. The packet comes from the source VLAN. They will be forwarded to the forwarding VLAN. The IGMP snooping further restricts the forwarding ports.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Forwarding Table**, as show below:

Figure 4-55 IGMP Snooping Forwarding Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	The VLAN Name of the multicast group.
<b>VID List</b>	The VLAN ID list of the multicast group.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## IGMP Snooping Counter

Users can view the switch's IGMP Snooping counter table.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Snooping Counter**, as show below:

Figure 4-56 IGMP Snooping Counter window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	The VLAN Name of the multicast group.
<b>VID List</b>	The VLAN ID list of the multicast group.

<b>Port List</b>	The <i>Port List</i> of the multicast group.
------------------	--

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.  
 Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.  
 Click the [Packet Statistics](#) link to view the IGMP Snooping Counter Table.

After clicking the [Packet Statistics](#) link, the following page will appear:

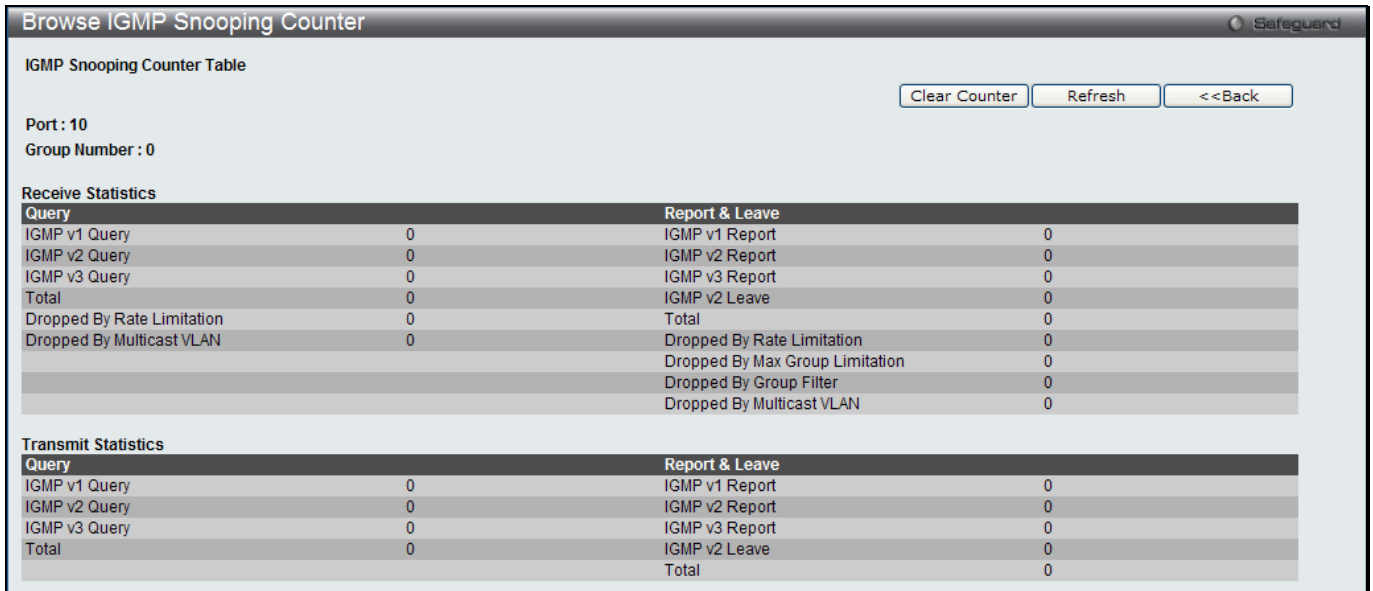


Figure 4-57 Browse IGMP Snooping Counter window

Click the **Clear Counter** button to clear all the information displayed in the fields.  
 Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new information will appear.  
 Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

## IGMP Host Table

This window is used to display the IGMP hosts that have joined groups on specific ports or specific VLANs.  
 To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > IGMP Host Table**, as show below:

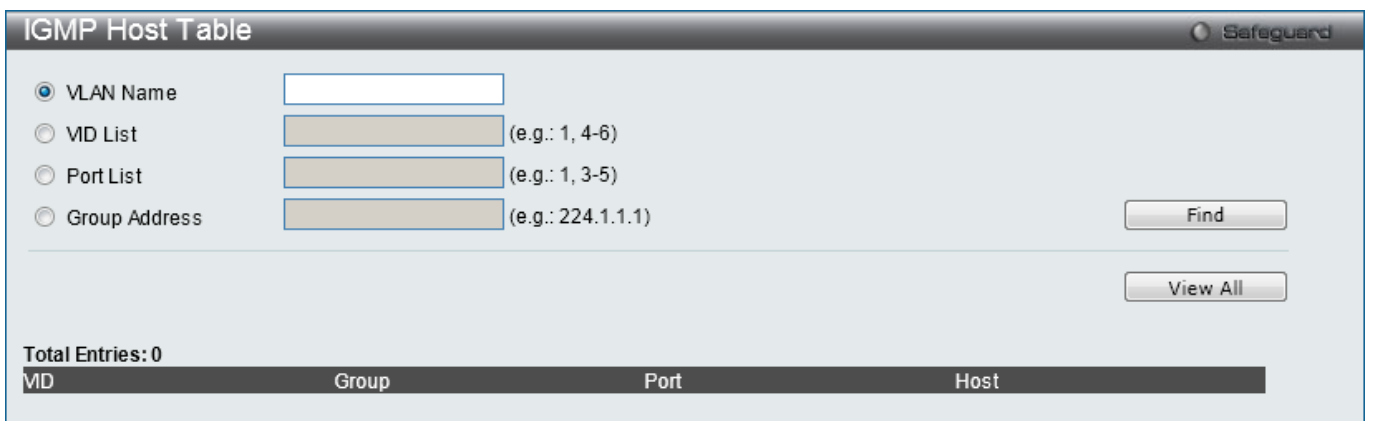


Figure 4-58 IGMP Host Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN name.

<b>VID List</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN ID or the list of VLAN IDs.
<b>Port List</b>	Click the radio button and enter the port or the list of ports.
<b>Group Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the group address.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## CPU Filter L3 Control Packet Settings

This window is used to discard and display Layer 3 control packets sent to the CPU from specific ports.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > IGMP Snooping > CPU Filter L3 control Packet Settings**, as show below:

Port	IGMP Query	DVMRP	PIM	OSPF	RIP	VRRP
1	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
2	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
3	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
4	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
5	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
6	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
7	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
8	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
9	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
10	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
11	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
12	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
13	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
14	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
15	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
16	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
17	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
18	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
19	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
20	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
21	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
22	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
23	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
24	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
25	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled
26	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled

Figure 4-59 CPU Filter L3 Control Packet Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the a range of ports to be configured.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the filtering function
<b>IGMP Query</b>	Tick to enable filtering IGMP Query protocol packets.
<b>DVMRP</b>	Tick to enable filtering DVMRP protocol packets.
<b>PIM</b>	Tick to enable filtering PIM protocol packets.
<b>OSPF</b>	Tick to enable filtering OSPF protocol packets.
<b>RIP</b>	Tick to enable filtering RIP protocol packets.
<b>VRRP</b>	Tick to enable filtering VRRP protocol packets.
<b>All</b>	Tick to enable filtering all layer 3 control packets.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## MLD Snooping

Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) Snooping is an IPv6 function used similarly to IGMP snooping in IPv4. It is used to discover ports on a VLAN that are requesting multicast data. Instead of flooding all ports on a selected VLAN with multicast traffic, MLD snooping will only forward multicast data to ports that wish to receive this data through the use of queries and reports produced by the requesting ports and the source of the multicast traffic.

MLD snooping is accomplished through the examination of the layer 3 part of an MLD control packet transferred between end nodes and a MLD router. When the Switch discovers that this route is requesting multicast traffic, it adds the port directly attached to it into the correct IPv6 multicast table, and begins the process of forwarding multicast traffic to that port. This entry in the multicast routing table records the port, the VLAN ID, and the associated multicast IPv6 multicast group address, and then considers this port to be an active listening port. The active listening ports are the only ones to receive multicast group data.

### **MLD Control Messages**

Three types of messages are transferred between devices using MLD snooping. These three messages are all defined by four ICMPv6 packet headers, labeled 130, 131, 132, and 143.

Chapter 1 **Multicast Listener Query** – Similar to the IGMPv2 Host Membership Query for IPv4, and labeled as 130 in the ICMPv6 packet header, this message is sent by the router to ask if any link is requesting multicast data. There are two types of MLD query messages emitted by the router. The General Query is used to advertise all multicast addresses that are ready to send multicast data to all listening ports, and the Multicast Specific query, which advertises a specific multicast address that is also ready. These two types of messages are distinguished by a multicast destination address located in the IPv6 header and a multicast address in the Multicast Listener Query Message.

Chapter 2 **Multicast Listener Report, Version 1** – Comparable to the Host Membership Report in IGMPv2, and labeled as 131 in the ICMP packet header, this message is sent by the listening port to the Switch stating that it is interested in receiving multicast data from a multicast address in response to the Multicast Listener Query message.

Chapter 3 **Multicast Listener Done** – Akin to the Leave Group Message in IGMPv2, and labeled as 132 in the ICMPv6 packet header, this message is sent by the multicast listening port stating that it is no longer interested in receiving multicast data from a specific multicast group address, therefore stating that it is “done” with the multicast data from this address. Once this message is received by the Switch, it will no longer forward multicast traffic from a specific multicast group address to this listening port.

Chapter 4 **Multicast Listener Report, Version 2** - Comparable to the Host Membership Report in IGMPv3, and labeled as 143 in the ICMP packet header, this message is sent by the listening port to the Switch stating that it is interested in receiving multicast data from a multicast address in response to the Multicast Listener Query message.

### **Data Driven Learning**

The Switch allows you to implement data driven learning for MLD snooping groups. If data-driven learning, also known as dynamic IP multicast learning, is enabled for a VLAN, when the Switch receives IP multicast traffic on the VLAN, an MLD snooping group is created. Learning of an entry is not activated by MLD membership registration, but activated by the traffic. For an ordinary MLD snooping entry, the MLD protocol will take care of the aging out of the entry. For a data-driven entry, the entry can be specified not to age out or to age out by a timer.

When the data driven learning State is enabled, the multicast filtering mode for all ports is ignored. This means multicast packets will be flooded.



**NOTE:** If a data-driven group is created and MLD member ports are learned later, the entry will become an ordinary MLD snooping entry. In other words, the aging out mechanism will follow the conditions of an ordinary MLD snooping entry.

Data driven learning is useful on a network which has video cameras connected to a Layer 2 switch that is recording and sending IP multicast data. The switch needs to forward IP data to a data centre without dropping or flooding any packets. Since video cameras do not have the capability to run MLD protocols, the IP multicast data will be dropped with the original MLD snooping function.

## MLD Snooping Settings

Users can configure the settings for MLD snooping.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Snooping Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-60 MLD Snooping Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MLD Snooping State</b>	Click to enable or disable the MLD snooping state.
<b>Max Learning Entry Value (1-1024)</b>	Enter the maximum learning entry value.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the MLD Snooping Parameters Settings for a specific entry.

Click the [Modify Router Port](#) link to configure the MLD Snooping Router Port Settings for a specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-61 MLD Snooping Parameters Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Query Interval (1-65535)</b>	Specify the amount of time in seconds between general query transmissions. The default setting is 125 seconds.
<b>Max Response Time (1-25)</b>	The maximum time in seconds to wait for reports from listeners. The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>Robustness Value (1-7)</b>	Provides fine-tuning to allow for expected packet loss on a subnet. The value of the robustness variable is used in calculating the following MLD message intervals:



	<p><i>Group listener interval</i> - Amount of time that must pass before a multicast router decides there are no more listeners of a group on a network.</p> <p><i>Other Querier present interval</i> - Amount of time that must pass before a multicast router decides that there is no longer another multicast router that is the Querier.</p> <p><i>Last listener query count</i> - Number of group-specific queries sent before the router assumes there are no local listeners of a group. The default number is the value of the robustness variable.</p> <p>By default, the robustness variable is set to 2. You might want to increase this value if you expect a subnet to be loosely.</p>
<b>Last Listener Query Interval (1-25)</b>	The maximum amount of time between group-specific query messages, including those sent in response to done-group messages. You might lower this interval to reduce the amount of time it takes a router to detect the loss of the last listener of a group.
<b>Data Driven Group Expiry Time (1-65535)</b>	Enter the data driven group expiry time value.
<b>Proxy Reporting Source IP</b>	Enter the source IP of proxy reporting integrated report.
<b>Proxy Reporting State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the proxy reporting.
<b>Querier State</b>	This allows the switch to be specified as an MLD Querier (sends MLD query packets) or a Non-Querier (does not send MLD query packets). Set to enable or disable.
<b>Fast Done</b>	Here the user can enable or disable the fast done feature.
<b>State</b>	Used to enable or disable MLD snooping for the specified VLAN. This field is <i>Disabled</i> by default.
<b>Report Suppression</b>	Enable or disable the report suppression features.
<b>Data Driven Learning State</b>	Enable or disable data driven learning of MLD snooping groups.
<b>Data Driven Learning Aged Out</b>	Enable or disable the age out function for data driven entries.
<b>Version</b>	Specify the version of the MLD general query sent by the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the [Modify Router Port](#) link, the following page will appear:

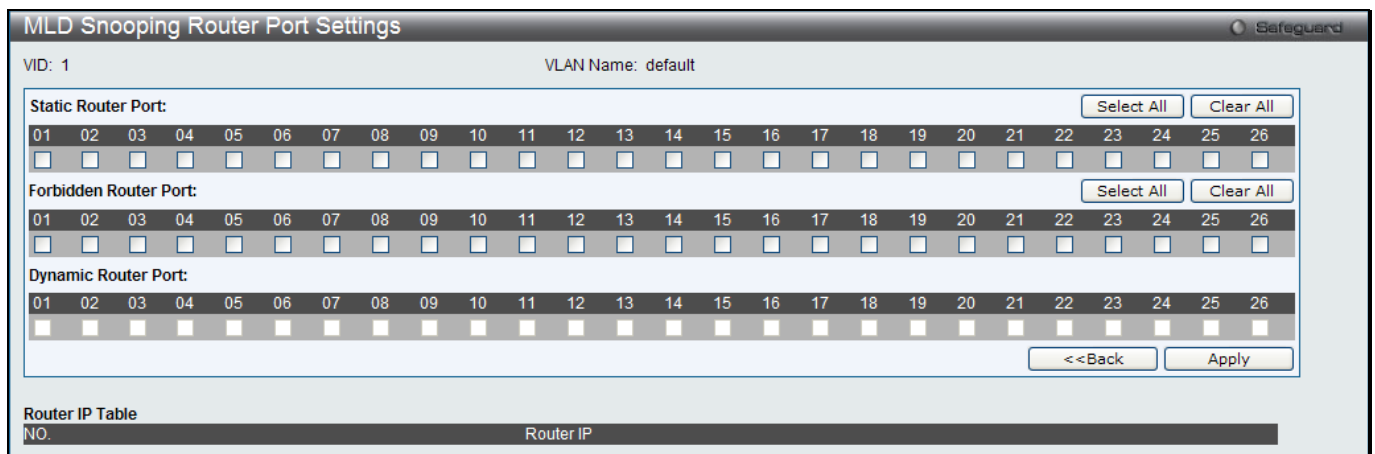


Figure 4-62 MLD Snooping Router Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------



<b>Static Router Port</b>	This section is used to designate a range of ports as being connected to multicast-enabled routers. This will ensure that all packets with such a router as its destination will reach the multicast-enabled router regardless of the protocol.
<b>Forbidden Router Port</b>	This section is used to designate a range of ports as being not connected to multicast-enabled routers. This ensures that the forbidden router port will not propagate routing packets out.
<b>Dynamic Router Port</b>	Display router ports that have been dynamically configured.
<b>Ports</b>	Select the appropriate ports individually to include them in the Router Port configuration.

Click the **Select All** button to select all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Clear All** button to unselect all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## MLD Snooping Rate Limit Settings

Users can configure the rate limit of the MLD control packet that the switch can process on a specific port or VLAN in this page.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Snooping Rate Limit Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-63 MLD Snooping Rate Limit Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port List</b>	Enter the Port List here.
<b>VID List</b>	Enter the VID List value here.
<b>Rate Limit</b>	Configure the rate limit of MLD control packet that the switch can process on a specific port/VLAN. The rate is specified in packet per second. The packet that exceeds the limited rate will be dropped. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to lift the rate limit requirement.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## MLD Snooping Static Group Settings

This page used to configure the MLD snooping multicast group static members.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Snooping Static Group Settings**, as show below:

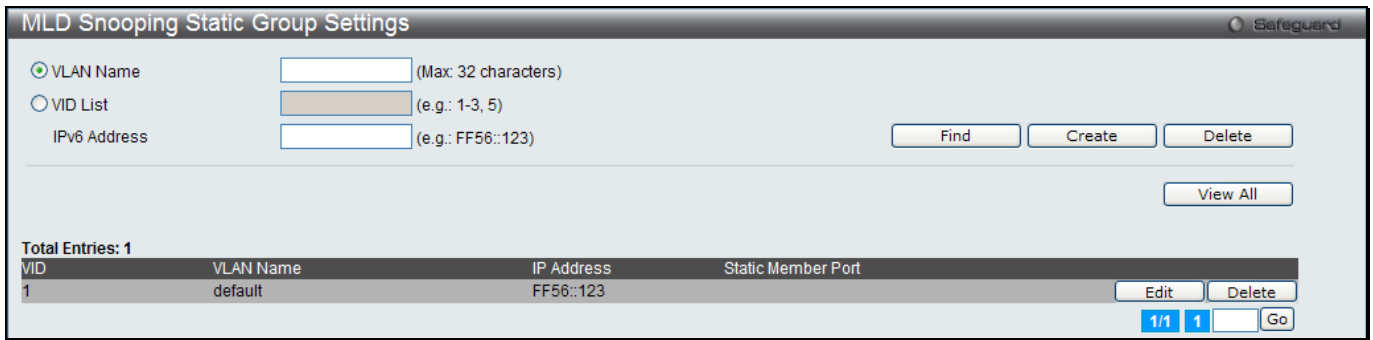


Figure 4-64 MLD Snooping Static Group Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	The name of the VLAN on which the static group resides.
<b>VID List</b>	The ID of the VLAN on which the static group resides.
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Specify the multicast group IPv6 address.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Create** button to add a static group.

Click the **Delete** button to delete a static group.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

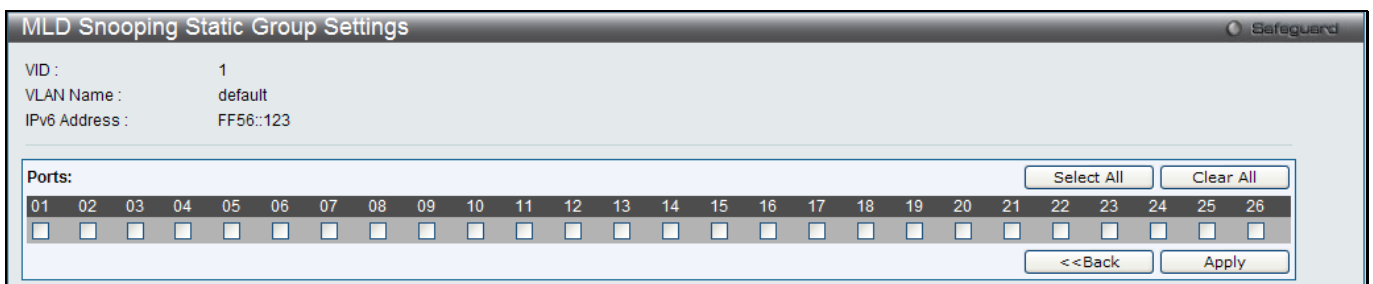


Figure 4-65 MLD Snooping Static Group Settings – Edit window

Parameter	Description
<b>Ports</b>	Tick the check boxes to select the ports to be configured.

Click the **Select All** button to select all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Clear All** button to unselect all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## MLD Router Port

Users can display which of the Switch’s ports are currently configured as router ports in IPv6. A router port configured by a user (using the console or Web-based management interfaces) is displayed as a static router port, designated by S. A router port that is dynamically configured by the Switch is designated by D, while a Forbidden port is designated by F.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Router Port**, as show below:

Figure 4-66 MLD Router Port window

Parameter	Description
VID	Enter a VLAN ID.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.



**NOTE:** The abbreviations used on this page are **Static Router Port (S)**, **Dynamic Router Port (D)** and **Forbidden Router Port (F)**.

## MLD Snooping Group

Users can view MLD Snooping Groups present on the Switch. MLD Snooping is an IPv6 function comparable to IGMP Snooping for IPv4.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Snooping Group**, as show below:

Figure 4-67 MLD Snooping Group window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN name of the multicast group.
<b>VID List</b>	Click the radio button and enter a VLAN list of the multicast group.
<b>Port List</b>	Specify the port number(s) used to find a multicast group.
<b>Group IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the group IPv6 address used here.
<b>Data Driven</b>	If Data Drive is selected, only data driven groups will be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear Data Driven** button to delete the specific MLD snooping group which is learned by the Data Driven feature of the specified VLAN.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Clear All Data Driven** button to delete all MLD snooping groups which is learned by the Data Driven feature of specified VLANs.

## MLD Snooping Forwarding Table

This page displays the switch's current MLD snooping forwarding table. It provides an easy way for user to check the list of ports that the multicast group comes from and specific sources that it will be forwarded to. The packet comes from the source VLAN. They will be forwarded to the forwarding VLAN.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Snooping Forwarding Table**, as show below:

Figure 4-68 MLD Snooping Forwarding Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	The name of the VLAN for which you want to view MLD snooping forwarding table information.
<b>VID List</b>	The ID of the VLAN for which you want to view MLD snooping forwarding table information.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## MLD Snooping Counter

This page displays the statistics counter for MLD protocol packets that are received by the switch since MLD Snooping is enabled.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Snooping Counter**, as show below:

Figure 4-69 MLD Snooping Counter window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Specify a VLAN name to be displayed.
<b>VID List</b>	Specify a list of VLANs to be displayed.
<b>Port List</b>	Specify a list of ports to be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the [Packet Statistics](#) link to view the MLD Snooping Counter Settings for the specific entry.

After clicking the [Packet Statistics](#) link, the following page will appear:

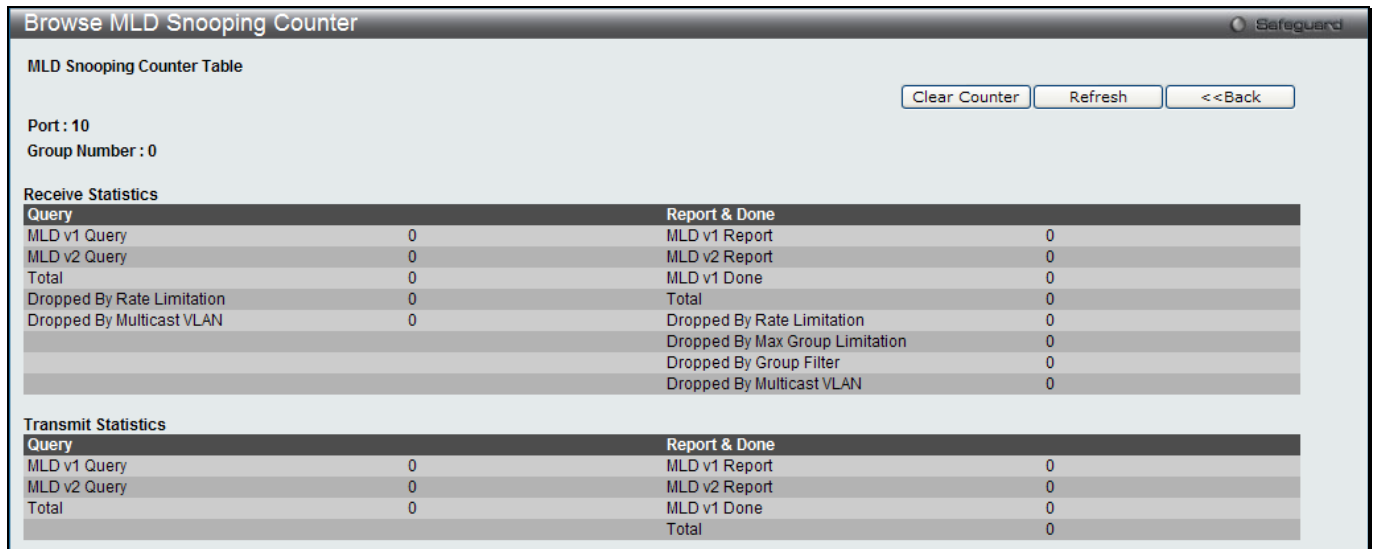


Figure 4-70 Browse MLD Snooping Counter window

Click the **Clear Counter** button to clear all the information displayed in the fields.

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new information will appear.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

## MLD Host Table

This window is used to display the MLD hosts that have joined groups on specific ports or specific VLANs.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > MLD Snooping > MLD Host Table**, as show below:

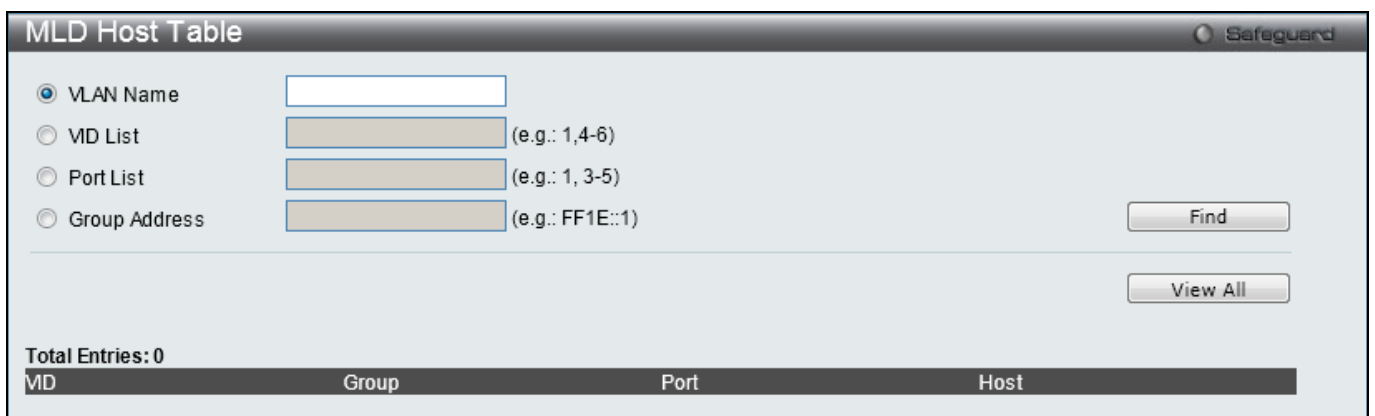


Figure 4-71 MLD Host Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name.
<b>VID List</b>	Enter the VLAN ID or the list of VLAN IDs.
<b>Port List</b>	Enter the port or the list of ports.
<b>Group Address</b>	Enter the group IPv6 address.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## Multicast VLAN

In a switching environment, multiple VLANs may exist. Every time a multicast query passes through the Switch, the switch must forward separate different copies of the data to each VLAN on the system, which, in turn, increases data traffic and may clog up the traffic path. To lighten the traffic load, multicast VLANs may be incorporated. These multicast VLANs will allow the Switch to forward this multicast traffic as one copy to recipients of the multicast VLAN, instead of multiple copies.

Regardless of other normal VLANs that are incorporated on the Switch, users may add any ports to the multicast VLAN where they wish multicast traffic to be sent. Users are to set up a source port, where the multicast traffic is entering the switch, and then set the ports where the incoming multicast traffic is to be sent. The source port cannot be a recipient port and if configured to do so, will cause error messages to be produced by the switch. Once properly configured, the stream of multicast data will be relayed to the receiver ports in a much more timely and reliable fashion.

### **Restrictions and Provisos:**

The Multicast VLAN feature of this Switch does have some restrictions and limitations, such as:

- Multicast VLANs can be implemented on edge and non-edge switches.
- Member ports and source ports can be used in multiple ISM VLANs. But member ports and source ports cannot be the same port in a specific ISM VLAN.
- The Multicast VLAN is exclusive with normal 802.1q VLANs, which means that VLAN IDs (VIDs) and VLAN Names of 802.1q VLANs and ISM VLANs cannot be the same. Once a VID or VLAN Name is chosen for any VLAN, it cannot be used for any other VLAN.
- The normal display of configured VLANs will not display configured Multicast VLANs.
- Once an ISM VLAN is enabled, the corresponding IGMP snooping state of this VLAN will also be enabled.
- One IP multicast address cannot be added to multiple ISM VLANs, yet multiple Ranges can be added to one ISM VLAN.

## IGMP Multicast Group Profile Settings

Users can add a profile to which multicast address reports are to be received on specified ports on the Switch. This function will therefore limit the number of reports received and the number of multicast groups configured on the Switch. The user may set an IP Multicast address or range of IP Multicast addresses to accept reports (Permit) or deny reports (Deny) coming into the specified switch ports.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > Multicast VLAN > IGMP Multicast Group Profile Settings**, as show below:

**Figure 4-72 IGMP Multicast Group Profile Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile Name</b>	Enter a name for the IP Multicast Profile.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the [Group List](#) link to configure the Multicast Group Profile Address Settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the corresponding entry.

After clicking the [Group List](#) link, the following page will appear:



Figure 4-73 Multicast Group Profile Multicast Address Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Multicast Address List</b>	Enter the multicast address list value.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the corresponding entry.

## IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings

On this page the user can configure the IGMP snooping multicast VLAN parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > Multicast VLAN > IGMP Snooping Multicast Group VLAN Settings**, as show below:

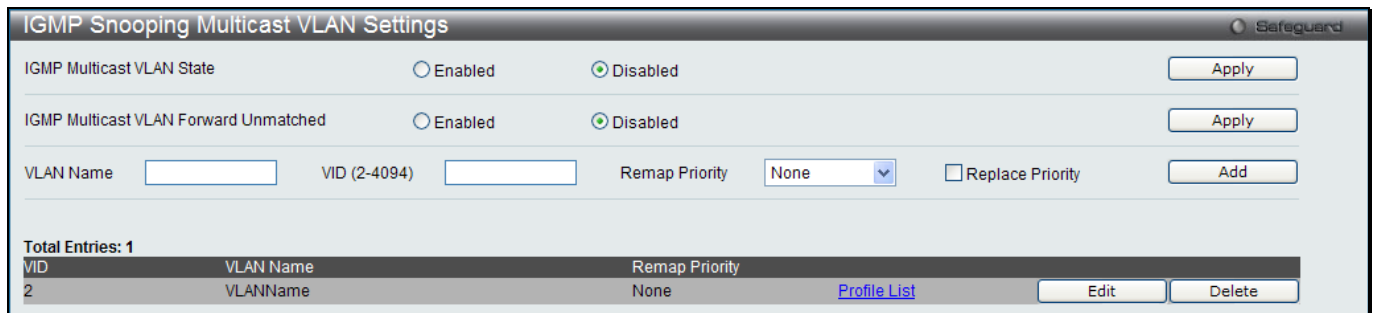


Figure 4-74 IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IGMP Multicast VLAN State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the IGMP Multicast VLAN state.
<b>IGMP Multicast VLAN Forward Unmatched</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the IGMP Multicast VLAN Forwarding Unmatched state.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN Name used.
<b>VID (2-4094)</b>	Enter the VID used.
<b>Remap Priority</b>	0-7 – The remap priority value (0 to 7) to be associated with the data traffic to be forwarded on the multicast VLAN. None – If this is specified, the packet’s original priority is used. The default setting



	is None.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Specify that the packet's priority will be changed by the switch, based on the remap priority. This flag will only take effect when the remap priority is set.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the [Profile List](#) link to configure the IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-75 IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings – Edit window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the state.
<b>Replace Source IP</b>	With the IGMP snooping function, the IGMP report packet sent by the host will be forwarded to the source port. Before forwarding of the packet, the source IP address in the join packet needs to be replaced by this IP address. If <b>0.0.0.0</b> is specified, the source IP address will not be replaced.
<b>Remap Priority</b>	<i>0-7</i> – The remap priority value (0 to 7) to be associated with the data traffic to be forwarded on the multicast VLAN. <i>None</i> – If <b>None</b> is specified, the packet's original priority is used. The default setting is None.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Specify that the packet's priority will be changed by the switch, based on the remap priority. This flag will only take effect when the remap priority is set.
<b>Untagged Member Ports</b>	Specify the untagged member port of the multicast VLAN.
<b>Tagged Member Ports</b>	Specify the tagged member port of the multicast VLAN.
<b>Untagged Source Ports</b>	Specify the source port or range of source ports as untagged members of the multicast VLAN. The PVID of the untagged source port is automatically changed to the multicast VLAN. Source ports must be either tagged or untagged for any single multicast VLAN, i.e. both types cannot be members of the same multicast VLAN.
<b>Tagged Source Ports</b>	Specify the source port or range of source ports as tagged members of the multicast VLAN.

Click the **Select All** button to select all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Clear All** button to unselect all the ports for configuration.



Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the [Profile List](#) link, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-76 IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Group List Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Profile Name	Use the drop-down menu to select the IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Group Profile name.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the [Show IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Entries](#) link to view the IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings.

## MLD Multicast Group Profile Settings

Users can add, delete, or configure the MLD multicast group profile in this window.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > Multicast VLAN > MLD Multicast Group Profile Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 4-77 MLD Multicast Group Profile Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Profile Name	Enter the MLD Multicast Group Profile name.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the [Group List](#) link to configure the Multicast Group Profile Multicast Address Settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the [Group List](#) link, the following window will appear:

Figure 4-78 Multicast Group Profile Multicast Address Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Multicast Address List</b>	Enter the multicast address list.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings

Users can add, delete, or configure the MLD snooping multicast VLAN in this window.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > L2 Multicast Control > Multicast VLAN > MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 4-79 MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MLD Multicast VLAN State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the MLD multicast VLAN state.
<b>MLD Multicast VLAN Forward Unmatched</b>	Click the radio buttons to can enable or disable the MLD multicast VLAN Forward Unmatched state.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name used.
<b>VID (2-4094)</b>	Enter the VID value used.
<b>Remap Priority</b>	The user can select this option to enable the Remap Priority feature. Specify the remap priority (0 to 7) to be associated with the data traffic to be forwarded on the multicast VLAN. If <b>None</b> is specified, the packet's original priority will be used. The default setting is None.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Tick the check box to specify that the packet's priority will be changed by the switch, based on the remap priority. This flag will only take effect when the remap priority is set.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the [Profile List](#) link to configure the MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings for the specific entry.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following window will appear:

Figure 4-80 MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings – Edit window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the state.
<b>Replace Source IP</b>	With the MLD snooping function, the MLD report packet sent by the host will be forwarded to the source port. Before forwarding of the packet, the source IP address in the join packet needs to be replaced by this IP address. If <b>Not Replaced</b> is specified, the source IP address will not be replaced.
<b>Remap Priority</b>	0-7 – The remap priority value (0 to 7) to be associated with the data traffic to be forwarded on the multicast VLAN. None – Specify to use the packet's original priority. The default setting is None.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Tick the check box to specify that the packet's priority will be changed by the Switch based on the remap priority. This flag will only take effect when the remap priority is set.
<b>Untagged Member Ports</b>	Specify the untagged member port of the multicast VLAN.
<b>Tagged Member Ports</b>	Specify the tagged member port of the multicast VLAN.
<b>Untagged Source Ports</b>	Specify the source port or range of source ports as untagged members of the multicast VLAN. The PVID of the untagged source port is automatically changed to the multicast VLAN. Source ports must be either tagged or untagged for any single multicast VLAN, i.e. both types cannot be members of the same multicast VLAN.
<b>Tagged Source Ports</b>	Specify the source port or range of source ports as tagged members of the multicast VLAN.

Click the **Select All** button to select all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Clear All** button to unselect all the ports for configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the [Profile List](#) link, the following window will appear:

Figure 4-81 MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Group List Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the IGMP Snooping Multicast VLAN Group Profile name.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the [Show MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Entries](#) link to view the MLD Snooping Multicast VLAN Settings.

## Multicast Filtering

### IPv4 Multicast Filtering

#### IPv4 Multicast Profile Settings

Users can add a profile to which multicast address(s) reports are to be received on specified ports on the Switch. This function will therefore limit the number of reports received and the number of multicast groups configured on the Switch. The user may set an IPv4 Multicast address or range of IPv4 Multicast addresses to accept reports (Permit) or deny reports (Deny) coming into the specified switch ports.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Multicast Filtering > IPv4 Multicast Filtering > IPv4 Multicast Profile Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-82 IPv4 Multicast Profile Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-24)</b>	Enter a Profile ID between 1 and 24.
<b>Profile Name</b>	Enter a name for the IP Multicast Profile.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the [Group List](#) link to configure the multicast address group list settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the [Group List](#) link, the following page will appear:



Figure 4-83 Multicast Address Group List Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Multicast Address List</b>	Enter the multicast address list.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## IPv4 Limited Multicast Range Settings

Users can configure the ports and VLANs on the Switch that will be involved in the Limited IPv4 Multicast Range. The user can configure the range of multicast ports that will be accepted by the source ports to be forwarded to the receiver ports.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Multicast Filtering > IPv4 Multicast Filtering > IPv4 Limited Multicast Range Settings**, as show below:

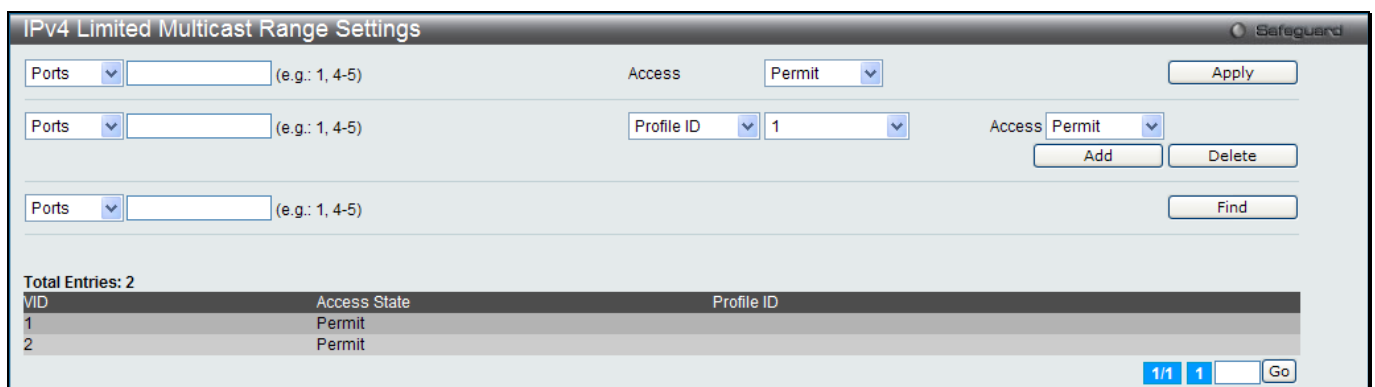


Figure 4-84 IPv4 Limited Multicast Range Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Ports / VID List</b>	Select the appropriate port(s) or VLAN IDs used for the configuration.
<b>Access</b>	Assign access permissions to the ports selected. Options listed are <b>Permit</b> and <b>Deny</b> .
<b>Profile ID / Profile Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the profile ID or profile name used and then assign <b>Permit</b> or <b>Deny</b> access to them.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## IPv4 Max Multicast Group Settings

Users can configure the ports and VLANs on the switch that will be a part of the maximum filter group, up to a maximum of 1024.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Multicast Filtering > IPv4 Multicast Filtering > IPv4 Max Multicast Group Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-85 IPv4 Max Multicast Group Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Ports / VID List</b>	Select the appropriate port(s) or VLAN IDs used for the configuration here.
<b>Max Group (1-1024)</b>	If the checkbox <b>Infinite</b> is not selected, the user can enter a <b>Max Group</b> value.
<b>Infinite</b>	Tick the check box to enable or disable the use of the Infinite value.
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the appropriate action for this rule. The user can select <b>Drop</b> to initiate the drop action or the user can select <b>Replace</b> to initiate the replace action.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## IPv6 Multicast Filtering

Users can add a profile to which multicast address(s) reports are to be received on specified ports on the Switch. This function will therefore limit the number of reports received and the number of multicast groups configured on the Switch. The user may set an IPv6 Multicast address or range of IPv6 Multicast addresses to accept reports (Permit) or deny reports (Deny) coming into the specified switch ports.

## IPv6 Multicast Profile Settings

Users can add, delete, and configure the IPv6 multicast profile on this page.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Multicast Filtering > IPv6 Multicast Filtering > IPv6 Multicast Profile Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-86 IPv6 Multicast Profile Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-24)</b>	Enter a Profile ID between 1 and 24.
<b>Profile Name</b>	Enter a name for the IP Multicast Profile.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the [Group List](#) link to configure the multicast address group list settings for the specific entry.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the [Group List](#) link, the following page will appear:

Figure 4-87 Multicast Address Group List Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID</b>	Display the profile ID.
<b>Profile Name</b>	Display the profile name.
<b>Multicast Address List</b>	Enter the multicast address list here.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## IPv6 Limited Multicast Range Settings

Users can configure the ports and VLANs on the Switch that will be involved in the Limited IPv6 Multicast Range.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Multicast Filtering > IPv6 Multicast Filtering > IPv6 Limited Multicast Range Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-88 IPv6 Limited Multicast Range Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Ports / VID List</b>	Select the appropriate port(s) or VLAN IDs used for the configuration here.
<b>Access</b>	Assign access permissions to the ports selected. Options listed are <b>Permit</b> and <b>Deny</b> .
<b>Profile ID / Profile Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the profile ID or profile name used and then assign <b>Permit</b> or <b>Deny</b> access to them.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## IPv6 Max Multicast Group Settings

Users can configure the ports and VLANs on the switch that will be a part of the maximum filter group, up to a maximum of 1024.

Figure 4-89 IPv6 Max Multicast Group Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Ports / VID List</b>	Select the appropriate port(s) or VLAN IDs used for the configuration here.
<b>Max Group (1-1024)</b>	If the checkbox <b>Infinite</b> is not selected, the user can enter a <b>Max Group</b> value.
<b>Infinite</b>	Tick the check box to enable or disable the use of the Infinite value.
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the appropriate action for this rule. The user can select <b>Drop</b> to initiate the drop action or the user can select <b>Replace</b> to initiate the replace action.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## Multicast Filtering Mode

Users can configure the multicast filtering mode.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > Multicast Filtering > Multicast Filtering Mode**, as show below:

VLAN ID	VLAN Name	Multicast Filter Mode
1	default	Forward Unregistered Groups
2	VLANName	Forward Unregistered Groups

Figure 4-90 Multicast Filtering Mode window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name / VID List</b>	The VLAN to which the specified filtering action applies. Tick the <b>All</b> check box to apply this feature to all the VLANs.
<b>Multicast Filter Mode</b>	This drop-down menu allows you to select the action the Switch will take when it receives a multicast packet that requires forwarding to a port in the specified VLAN. <i>Forward All Groups</i> – This will instruct the Switch to forward all multicast packets to the specified VLAN. <i>Forward Unregistered Groups</i> – The multicast packets whose destination is an unregistered multicast group will be forwarded within the range of ports specified above. <i>Filter Unregistered Groups</i> – The multicast packets whose destination is a registered multicast group will be forwarded within the range of ports specified above.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## ERPS Settings

ERPS (Ethernet Ring Protection Switching) is the first industry standard (ITU-T G.8032) for Ethernet ring protection switching. It is achieved by integrating mature Ethernet operations, administration, and maintenance (OAM) \* functions and a simple automatic protection switching (APS) protocol for Ethernet ring networks. ERPS provides sub-50ms protection for Ethernet traffic in a ring topology. It ensures that there are no loops formed at the Ethernet layer.

One link within a ring will be blocked to avoid Loop (RPL, Ring Protection Link). When the failure happens, protection switching blocks the failed link and unblocks the RPL. When the failure clears, protection switching blocks the RPL again and unblocks the link on which the failure is cleared.

### **G.8032 Terms and Concepts**

**RPL (Ring Protection Link)** – Link designated by mechanism that is blocked during Idle state to prevent loop on Bridged ring

**RPL Owner** – Node connected to RPL that blocks traffic on RPL during Idle state and unblocks during Protected state

**R-APS (Ring – Automatic Protection Switching)** - Protocol messages defined in Y.1731 and G.8032 used to coordinate the protection actions over the ring through RAPS VLAN (R-APS Channel).

**RAPS VLAN (R-APS Channel)** – A separate ring-wide VLAN for transmission of R-APS messages

**Protected VLAN** – The service traffic VLANs for transmission of normal network traffic

This page is used to enable the ERPS function on the switch.



**NOTE:** EEE, STP and LBD should be disabled on the ring ports before enabling ERPS. The ERPS cannot be enabled before the R-APS VLAN is created, and ring ports, RPL port, RPL owner, are configured.



**NOTE:** EEE and ERPS are mutually exclusive functions.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > ERPS Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-91 ERPS Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>ERPS State</b>	Click to enable or disable the ERPS State.
<b>ERPS Log</b>	Click to enable or disable the ERPS Log.
<b>ERPS Trap</b>	Click to enable or disable the ERPS Trap.
<b>R-APS VLAN (1-4094)</b>	Specify the VLAN which will be the R-APS VLAN.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Find** button to find a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to view all the entries configured.

Click the [Detail Information](#) link to view detailed information of the R-APS entry.

Click the [Sub-Ring Information](#) link to view detailed information of the ERPS sub-ring settings.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the [Detail Information](#) link, the following window will appear:

ERPS Information		
R-APS VLAN	1	
Ring Status	Disabled	
Admin West Port		
Operational West Port		
Admin East Port		
Operational East Port		
Admin RPL Port	None	
Operational RPL Port	None	
Admin RPL Owner	Disabled	
Operational RPL Owner	Disabled	
Protected VLAN(s)		
Ring MEL (0-7)	1	
Holdoff Time (0-10000)	0	ms
Guard Time (10-2000)	500	ms
WTR Time (5-12)	5	min
Revertive	Enabled	
Current Ring State	-	

Figure 4-92 ERPS Settings - Detail Information window

Click on the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.  
 Click on the **<<Back** button to return to the ERPS settings page.

After click the **Edit** button, the following window will appear:

ERPS Information		
R-APS VLAN	1	
Ring Status	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
Admin West Port		<input type="checkbox"/>
Operational West Port		
Admin East Port		<input type="checkbox"/>
Operational East Port		
Admin RPL Port	None	<input type="checkbox"/>
Operational RPL Port	None	
Admin RPL Owner	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
Operational RPL Owner	Disabled	
Protected VLAN(s) (e.g.: 4-6)		<input checked="" type="radio"/> Add <input type="radio"/> Delete
Ring MEL (0-7)	1	<input type="checkbox"/>
Holdoff Time (0-10000)	0	ms
Guard Time (10-2000)	500	ms
WTR Time (5-12)	5	min
Revertive	Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
Current Ring State	-	

Figure 4-93 ERPS Settings - Edit Detail Information window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>R-APS VLAN</b>	Display the R-APS VLAN ID.
<b>Ring Status</b>	Specify to enable or disable the specified ring.
<b>Admin West Port</b>	Specify that the port or the virtual channel will be associated with the west ring port.
<b>Operational West Port</b>	Display the operational west port.
<b>Admin East Port</b>	Specify that the port or the virtual channel will be associated with the east ring port.
<b>Operational East Port</b>	Display the operational east port value.
<b>Admin RPL Port</b>	Specify the RPL port used. Options to choose from are <b>West Port</b> , <b>East Port</b> , and

	<b>None.</b>
<b>Operational RPL Port</b>	Display the operational RPL port value.
<b>Admin RPL Owner</b>	Specify to enable or disable the RPL owner node.
<b>Operational RPL Owner</b>	Display the operational RPL owner value.
<b>Protected VLAN(s)</b>	Specify to add or delete the protected VLAN group.
<b>Ring MEL (0-7)</b>	Specify the ring MEL of the R-APS function. The default ring MEL is 1.
<b>Holdoff Time (0-10000)</b>	Specify the hold-off time of the R-APS function. The default hold-off time is 0 milliseconds.
<b>Guard Time (10-20000)</b>	Specify the guard time of the R-APS function. The default guard time is 500 milliseconds.
<b>WTR Time (5-12)</b>	Specify the WTR time of the R-APS function.
<b>Revertive</b>	Specify the state of the R-APS revertive option.
<b>Current Ring State</b>	Display the current Ring state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous window.

After clicking the [Sub-Ring Information](#) link, the following window will appear:

**Figure 4-94 ERPS Sub-Ring Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Sub-Ring R-APS VLAN (1-4094)</b>	Enter the R-APS VLAN ID.
<b>State</b>	Tick the check box and select to add or delete the entry.
<b>TC Propagation State</b>	Tick the check box and select to enable or disable the TC propagation state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous window.

## LLDP

## LLDP

### LLDP Global Settings

This window is used to configure the LLDP global parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Global Settings**, as show below:

LLDP System Information	
Chassis ID Subtype	MAC Address
Chassis ID	00-01-02-03-04-00
System Name	
System Description	Gigabit Ethernet Switch
System Capabilities	Repeater, Bridge

Figure 4-95 LLDP Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>LLDP State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the LLDP feature.
<b>LLDP Forward Message</b>	When LLDP is disabled this function controls the LLDP packet forwarding message based on individual ports. If LLDP is enabled on a port it will flood the LLDP packet to all ports that have the same port VLAN and will advertise to other stations attached to the same IEEE 802 LAN.
<b>Message TX Interval (5-32768)</b>	This interval controls how often active ports retransmit advertisements to their neighbors. To change the packet transmission interval, enter a value in seconds (5 to 32768).
<b>Message TX Hold Multiplier (2-10)</b>	This function calculates the Time-to-Live for creating and transmitting the LLDP advertisements to LLDP neighbors by changing the multiplier used by an LLDP Switch. When the Time-to-Live for an advertisement expires the advertised data is then deleted from the neighbor Switch's MIB.
<b>LLDP Reinit Delay (1-10)</b>	The LLDP re-initialization delay interval is the minimum time that an LLDP port will wait before reinitializing after receiving an LLDP disable command. To change the LLDP re-init delay, enter a value in seconds (1 to 10).
<b>LLDP TX Delay (1-8192)</b>	LLDP TX Delay allows the user to change the minimum time delay interval for any LLDP port which will delay advertising any successive LLDP advertisements due to change in the LLDP MIB content. To change the LLDP TX Delay, enter a value in seconds (1 to 8192).
<b>LLDP Notification interval (5-3600)</b>	LLDP Notification Interval is used to send notifications to configured SNMP trap receiver(s) when an LLDP change is detected in an advertisement received on the port from an LLDP neighbor. To set the LLDP Notification Interval, enter a value in seconds (5 to 3600).

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## LLDP Port Settings

This window is used to configure the LLDP port parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Port Settings**, as show below:

LLDP Port Settings
Safeguard

From Port  
01

Subtype  
IPv4

To Port  
01

Action  
Disabled

Notification  
Disabled

Address

Admin Status  
TX and RX

**Note:** The IPv4 address should be the switch's address.

Port ID	Notification	Admin Status	IPv4 (IPv6) Address
1	Disabled	TX and RX	
2	Disabled	TX and RX	
3	Disabled	TX and RX	
4	Disabled	TX and RX	
5	Disabled	TX and RX	
6	Disabled	TX and RX	
7	Disabled	TX and RX	
8	Disabled	TX and RX	
9	Disabled	TX and RX	
10	Disabled	TX and RX	
11	Disabled	TX and RX	
12	Disabled	TX and RX	
13	Disabled	TX and RX	
14	Disabled	TX and RX	
15	Disabled	TX and RX	
16	Disabled	TX and RX	
17	Disabled	TX and RX	
18	Disabled	TX and RX	
19	Disabled	TX and RX	
20	Disabled	TX and RX	
21	Disabled	TX and RX	
22	Disabled	TX and RX	
23	Disabled	TX and RX	
24	Disabled	TX and RX	
25	Disabled	TX and RX	

Figure 4-96 LLDP Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the ports used for this configuration.
<b>Notification</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the status of the LLDP notification. This function controls the SNMP trap however it cannot implement traps on SNMP when the notification is disabled.
<b>Admin Status</b>	This function controls the local LLDP agent and allows it to send and receive LLDP frames on the ports. This option contains <b>TX</b> , <b>RX</b> , <b>TX And RX</b> or <b>Disabled</b> . <i>TX</i> - the local LLDP agent can only transmit LLDP frames. <i>RX</i> - the local LLDP agent can only receive LLDP frames. <i>TX And RX</i> - the local LLDP agent can both transmit and receive LLDP frames. <i>Disabled</i> - the local LLDP agent can neither transmit nor receive LLDP frames. The default value is TX And RX.
<b>Subtype</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the type of the IP address information will be sent.
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the action field.
<b>Address</b>	Enter the IP address that will be sent.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The IPv4 or IPv6 address entered here should be an existing LLDP management IP address.

## LLDP Management Address List

This window is used to view the LLDP management address list.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP management Address List**, as show below:

Subtype	Address	IF Type	OID	Advertising Ports
IPv4	10.90.90.90	Ifindex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.10.1...	

**Figure 4-97 LLDP Management Address List window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv4 / IPv6</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either IPv4 or IPv6.
<b>Address</b>	Enter the management IP address or the IP address of the entity you wish to advertise to. The IPv4 address is a management IP address, so the IP information will be sent with the frame.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

## LLDP Basic TLVs Settings

TLV stands for Type-length-value, which allows the specific sending information as a TLV element within LLDP packets. This window is used to enable the settings for the Basic TLVs Settings. An active LLDP port on the Switch always included mandatory data in its outbound advertisements. There are four optional data types that can be configured for an individual port or group of ports to exclude one or more of these data types from outbound LLDP advertisements. The mandatory data type includes four basic types of information (end of LLDPDU TLV, chassis ID TLV, port ID TLV, and Time to Live TLV). The mandatory data types cannot be disabled. There are also four data types which can be optionally selected. These include Port Description, System Name, System Description and System Capability.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Basic TLVs Settings**, as show below:

Figure 4-98 LLDP Basic TLVs Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>Port Description</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the Port Description option.
<b>System Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the System Name option.
<b>System Description</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the System Description option.
<b>System Capabilities</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the System Capabilities option.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## LLDP Dot1 TLVs Settings

LLDP Dot1 TLVs are organizationally specific TLVs which are defined in IEEE 802.1 and used to configure an individual port or group of ports to exclude one or more of the IEEE 802.1 organizational port VLAN ID TLV data types from outbound LLDP advertisements.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Dot1 TLVs Settings**, as show below:



Port	PVID State	Port and Protocol VID State	VID	VLAN Name State	VID	Protocol Identity State	Protocol Identity
1	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
2	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
3	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
4	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
5	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
6	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
7	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
8	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
9	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
10	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
11	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
12	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
13	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
14	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
15	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
16	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
17	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
18	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
19	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
20	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
21	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
22	Disabled	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	

Figure 4-99 LLDP Dot1 TLVs Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>Dot1 TLV PVID</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable and configure the Dot1 TLV PVID option.
<b>Dot1 TLV Protocol VLAN</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable, and configure the Dot1 TLV Protocol VLAN option. After enabling this option to the user can select to use either <i>VLAN Name</i> , <i>VLAN ID</i> or <i>All</i> in the next drop-down menu. After selecting this, the user can enter either the VLAN name or VLAN ID value in the space provided.
<b>Dot1 TLV VLAN</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable, and configure the Dot1 TLV VLAN option. After enabling this option to the user can select to use either <i>VLAN Name</i> , <i>VLAN ID</i> or <i>All</i> in the next drop-down menu. After selecting this, the user can enter either the VLAN name or VLAN ID value in the space provided.
<b>Dot1 TLV Protocol Identity</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable, and configure the Dot1 TLV Protocol Identity option. After enabling this option the user can select to either use <i>EAPOL</i> , <i>LACP</i> , <i>GVRP</i> , <i>STP</i> , or <i>All</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## LLDP Dot3 TLVs Settings

This window is used to configure an individual port or group of ports to exclude one or more IEEE 802.3 organizational specific TLV data type from outbound LLDP advertisements.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Dot3 TLVs Settings**, as show below:

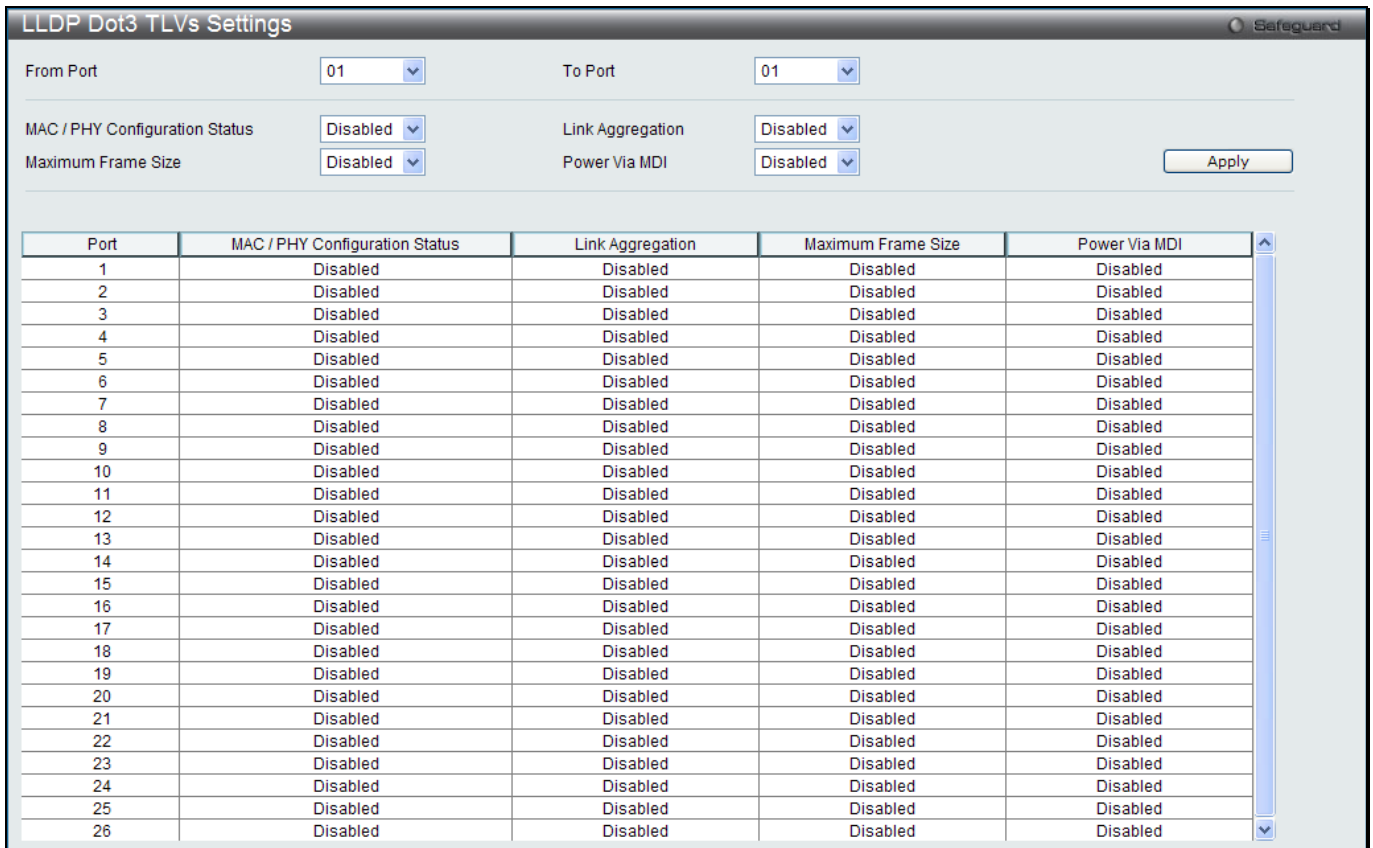


Figure 4-100 LLDP Dot3 TLVs Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>MAC / PHY Configuration Status</b>	This TLV optional data type indicates that the LLDP agent should transmit the MAC/PHY configuration/status TLV. This indicates it is possible for two ends of an IEEE 802.3 link to be configured with different duplex and/or speed settings and still establish some limited network connectivity. More precisely, the information includes whether the port supports the auto-negotiation function, whether the function is enabled, whether it has auto-negotiated advertised capability, and what is the operational MAU type. The default state is Disabled.
<b>Link Aggregation</b>	The Link Aggregation option indicates that LLDP agents should transmit 'Link Aggregation TLV'. This indicates the current link aggregation status of IEEE 802.3 MACs. More precisely, the information should include whether the port is capable of doing link aggregation, whether the port is aggregated in an aggregated link, and what is the aggregated port ID. The default state is Disabled.
<b>Maximum Frame Size</b>	The Maximum Frame Size indicates that LLDP agent should transmit 'Maximum-frame-size TLV'. The default state is Disabled.
<b>Power Via MDI</b>	Use the drop down menu to enable or disable power via MDI. The Power Via MDI TLV allows network management to advertise and discover the MDI power support capabilities of the sending IEEE 802.3 LAN station.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## LLDP Statistic System

The LLDP Statistics System page allows you an overview of the neighbor detection activity, LLDP Statistics and the settings for individual ports on the Switch.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Statistic System**, as show below:



**LLDP Statistics System**

LLDP Statistics

Last Change Time	2526
Number of Table Insert	0
Number of Table Delete	0
Number of Table Drop	0
Number of Table Ageout	0

Port: 01

LLDP Statistics Ports

Total TX Frames	0
Total Discarded RX Frames	0
RX Errors Frames	0
Total RX Frames	0
Total Discarded RX TLVs	0
Total Unrecognized RX TLVs	0
Total Aged out Neighbor Information	0

Figure 4-101 LLDP Statistics System window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

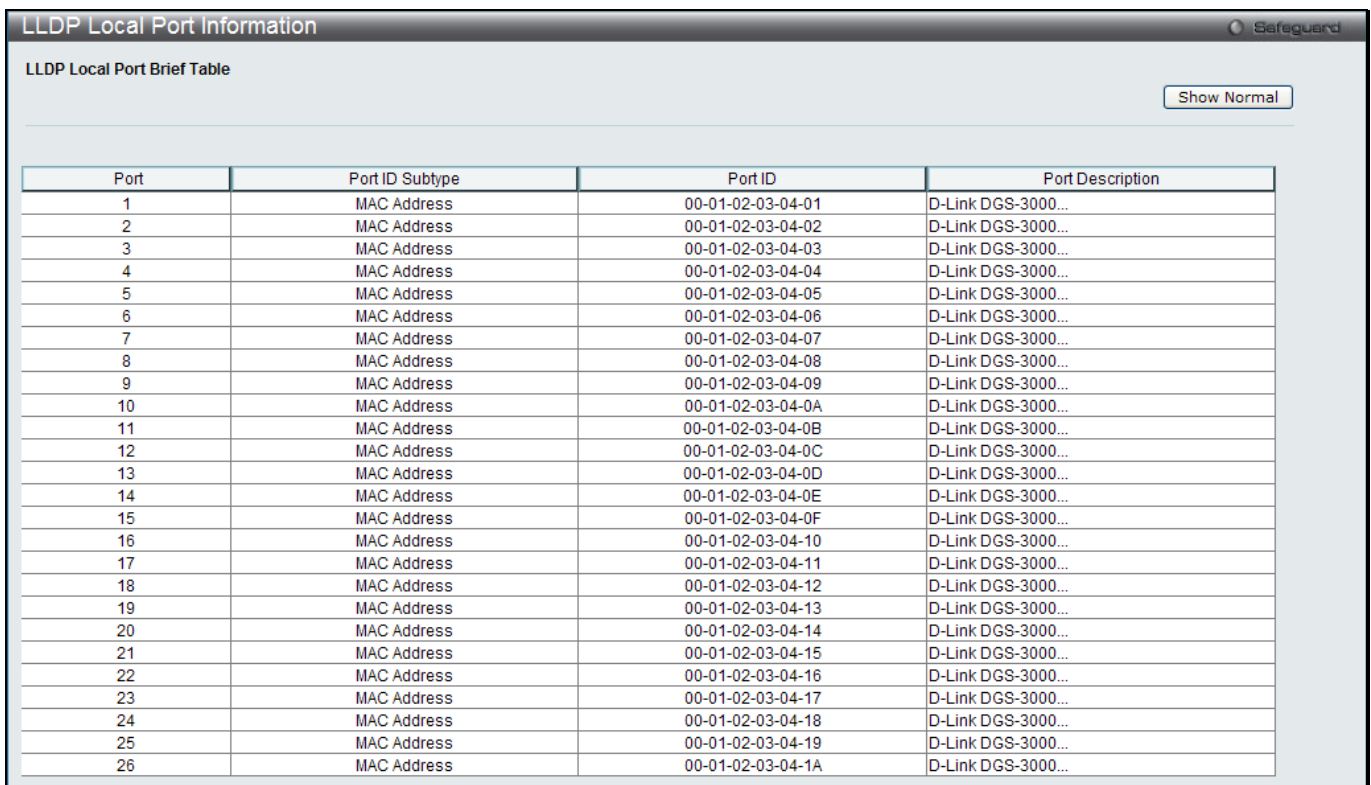
Parameter	Description
Port	Use the drop-down menu to select a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

## LLDP Local Port Information

The LLDP Local Port Information page displays the information on a per port basis currently available for populating outbound LLDP advertisements in the local port brief table shown below.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Local Port Information**, as show below:



**LLDP Local Port Information**

LLDP Local Port Brief Table

Port	Port ID Subtype	Port ID	Port Description
1	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-01	D-Link DGS-3000...
2	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-02	D-Link DGS-3000...
3	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-03	D-Link DGS-3000...
4	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-04	D-Link DGS-3000...
5	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-05	D-Link DGS-3000...
6	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-06	D-Link DGS-3000...
7	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-07	D-Link DGS-3000...
8	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-08	D-Link DGS-3000...
9	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-09	D-Link DGS-3000...
10	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-0A	D-Link DGS-3000...
11	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-0B	D-Link DGS-3000...
12	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-0C	D-Link DGS-3000...
13	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-0D	D-Link DGS-3000...
14	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-0E	D-Link DGS-3000...
15	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-0F	D-Link DGS-3000...
16	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-10	D-Link DGS-3000...
17	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-11	D-Link DGS-3000...
18	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-12	D-Link DGS-3000...
19	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-13	D-Link DGS-3000...
20	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-14	D-Link DGS-3000...
21	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-15	D-Link DGS-3000...
22	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-16	D-Link DGS-3000...
23	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-17	D-Link DGS-3000...
24	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-18	D-Link DGS-3000...
25	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-19	D-Link DGS-3000...
26	MAC Address	00-01-02-03-04-1A	D-Link DGS-3000...

Figure 4-102 LLDP Local Port Information window

To view the normal LLDP Local Port information page per port, click the **Show Normal** button.

After clicking the **Show Normal** button, the following page will appear:

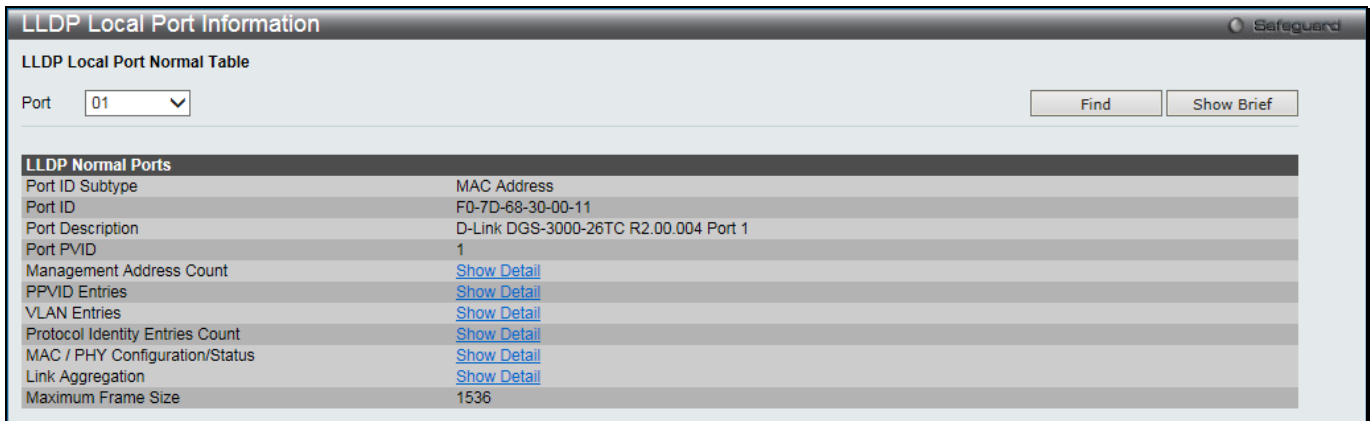


Figure 4-103 LLDP Local Port Information – Show Normal window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Use the drop-down menu to select a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

To view more details about, for example, the **Management Address Count**, click on the [Show Detail](#) hyperlink.

To view the brief LLDP Local Port information page per port, click the **Show Brief** button.




Figure 4-104 LLDP Local Port Information – Show Detail window

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

## LLDP Remote Port Information

This page displays port information learned from the neighbors. The switch receives packets from a remote station but is able to store the information as local.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP > LLDP Remote Port Information**, as show below:

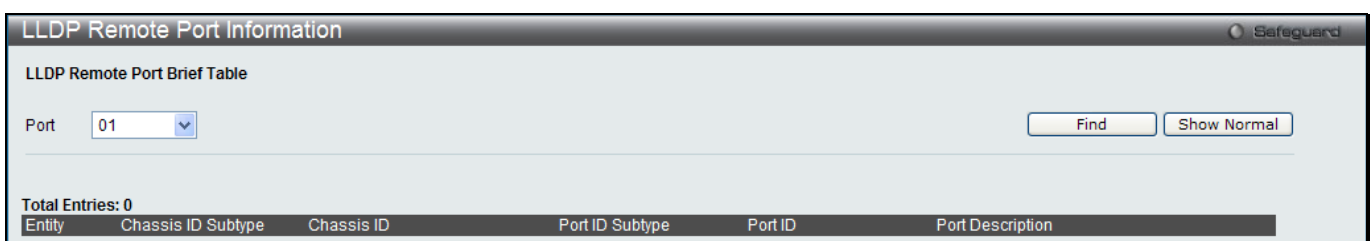


Figure 4-105 LLDP Remote Port Information window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Use the drop-down menu to select a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

To view the normal LLDP Remote Port information page per port, click the **Show Normal** button.

After clicking the **Show Normal** button, the following page will appear:

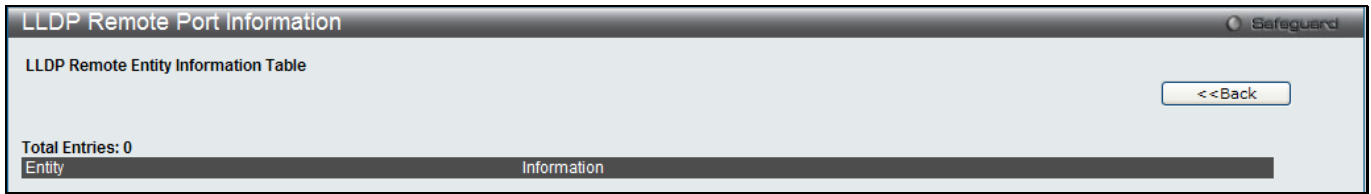


Figure 4-106 LLDP Remote Port Information – Show Normal window

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

## LLDP-MED

### LLDP-MED System Settings

This window is used to configure the LLDP-MED log state and the fast start repeat count, and display the LLDP-MED system information.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP-MED > LLDP-MED System Settings**, as shown below:

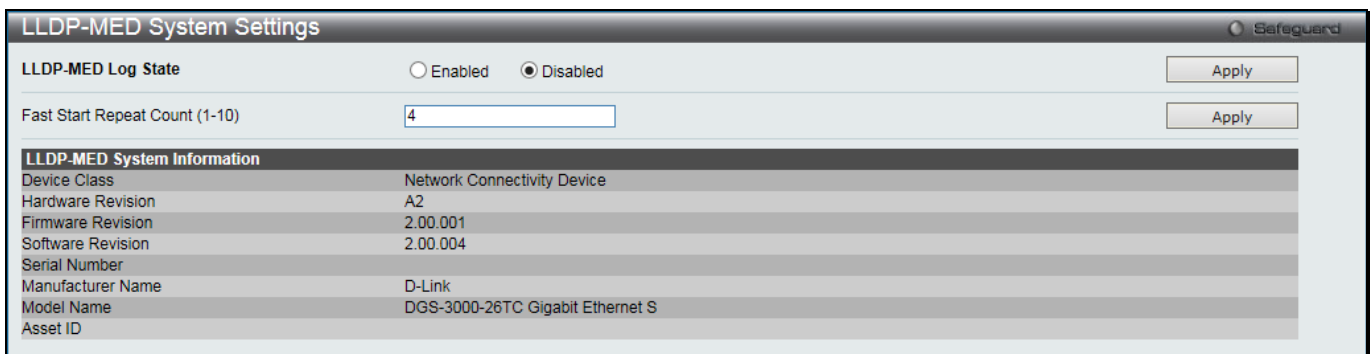


Figure 4-107 LLDP-MED System Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>LLDP-MED Log State</b>	Click to enable or disable the log state of LLDP-MED events.
<b>Fast Start Repeat Count (1-10)</b>	Enter a value between 1 and 10 for the fast start repeat count. When an LLDP-MED Capabilities TLV is detected for an MSAP identifier not associated with an existing LLDP remote system MIB, then the application layer shall start the fast start mechanism and set the 'medFastStart' timer to 'medFastStartRepeatCount' times 1. The default value is 4.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

### LLDP-MED Port Settings

This window is used to enable or disable transmitting LLDP-MED TLVs.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP-MED > LLDP-MED Port Settings**, as shown below:

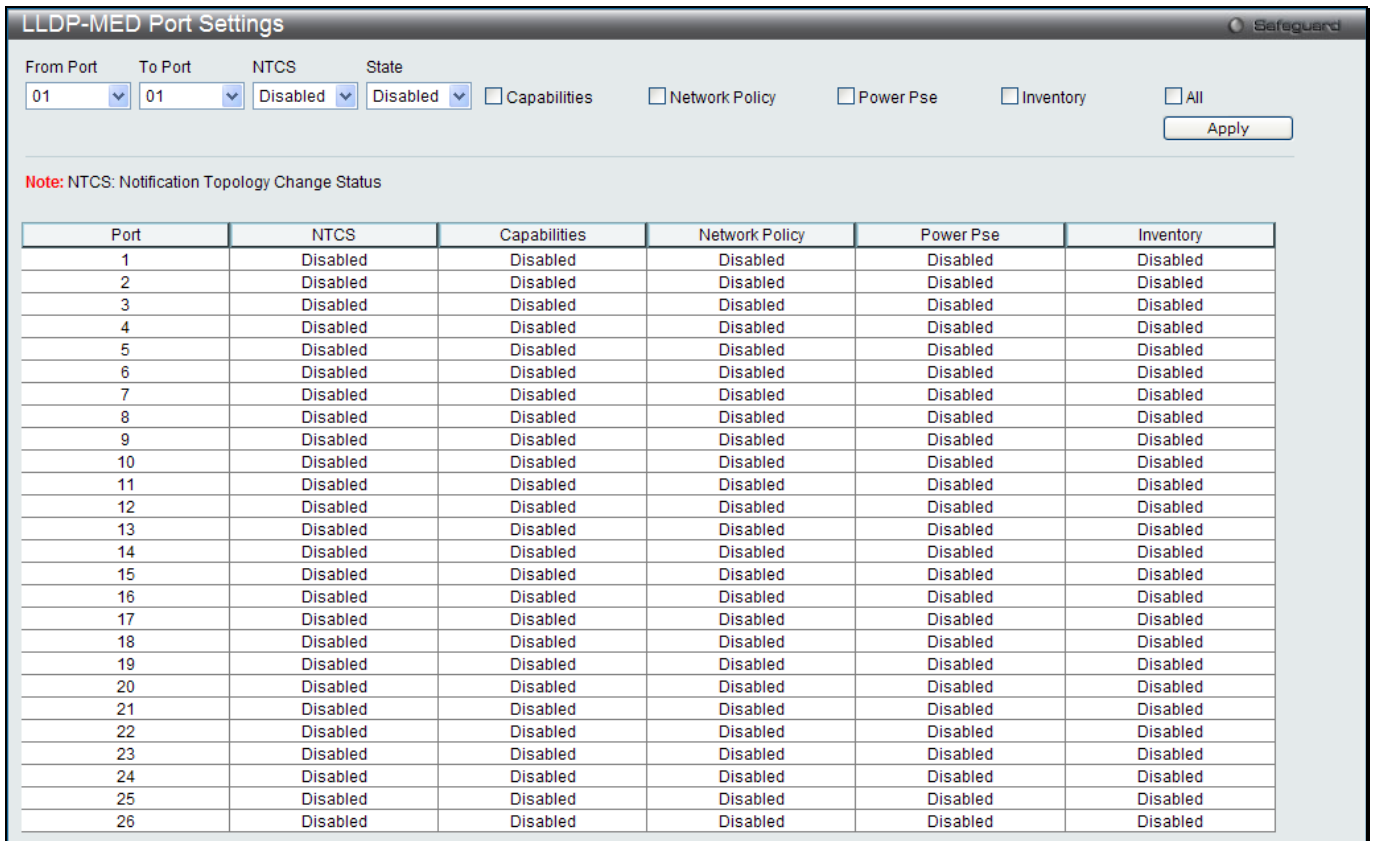


Figure 4-108 LLDP-MED Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>NTCS</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable Notification Topology Change Status.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable transmit LLDP-MED TLVs, and tick the check boxes of the TLV types that the LLDP agent should transmit. TLV types are <b>Capabilities</b> , <b>Network Policy</b> , <b>Power Pse</b> and <b>Inventory</b> . Tick the <b>All</b> check box to select all TLV types.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## LLDP-MED Local Port Information

This window displays the per-port information currently available for populating outbound LLDP-MED advertisements.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP-MED > LLDP-MED Local Port Information**, as shown below:



Figure 4-109 LLDP-MED Local Port Information window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Use the drop-down menu to select a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

## LLDP-MED Remote Port Information

This window displays the information learned from the neighbor parameters.

To view the following window, click **L2 Features > LLDP > LLDP-MED > LLDP-MED Remote Port Information**, as shown below:

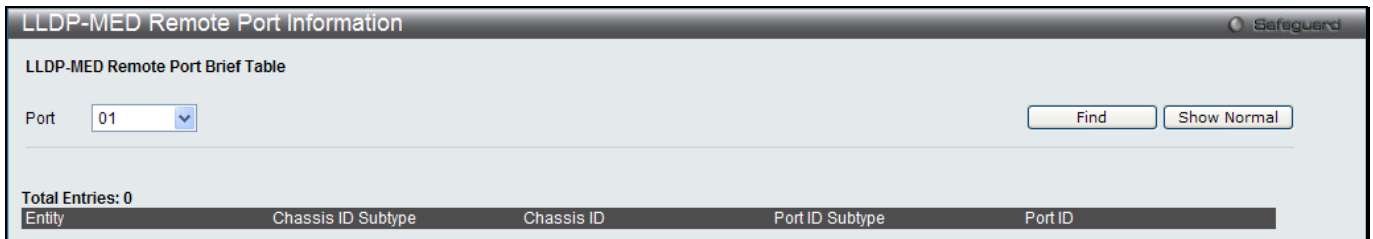


Figure 4-110 LLDP-MED Remote Port Information window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Use the drop-down menu to select a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

To view the normal LLDP Remote Port information page per port, click the **Show Normal** button.

After clicking the **Show Normal** button, the following window will appear:



Figure 4-111 LLDP-MED Remote Port Information – Show Normal window

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.



## NLB FDB Settings

The Switch supports Network Load Balancing (NLB). This is a MAC forwarding control for supporting the Microsoft server load balancing application where multiple servers can share the same IP address and MAC address. The requests from clients will be forwarded to all servers, but will only be processed by one of them. In multicast mode, the client uses a multicast MAC address as the destination MAC to reach the server. Regardless of the mode, the destination MAC is the shared MAC. The server uses its own MAC address (rather than the shared MAC) as the source MAC address of the reply packet. The NLB multicast FDB entry will be mutually exclusive with the L2 multicast entry.

To view this window, click **L2 Features > NLB FDB Settings**, as shown below.

Figure 4-112 NLB FDB Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Unicast</b>	Click to create NLB unicast FDB entry.
<b>Multicast</b>	Click to create NLB multicast FDB entry.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN of the NLB multicast FDB entry to be created.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN by the VLAN ID.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the MAC address of the NLB FDB entry to be created.
<b>Ports</b>	Click the ports to be configured. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all ports.

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all the entered information in the fields.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to update the information of the corresponding entry.

Click the **Delete** button to delete the corresponding entry.

## Flex Link Settings

This window is used to configure Flex Link settings.

To view this window, click **L2 Features > Flex Link Settings**, as shown below.



Flex Link Settings
Safeguard

Group ID (1-4)

Primary Port  
01 ▼

Backup Port  
01 ▼

Apply

Refresh

Total Entries: 1

Group	Primary Port	Backup Port	Status (Primary/Backup)	
1	2	3	Inactive/Inactive	Delete

Figure 4-113 Flex Link Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Group ID (1-4)</b>	Enter the group ID of the Flex Link group.
<b>Primary Port</b>	Select a port or the master port in a link aggregation group to act as the primary port in the Flex Link group.
<b>Backup Port</b>	Select a port or the master port in a link aggregation group to act as the backup port in the Flex Link group.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new entries will appear.

Click the **Delete** button to delete the corresponding entry.



**NOTE:** Flex Link does not interact with STP or LBD.

## Chapter 5 L3 Features

### IPv4 Static/Default Route Settings

#### IPv4 Route Table

### IPv6 Static/Default Route Settings

#### IPv6 Route Table

## IPv4 Static/Default Route Settings

The Switch supports static and default routing for IPv4 formatted addressing. Users can create a gateway for IPv4. Once the gateway has been set, the Switch will send an ARP request packet to the next hop router that has been set by the user. Once an ARP response has been retrieved by the switch from that next hop, the route becomes enabled. However, if the ARP entry already exists, an ARP response will not be sent.

Entries into the Switch's forwarding table can be made using a gateway.

To view the following window, click **L3 Features > IPv4 Static/Default Route Settings**, as show below:

IP Address/Netmask	Gateway	Cost	Protocol	Backup	Status
0.0.0.0/0	172.18.211.10	3	Default	Primary	Inactive

Figure 5-1 IPv4 Static/Default Route Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IP Address</b>	This field allows the entry of an IPv4 address to be assigned to the static route. Tick the <b>Default</b> check box to assign to the default route.
<b>Netmask</b>	This field allows the entry of a subnet mask to be applied to the corresponding subnet mask of the IP address.
<b>Gateway</b>	This field allows the entry of a Gateway IP Address to be applied to the corresponding gateway of the IP address.
<b>Metric (1-65535)</b>	Represents the metric value of the IP interface entered into the table. This field may read a number between 1 and 65535.
<b>Backup State</b>	Each IP address can only have one primary route, while another route should be assigned to the backup state. When the primary route fails, the Switch will try the backup route. The field represents the Backup state that the Static and Default Route is configured for.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to delete the corresponding entry.

## IPv4 Route Table

The IP routing table stores all the routes information of the Switch. This window is used to display all the route information on the switch.

To view the following window, click **L3 Features > IPv4 Route Table**, as show below:

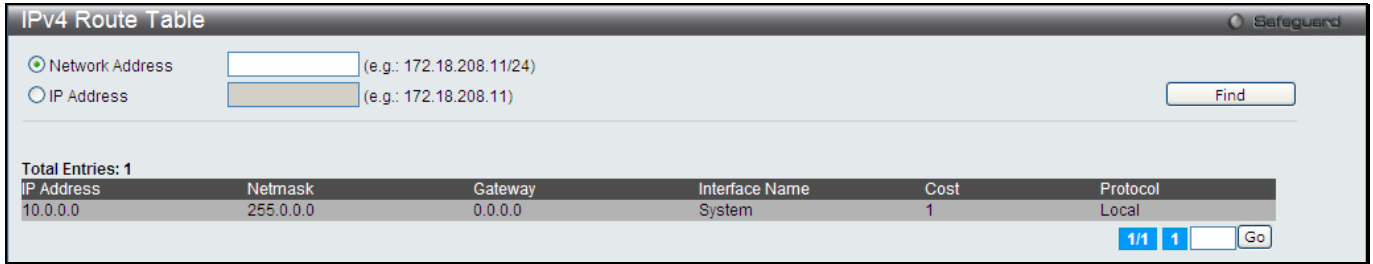


Figure 5-2 IPv4 Route Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Network Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the destination network address of the route to be displayed.
<b>IP Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the destination IP address of the route want to be displayed. The longest prefix matched route will be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## IPv6 Static/Default Route Settings

A static or default entry of an IPv6 address can be entered into the Switch’s routing table for IPv6 formatted addresses.

To view the following window, click **L3 Features > IPv6 Static/Default Route Settings**, as show below:

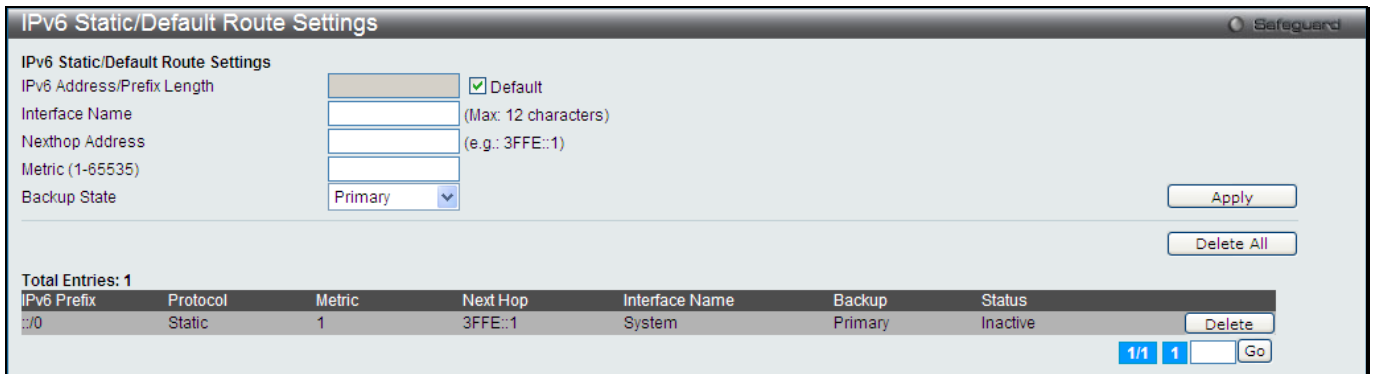


Figure 5-3 IPv6 Static/Default Route Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv6 Address/Prefix Length</b>	This field allows the entry of an IPv6 address to be assigned to the static route. Tick the <b>Default</b> check box to assign to the default route.
<b>Interface Name</b>	The IP Interface where the static IPv6 route is created.
<b>Nexthop Address</b>	The corresponding IPv6 address for the next hop Gateway address in IPv6 format.
<b>Metric (1-65535)</b>	The metric of the IPv6 interface entered into the table representing the number of routers between the Switch and the IPv6 address above. Metric values allowed are between 1 and 65535.
<b>Backup State</b>	Each IPv6 address can only have one primary route, while another route should be assigned to the backup state. When the primary route fails, the Switch will try the

	backup route. The field represents the Backup for the IPv6 configuration. This field may be Primary or Backup.
--	--

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to delete the corresponding entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## IPv6 Route Table

This window is used to display the current IPv6 routing table or specified route entries.

To view the following window, click **L3 Features > IPv6 Route Table**, as shown below:

Figure 5-4 IPv6 Route Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv6 Address/Prefix Length</b>	Tick the check box and enter a 128-bit length IPv6 address.
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Tick the check box and enter the destination IPv6 address of the route to be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

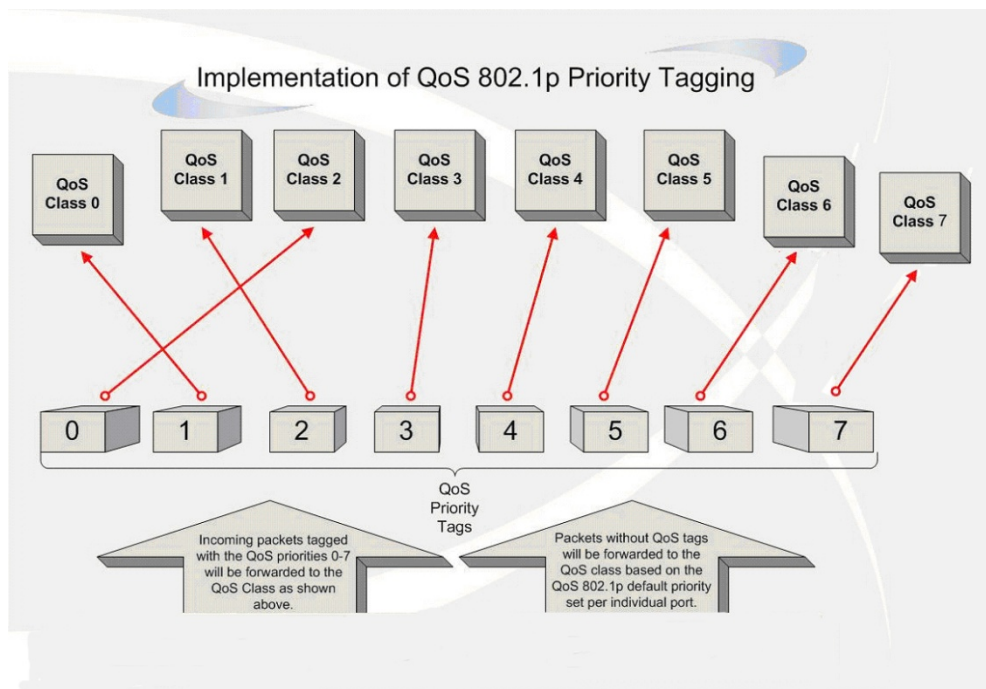
## Chapter 6 QoS

**802.1p Settings**  
**Bandwidth Control**  
**Traffic Control Settings**  
**DSCP**  
**Scheduling Settings**  
**SRED**  
**Queue Statistics**

The Switch supports 802.1p priority queuing Quality of Service. The following section discusses the implementation of QoS (Quality of Service) and benefits of using 802.1p priority queuing.

### Advantages of QoS

QoS is an implementation of the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows network administrators a method of reserving bandwidth for important functions that require a large bandwidth or have a high priority, such as VoIP (voice-over Internet Protocol), web browsing applications, file server applications or video conferencing. Not only can a larger bandwidth be created, but other less critical traffic can be limited, so excessive bandwidth can be saved. The Switch has separate hardware queues on every physical port to which packets from various applications can be mapped to, and, in turn prioritized. View the following map to see how the Switch implements basic 802.1P priority queuing.



**Figure 6-1 Mapping QoS on the Switch**

The picture above shows the default priority setting for the Switch. Class-7 has the highest priority of the seven priority classes of service on the Switch. In order to implement QoS, the user is required to instruct the Switch to examine the header of a packet to see if it has the proper identifying tag. Then the user may forward these tagged packets to designated classes of service on the Switch where they will be emptied, based on priority.

For example, let's say a user wishes to have a video conference between two remotely set computers. The administrator can add priority tags to the video packets being sent out, utilizing the Access Profile commands. Then, on the receiving end, the administrator instructs the Switch to examine packets for this tag, acquires the tagged packets and maps them to a class queue on the Switch. Then in turn, the administrator will set a priority for this queue so that will be emptied before any other packet is forwarded. This result in the end user receiving all packets

sent as quickly as possible, thus prioritizing the queue and allowing for an uninterrupted stream of packets, which optimizes the use of bandwidth available for the video conference.

## **Understanding QoS**

The Switch supports 802.1p priority queuing. The Switch has eight priority queues. These priority queues are numbered from 7 (Class 7) — the highest priority queue — to 0 (Class 0) — the lowest priority queue. The eight priority tags specified in IEEE 802.1p (p0 to p7) are mapped to the Switch's priority queues as follows:

1. Priority 0 is assigned to the Switch's Q2 queue.
2. Priority 1 is assigned to the Switch's Q0 queue.
3. Priority 2 is assigned to the Switch's Q1 queue.
4. Priority 3 is assigned to the Switch's Q3 queue.
5. Priority 4 is assigned to the Switch's Q4 queue.
6. Priority 5 is assigned to the Switch's Q5 queue.
7. Priority 6 is assigned to the Switch's Q6 queue.
8. Priority 7 is assigned to the Switch's Q7 queue.

For strict priority-based scheduling, any packets residing in the higher priority classes of service are transmitted first. Multiple strict priority classes of service are emptied based on their priority tags. Only when these classes are empty, are packets of lower priority transmitted.

For weighted round-robin queuing, the number of packets sent from each priority queue depends upon the assigned weight. For a configuration of eight CoS queues, A~H with their respective weight value: 8~1, the packets are sent in the following sequence: A1, B1, C1, D1, E1, F1, G1, H1, A2, B2, C2, D2, E2, F2, G2, A3, B3, C3, D3, E3, F3, A4, B4, C4, D4, E4, A5, B5, C5, D5, A6, B6, C6, A7, B7, A8, A1, B1, C1, D1, E1, F1, G1, H1.

For weighted round-robin queuing, if each CoS queue has the same weight value, then each CoS queue has an equal opportunity to send packets just like round-robin queuing.

For weighted round-robin queuing, if the weight for a CoS is set to 0, then it will continue processing the packets from this CoS until there are no more packets for this CoS. The other CoS queues that have been given a nonzero value, and depending upon the weight, will follow a common weighted round-robin scheme.

Remember that the Switch has eight configurable priority queues (and eight Classes of Service) for each port on the Switch.



**NOTICE:** The Switch contains eight classes of service for each port on the Switch. One of these classes is reserved for internal use on the Switch and is therefore not configurable. All references in the following section regarding classes of service will refer to only the eight classes of service that may be used and configured by the administrator.

## 802.1p Settings

### 802.1p Default Priority Settings

The Switch allows the assignment of a default 802.1p priority to each port on the Switch. This page allows the user to assign a default 802.1p priority to any given port on the switch that will insert the 802.1p priority tag to untagged packets received. The priority and effective priority tags are numbered from 0, the lowest priority, to 7, the highest priority. The effective priority indicates the actual priority assigned by RADIUS. If the RADIUS assigned value exceeds the specified limit, the value will be set at the default priority. For example, if the RADIUS assigns a limit of 8 and the default priority is 0, the effective priority will be 0.

To view the following window, click **QoS > 802.1p Settings > 802.1p Default Priority Settings**, as show below:

Port	Priority	Effective Priority
1	0	0
2	0	0
3	0	0
4	0	0
5	0	0
6	0	0
7	0	0
8	0	0
9	0	0
10	0	0
11	0	0
12	0	0
13	0	0
14	0	0
15	0	0
16	0	0
17	0	0
18	0	0
19	0	0
20	0	0
21	0	0
22	0	0
23	0	0
24	0	0
25	0	0
26	0	0

Figure 6-2 Default Priority Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the starting and ending ports to use.
<b>Priority</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a value from 0 to 7.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## 802.1p User Priority Settings

The Switch allows the assignment of a class of service to each of the 802.1p priorities.

To view the following window, click **QoS > 802.1p Settings > 802.1p User Priority Settings**, as show below:

Priority	Class ID
0	Class-2
1	Class-0
2	Class-1
3	Class-3
4	Class-4
5	Class-5
6	Class-6
7	Class-7

Figure 6-3 802.1p User Priority Settings window

Once a priority has been assigned to the port groups on the Switch, then a Class may be assigned to each of the eight levels of 802.1p priorities using the drop-down menus on this window. User priority mapping is not only for the default priority configured in the last page, but also for all the incoming tagged packets with 802.1p tag.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## 802.1p Map Settings

This window is used to the mapping of 802.1p to the packet's initial color.

To view the following window, click **QoS > 802.1p Settings > 802.1p Map Settings**, as show below:

Port	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
2	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
3	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
4	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
5	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
6	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
7	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
8	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
9	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
10	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
11	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
12	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
13	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
14	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
15	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
16	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
17	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
18	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
19	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
20	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
21	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
22	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
23	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
24	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
25	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green
26	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green	Green

Figure 6-4 802.1p Map Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select the starting and ending ports to use.
<b>Priority (0-7)</b>	Enter the list of source priority for incoming packets.
<b>Color</b>	Select the mapped color for a packet. The default is <i>Green</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Bandwidth Control

The bandwidth control settings are used to place a ceiling on the transmitting and receiving data rates for any selected port.

### Bandwidth Control Settings

The Effective RX/TX Rate refers to the actual bandwidth of the switch port, if it does not match the configured rate. This usually means that the bandwidth has been assigned by a higher priority resource, such as a RADIUS server.

To view the following window, click **QoS > Bandwidth Control > Bandwidth Control Settings**, as show below:



**Bandwidth Control Settings**
Safeguard

From Port  
01

To Port  
01

Type  
RX

No Limit  
Disabled

Rate (64-10240000)  
 Kbit/sec

Apply

Port	RX Rate (Kbit/sec)	TX Rate (Kbit/sec)	Effective RX (Kbit/sec)	Effective TX (Kbit/sec)
1	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
2	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
3	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
4	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
5	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
6	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
7	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
8	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
9	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
10	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
11	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
12	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
13	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
14	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
15	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
16	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
17	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
18	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
19	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
20	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
21	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
22	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit
23	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit	No Limit

The Effective RX/TX Rate refers to the actual bandwidth of the switch port, if it does not match the configured rate. This usually means that the bandwidth has been assigned by a higher priority resource, such as a RADIUS server.

Figure 6-5 Bandwidth Control Settings window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>Type</b>	This drop-down menu allows a selection between <i>RX</i> (receive), <i>TX</i> (transmit), and <i>Both</i> . This setting will determine whether the bandwidth ceiling is applied to receiving, transmitting, or both receiving and transmitting packets.
<b>No Limit</b>	This drop-down menu allows the user to specify that the selected port will have no bandwidth limit or not. <b>NOTE:</b> If the configured number is larger than the port speed, it means no bandwidth limit.
<b>Rate (64-10240000)</b>	This field allows the input of the data rate that will be the limit for the selected port. The user may choose a rate between <i>64</i> and <i>10240000</i> Kbits per second.
<b>Effective RX</b>	If a RADIUS server has assigned the RX bandwidth, then it will be the effective RX bandwidth. The authentication with the RADIUS sever can be per port or per user. For per user authentication, there may be multiple RX bandwidths assigned if there are multiple users attached to this specific port. The final RX bandwidth will be the largest one among these multiple RX bandwidths.
<b>Effective TX</b>	If a RADIUS server has assigned the TX bandwidth, then it will be the effective TX bandwidth. The authentication with the RADIUS sever can be per port or per user. For per user authentication, there may be multiple TX bandwidths assigned if there are multiple users attached to this specific port. The final TX bandwidth will be the largest one among these multiple TX bandwidths.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Queue Bandwidth Control Settings

To view this window, click **QoS > Bandwidth Control > Queue Bandwidth Control Settings**, as shown below. To view the following window, click **QoS > Bandwidth Control > Queue Bandwidth Control Settings**, as show below:

Queue Bandwidth Control Settings

From Port: 01 To Port: 01 From Queue: 0 To Queue: 0 Min Rate (64-10240000):   No Limit Max Rate (64-10240000):   No Limit

**Queue Bandwidth Control Table On Port 1**

Queue	Min Rate (Kbit/sec)	Max Rate (Kbit/sec)
0	No Limit	No Limit
1	No Limit	No Limit
2	No Limit	No Limit
3	No Limit	No Limit
4	No Limit	No Limit
5	No Limit	No Limit
6	No Limit	No Limit
7	No Limit	No Limit

**Queue Bandwidth Control Table On Port 2**

Queue	Min Rate (Kbit/sec)	Max Rate (Kbit/sec)
0	No Limit	No Limit
1	No Limit	No Limit
2	No Limit	No Limit
3	No Limit	No Limit
4	No Limit	No Limit
5	No Limit	No Limit
6	No Limit	No Limit
7	No Limit	No Limit

**Queue Bandwidth Control Table On Port 3**

Queue	Min Rate (Kbit/sec)	Max Rate (Kbit/sec)
0	No Limit	No Limit
1	No Limit	No Limit
2	No Limit	No Limit
3	No Limit	No Limit
4	No Limit	No Limit

Figure 6-6 Queue Bandwidth Control Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>From Queue / To Queue</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the queue range to use for this configuration.
<b>Min Rate (64-10240000)</b>	Specify the packet limit, in Kbps that the ports are allowed to receive. Tick the <b>No limit</b> check box to have unlimited rate of packets received by the specified queue.
<b>Max Rate (64-10240000)</b>	Enter the maximum rate for the queue. For no limit select the <b>No Limit</b> option.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The minimum granularity of queue bandwidth control is 64Kbit/sec. The system will adjust the number to the multiple of 64 automatically.

## Traffic Control Settings

On a computer network, packets such as Multicast packets and Broadcast packets continually flood the network as normal procedure. At times, this traffic may increase due to a malicious end station on the network or a malfunctioning device, such as a faulty network card. Thus, switch throughput problems will arise and consequently

affect the overall performance of the switch network. To help rectify this packet storm, the Switch will monitor and control the situation.

Packet storms are monitored to determine if too many packets are flooding the network based on threshold levels provided by the user. Once a packet storm has been detected, the Switch will drop packets coming into the Switch until the storm has subsided. This method can be utilized by selecting the *Drop* option of the Action parameter in the window below.

The Switch will also scan and monitor packets coming into the Switch by monitoring the Switch's chip counter. This method is only viable for Broadcast and Multicast storms because the chip only has counters for these two types of packets. Once a storm has been detected (that is, once the packet threshold set below has been exceeded), the Switch will shut down the port to all incoming traffic, with the exception of STP BPDU packets, for a time period specified using the Count Down parameter.

If a Time Interval parameter times-out for a port configured for traffic control and a packet storm continues, that port will be placed in Shutdown Forever mode, which will cause a warning message to be sent to the Trap Receiver. Once in Shutdown Forever mode, the method of recovering the port is to manually recoup it using the **System Configuration > Port configuration > Port Settings** window or automatic recovering after the time period that is configured in the **Traffic Auto Recover Time** field. Select the disabled port and return its State to *Enabled* status. To utilize this method of Storm Control, choose the *Shutdown* option of the Action parameter in the window below.

Use this window to enable or disable storm control and adjust the threshold for multicast and broadcast storms. To view the following window, click **QoS > Traffic Control Settings**, as show below:

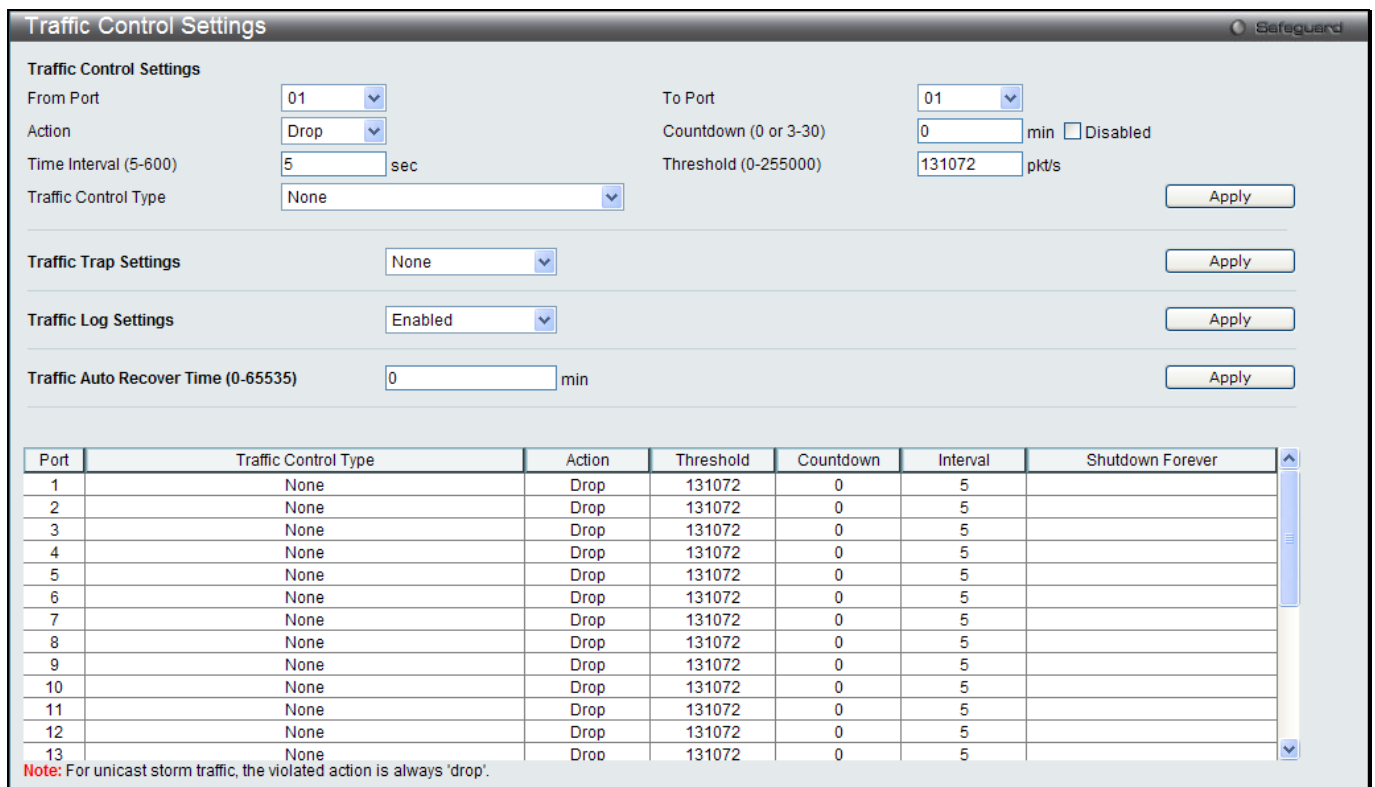


Figure 6-7 Traffic Control Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port range to use for this configuration.
<b>Action</b>	Select the method of traffic control from the drop-down menu. The choices are: <i>Drop</i> – Utilizes the hardware Traffic Control mechanism, which means the Switch's hardware will determine the Packet Storm based on the Threshold value stated and

	<p>drop packets until the issue is resolved.</p> <p><i>Shutdown</i> – Utilizes the Switch's software Traffic Control mechanism to determine the Packet Storm occurring. Once detected, the port will deny all incoming traffic to the port except STP BPDU packets, which are essential in keeping the Spanning Tree operational on the Switch. If the Count Down timer has expired and yet the Packet Storm continues, the port will be placed in Shutdown Forever mode and is no longer operational until the port recovers after 5 minutes automatically or the user manually resets the port using the <b>Port Settings</b> window (<b>Configuration&gt; Port Configuration&gt; Port Settings</b>). Choosing this option obligates the user to configure the Time Interval setting as well, which will provide packet count samplings from the Switch's chip to determine if a Packet Storm is occurring.</p>
<b>Countdown (0 or 3-30)</b>	The Count Down timer is set to determine the amount of time, in minutes, that the Switch will wait before shutting down the port that is experiencing a traffic storm. This parameter is only useful for ports configured as <i>Shutdown</i> in their Action field and therefore will not operate for hardware-based Traffic Control implementations. The possible time settings for this field are 0 and 3 to 30 minutes. To disable this feature select the <b>Disable</b> option.
<b>Time Interval (5-600)</b>	The Time Interval will set the time between Multicast and Broadcast packet counts sent from the Switch's chip to the Traffic Control function. These packet counts are the determining factor in deciding when incoming packets exceed the Threshold value. The Time Interval may be set between 5 and 600 seconds, with a default setting of 5 seconds.
<b>Threshold (0-255000)</b>	Specify the maximum number of packets per second that will trigger the Traffic Control function to commence. The configurable threshold range is from 0-255000 with a default setting of 131072 packets per second.
<b>Traffic Control Type</b>	Specify the desired Storm Control Type: <i>None, Broadcast, Multicast, Unknown Unicast, Broadcast + Multicast, Broadcast + Unknown Unicast, Multicast + Unknown Unicast, and Broadcast + Multicast + Unknown Unicast.</i>
<b>Traffic Trap Settings</b>	<p>Enable sending of Storm Trap messages when the type of action taken by the Traffic Control function in handling a Traffic Storm is one of the following:</p> <p><i>None</i> – No trap state is specified.</p> <p><i>Storm Occurred</i> – Will send Storm Trap warning messages upon the occurrence of a Traffic Storm only.</p> <p><i>Storm Cleared</i> – Will send Storm Trap messages when a Traffic Storm has been cleared by the Switch only.</p> <p><i>Both</i> – Will send Storm Trap messages when a Traffic Storm has been both detected and cleared by the Switch.</p> <p>This function cannot be implemented in the hardware mode. (When <i>Drop</i> is chosen for the Action parameter)</p>
<b>Traffic Log Settings</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the function. If enabled, the traffic control states are logged when a storm occurs and when a storm is cleared. If the log state is disabled, the traffic control events are not logged.
<b>Traffic Auto Recover Time (0-65535)</b>	Enter the time allowed for auto recovery from shutdown for a port. The default value is 0, which means there is no auto recovery and the port remains in shutdown forever mode. This requires manual entry of the CLI command <b>config ports [ &lt;portlist&gt;   all ] state enable</b> to return the port to a forwarding state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



**NOTE:** Traffic Control cannot be implemented on ports that are set for Link Aggregation (Port Trunking).



**NOTE:** Ports that are in the Shutdown Forever mode will be seen as Discarding in Spanning Tree windows and implementations though these ports will still be forwarding BPDUs to the Switch's CPU.



**NOTE:** Ports that are in Shutdown Forever mode will be seen as link down in all windows and screens until the user recovers these ports.



**NOTE:** The minimum granularity of storm control on each port is 1pps.

## DSCP

### DSCP Trust Settings

This page is to configure the DSCP trust state of ports. When ports are under the DSCP trust mode, the switch will insert the priority tag to untagged packets by using the DSCP Map settings instead of the default port priority.

To view the following window, click **QoS > DSCP > DSCP Trust Settings**, as show below:

Port	DSCP Trust
1	Disabled
2	Disabled
3	Disabled
4	Disabled
5	Disabled
6	Disabled
7	Disabled
8	Disabled
9	Disabled
10	Disabled
11	Disabled
12	Disabled
13	Disabled
14	Disabled
15	Disabled
16	Disabled
17	Disabled
18	Disabled
19	Disabled
20	Disabled
21	Disabled
22	Disabled
23	Disabled
24	Disabled
25	Disabled
26	Disabled

Figure 6-8 DSCP Trust Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a range of port to configure.
<b>State</b>	Enable/disable to trust DSCP. By default, DSCP trust is disabled.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

### DSCP Map Settings

The mapping of DSCP to queue will be used to determine the priority of the packet (which will be then used to determine the scheduling queue) when the port is in DSCP trust state.

The DSCP-to-DSCP mapping is used in the swap of DSCP of the packet when the packet is ingresses to the port. The remaining processing of the packet will base on the new DSCP. By default, the DSCP is mapped to the same DSCP.

The DSCP color mapping is used to the mapping of DSCP to a priority and the packet's initial color.

To view the following window, click **QoS > DSCP > DSCP Map Settings**, as show below:

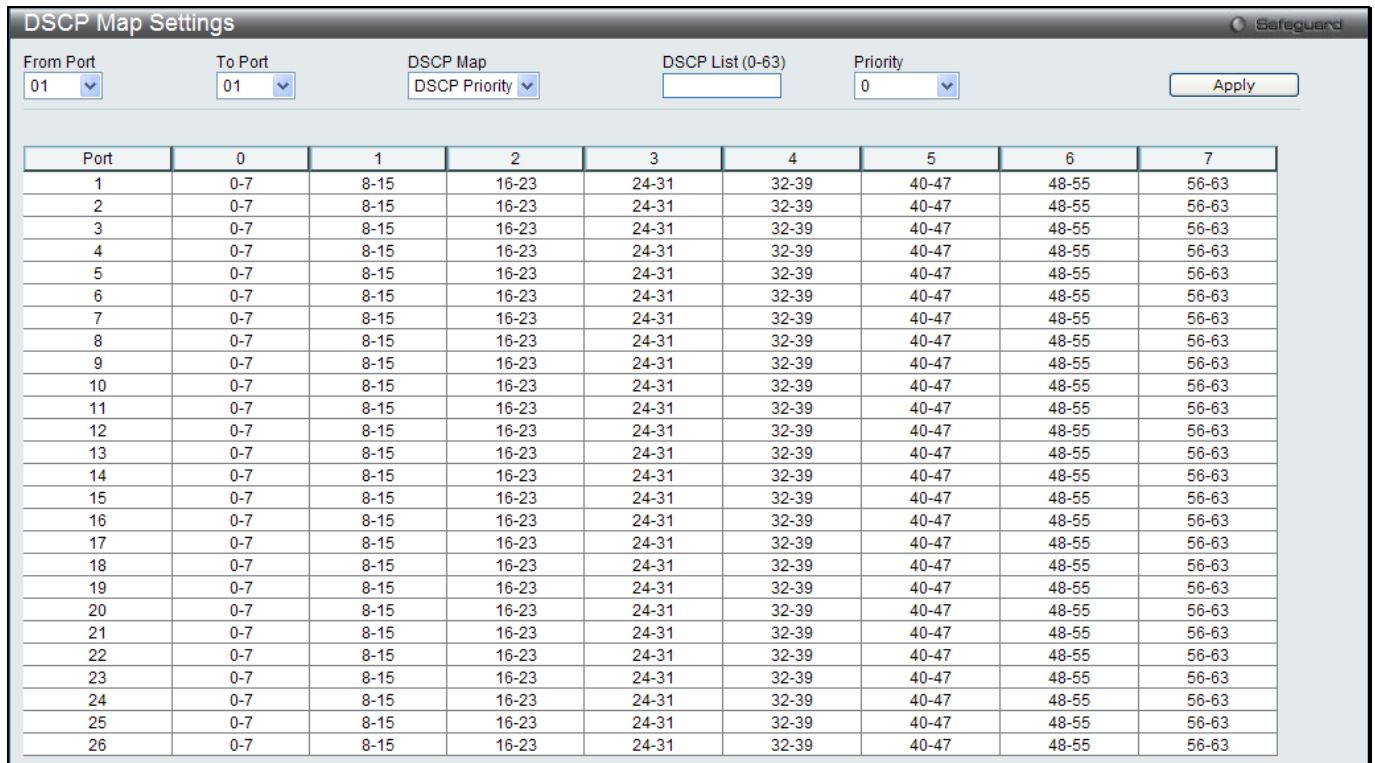


Figure 6-9 DSCP Map Settings - DSCP Priority window

To view the following window, click **QoS > DSCP > DSCP Map Settings** and select **DSCP DSCP** from the DSCP Map drop-down menu, as show below:

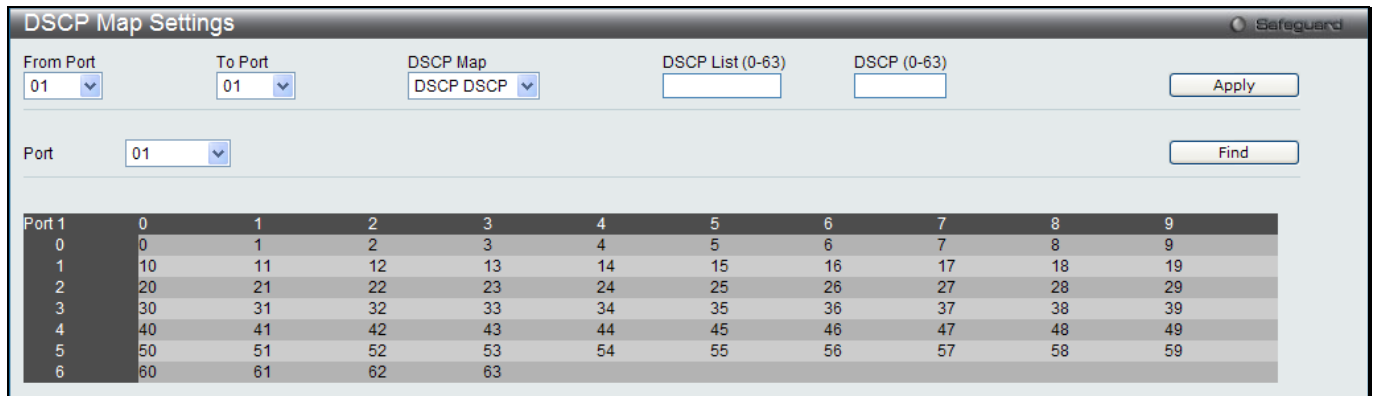


Figure 6-10 DSCP Map Settings - DSCP DSCP window

To view the following window, click **QoS > DSCP > DSCP Map Settings** and select **DSCP Color** from the DSCP Map drop-down menu, as show below:

Port	Green	Red	Yellow
1	0-63		
2	0-63		
3	0-63		
4	0-63		
5	0-63		
6	0-63		
7	0-63		
8	0-63		
9	0-63		
10	0-63		
11	0-63		
12	0-63		
13	0-63		
14	0-63		
15	0-63		
16	0-63		
17	0-63		
18	0-63		
19	0-63		
20	0-63		
21	0-63		
22	0-63		
23	0-63		
24	0-63		
25	0-63		
26	0-63		

Figure 6-11 DSCP Map Settings - DSCP Color window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a range of port to configure.
<b>DSCP Map</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select one of two options: <i>DSCP Priority</i> – Specify a list of DSCP values to be mapped to a specific priority. <i>DSCP DSCP</i> – Specify a list of DSCP value to be mapped to a specific DSCP. <i>DSCP Color</i> - Specify a list of DSCP value to be mapped to a specific color.
<b>DSCP List (0-63)</b>	Enter a DSCP List value.
<b>Priority</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a Priority value. This appears when selecting <b>DSCP Priority</b> in the <b>DSCP Map</b> drop-down menu.
<b>DSCP (0-63)</b>	Enter a DSCP value. This appears when selecting <b>DSCP DSCP</b> in the <b>DSCP Map</b> drop-down menu.
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a port. This appears when selecting <b>DSCP DSCP</b> in the <b>DSCP Map</b> drop-down menu.
<b>Color</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the result color of the mapping. This appears when selecting <b>DSCP Color</b> in the <b>DSCP Map</b> drop-down menu.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

## Scheduling Settings

### QoS Scheduling

This window allows the user to configure the way the Switch will map an incoming packet per port based on its 802.1p user priority, to one of the eight available hardware priority queues available on the Switch.

To view this window, click **QoS > Scheduling Settings > QoS Scheduling** as shown below:



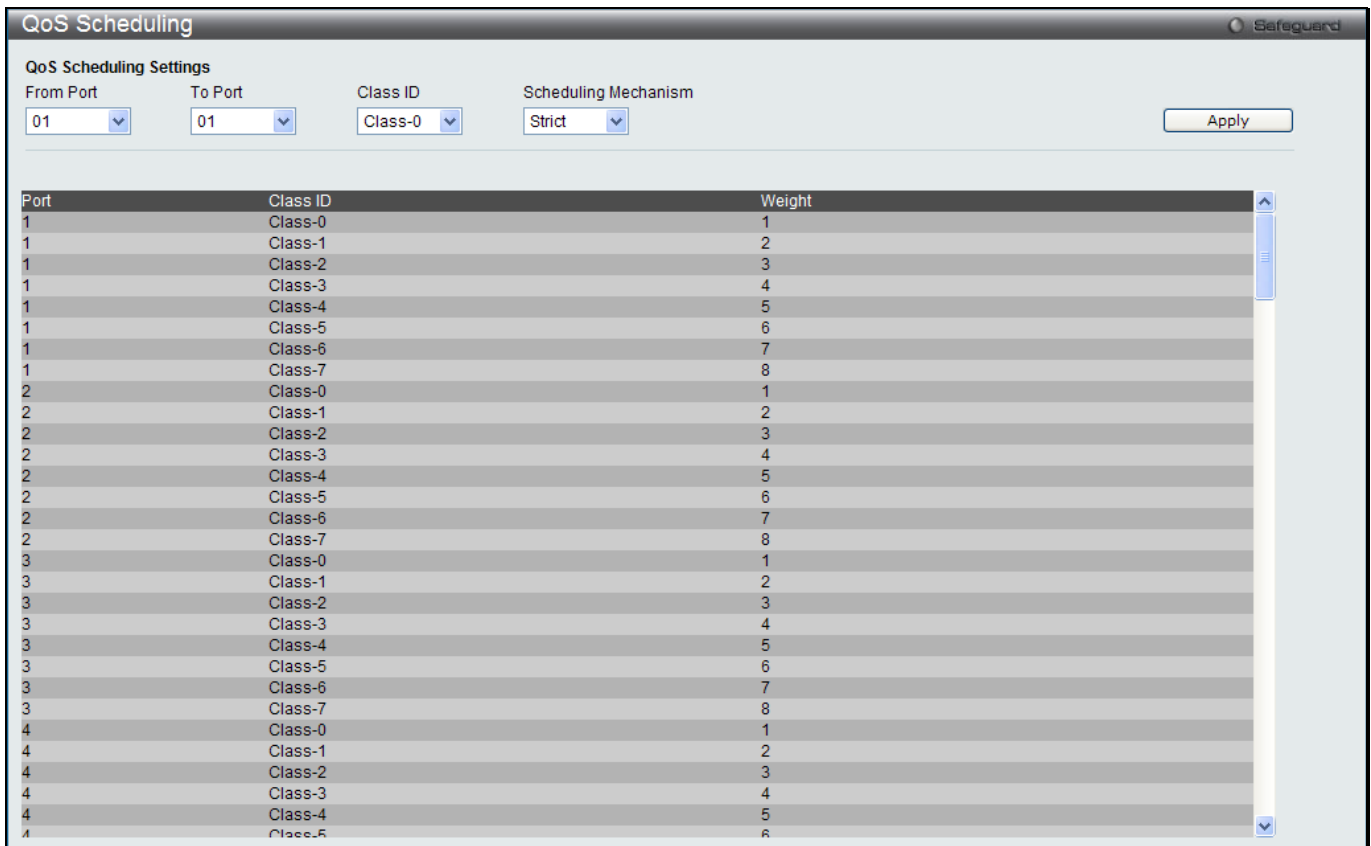


Figure 6-12 QoS Scheduling window

The following parameters can be configured:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Enter the port or port list you wish to configure.
<b>Class ID</b>	Select the Class ID, from 0-7 to configure for the QoS parameters.
<b>Scheduling Mechanism</b>	<p><i>Strict</i> – The highest class of service is the first to process traffic. That is, the highest class of service will finish before other queues empty.</p> <p><i>Weight</i> – Use the weighted round-robin (<i>WRR</i>) algorithm to handle packets in an even distribution in priority classes of service.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## QoS Scheduling Mechanism

Changing the output scheduling used for the hardware queues in the Switch can customize QoS. As with any changes to QoS implementation, careful consideration should be given to how network traffic in lower priority queues are affected. Changes in scheduling may result in unacceptable levels of packet loss or significant transmission delays. If you choose to customize this setting, it is important to monitor network performance, especially during peak demand, as bottlenecks can quickly develop if the QoS settings are not suitable.

To view this window, click **QoS > Scheduling Settings > QoS Scheduling Mechanism** as shown below:



**QoS Scheduling Mechanism**
Safeguard

**QoS Scheduling Mechanism Settings**

From Port:  To Port:  Scheduling Mechanism:  Apply

Port	Mode
1	Strict
2	Strict
3	Strict
4	Strict
5	Strict
6	Strict
7	Strict
8	Strict
9	Strict
10	Strict
11	Strict
12	Strict
13	Strict
14	Strict
15	Strict
16	Strict
17	Strict
18	Strict
19	Strict
20	Strict
21	Strict
22	Strict
23	Strict
24	Strict
25	Strict
26	Strict

Figure 6-13 QoS Scheduling Mechanism

The following parameters can be configured:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Enter the port or port list you wish to configure.
<b>Scheduling Mechanism</b>	<p><i>Strict</i> – The highest class of service is the first to process traffic. That is, the highest class of service will finish before other queues empty.</p> <p><i>Weighted Deficit Round Robin</i> – Use the weighted deficit round-robin algorithm to handle packets in an even distribution in priority classes of service.</p> <p><i>Weighted Round Robin</i> – Use the weighted round-robin algorithm to handle packets in an even distribution in priority classes of service.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The settings you assign to the queues, numbers 0-7, represent the IEEE 802.1p priority tag number. Do not confuse these settings with port numbers.

## SRED

Simple random early detection (sRED) is a simplified RED mechanism based on ASIC capability. Random Early Detection (RED) is a congestion avoidance mechanism at the gateway in packet switched networks. RED gateways keep the average queue size low while allowing occasional bursts of packets in the queue. The switch provides support for sRED through active queue management by probabilistic dropping of incoming colored packets.

Active queue management is a class of algorithms that attempt to proactively drop or mark frames before congestion becomes excessive. The goal is to detect the onset of persistent congestion and take proactive action so that TCP sources contributing to the congestion back off gracefully, insuring good network utilization while minimizing frame loss.

This proactive approach starts discarding specific colored packets before the packet buffer becomes full. If this queue depth is less than the threshold, there is minimal (or no) congestion and the packet is queued. If congestion is detected the packet is dropped or queued based on the DSCP.

## SRED Settings

To view this window, click **QoS > SRED > SRED Settings**, as shown below:

Port	Class	Drop Green	Threshold Low	Threshold High	Drop Rate Low	Drop Rate High
1	0	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	1	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	2	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	3	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	4	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	5	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	6	Disabled	60	80	1	1
1	7	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	0	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	1	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	2	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	3	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	4	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	5	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	6	Disabled	60	80	1	1
2	7	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	0	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	1	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	2	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	3	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	4	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	5	Disabled	60	80	1	1
3	6	Disabled	60	80	1	1

Figure 6-14 SRED Settings Window

The following parameters can be configured:

Parameter	Description
<b>SRED Global Settings</b>	Specify the sRED feature's state on this Switch.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Specify the list of port that will be used for this configuration.
<b>Class ID</b>	Select the Class ID, from 0-7, to configure for the SRED parameters. Selecting All will set the parameters configured here for all CoS queues.
<b>Drop Green</b>	<p>Enabled: Probabilistic drop yellow and red colored packets if the queue depth is above the lower threshold, and probabilistic drop green colored packets if the queue depth is above the upper threshold.</p> <p>Disabled: Probabilistic drop red colored packets if the queue depth is above the lower threshold, and probabilistic drop yellow colored packets if the queue depth is above the upper threshold. Green packets will not be dropped even it reach the threshold. □</p>
<b>Threshold Low</b>	Threshold Low refers to drop red or yellow packets depending on the <b>Drop Green</b> option.
<b>Threshold High</b>	Threshold High refers to drop yellow or green packets depending on the <b>Drop Green</b> option.
<b>Drop Rate Low</b>	Specify the low drop rate value used.
<b>Drop Rate High</b>	Specify the high drop rate value used.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## SRED Drop Counter

This window is used to view the SRED Drop Counter settings on the Switch.

To view this window, click **QoS > SRED > SRED Drop Counter**, as shown below:

Port	Yellow	Red
1	0	0
2	0	0
3	0	0
4	0	0
5	0	0
6	0	0
7	0	0
8	0	0
9	0	0
10	0	0
11	0	0
12	0	0
13	0	0
14	0	0
15	0	0
16	0	0
17	0	0
18	0	0
19	0	0
20	0	0
21	0	0
22	0	0
23	0	0
24	0	0
25	0	0
26	0	0

Figure 6-15 SRED Drop Counter Window

## Queue Statistics

This window is used to display the 802.1p queue statistics of each port.

To view this window, click **QoS > Queue Statistics**, as shown below:

Queue	Min Bandwidth(kbps)	Max Bandwidth(kbps)	Packets/sec	Bytes/sec	Total packets	Total Bytes
0	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
1	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
2	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
3	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
4	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
5	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
6	0	1024000	0	0	0	0
7	0	1024000	0	0	0	0

**Note:**(1)Min Bandwidth: minimum bandwidth setting, associated with per queue bandwidth control, if user doesn't configure it, the min bandwidth will be 0.  
(2)Max Bandwidth: maximum bandwidth setting, associated with per queue bandwidth control, if user doesn't configure it, the max bandwidth will be the current port's link speed.

The following parameters can be configured:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select a port to display.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

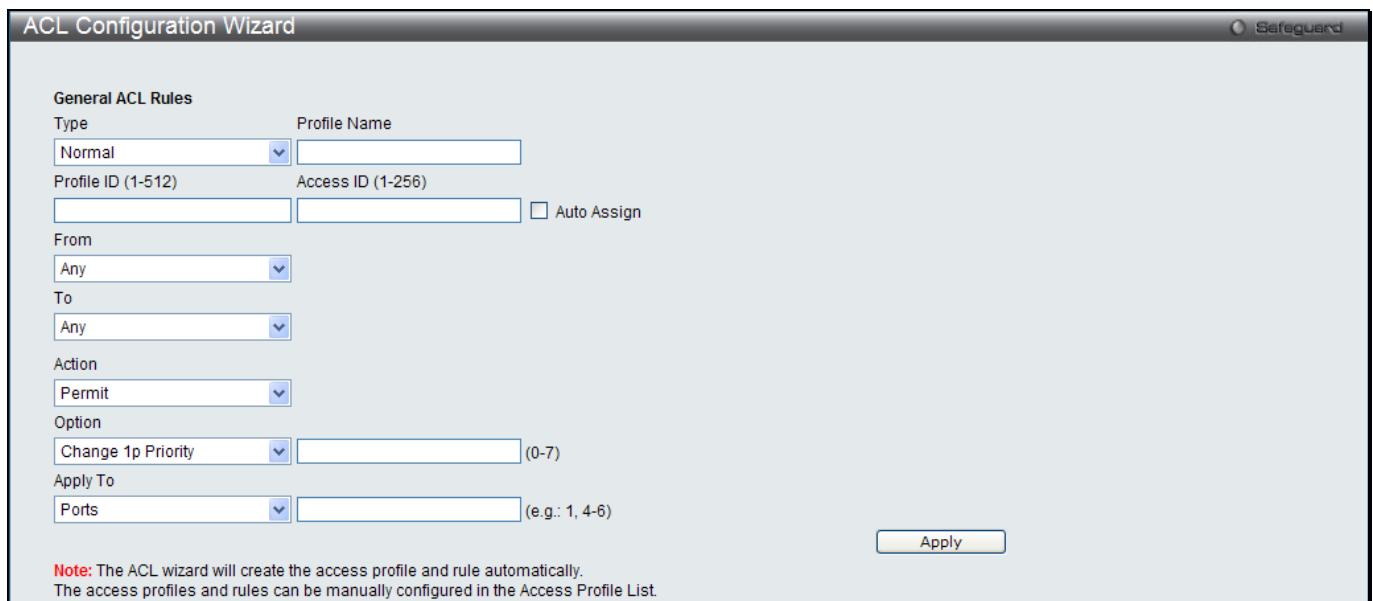
# Chapter 7 ACL

**ACL Configuration Wizard**  
**Access Profile List**  
**CPU Access Profile List**  
**ACL Finder**  
**ACL Flow Meter**

## ACL Configuration Wizard

The ACL Configuration Wizard will aid the user in the creation of access profiles and ACL Rules automatically by simply inputting the address or service type and the action needed. It saves administrators a lot of time.

To view this window, click **ACL > ACL Configuration Wizard** as shown below:



**Figure 7-1 ACL Configuration Wizard window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the general ACL Rule types: <i>Normal</i> – Selecting this option will create a Normal ACL Rule. <i>CPU</i> – Selecting this option will create a CPU ACL Rule.
<b>Profile Name</b>	After selecting to configure a <i>Normal</i> type rule, the user can enter the Profile Name for the new rule here.
<b>Profile ID</b>	Enter the Profile ID for the new rule. When <i>Normal</i> is selected in the <b>Type</b> drop-down menu, the range of profile ID is from 1 to 512. When <i>CPU</i> is selected in the <b>Type</b> drop-down menu, the range of profile ID is from 1 to 5.
<b>Access ID</b>	Enter the Access ID for the new rule. Selecting the <b>Auto Assign</b> option will allow the switch to automatically assign an unused access ID to this rule. When <i>Normal</i> is selected in the <b>Type</b> drop-down menu, the range of access ID is from 1 to 256. When <i>CPU</i> is selected in the <b>Type</b> drop-down menu, the range of access ID is from 1 to 100.
<b>From / To</b>	This rule can be created to apply to four different categories: <i>Any</i> – Selecting this option will include any starting category to this rule. <i>MAC Address</i> – Selecting this option will allow the user to enter a range of MAC addresses for this rule.

	<p><i>IPv4 Address</i> – Selecting this option will allow the user to enter a range of IPv4 addresses for this rule.</p> <p><i>IPv6</i> – Selecting this option will allow the user to enter a range of IPv6 addresses for this rule.</p>
<b>Action</b>	<p>Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below).</p> <p>Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.</p> <p>Select <i>Mirror</i> to specify that packets that match the access profile are mirrored to a port defined in the mirror port section. Port Mirroring must be enabled and a target port must be set.</p>
<b>Option</b>	<p>After selecting the <i>Permit</i> action, the user can select one of the following options:</p> <p><i>Change 1p Priority</i> – Here the user can enter the 1p priority value.</p> <p><i>Replace DSCP</i> – Here the user can enter the DSCP value.</p> <p><i>Replace ToS Precedence</i> – Here the user can enter the ToS Precedence value.</p>
<b>Apply To</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to select and enter the information that this rule will be applied to.</p> <p><i>Ports</i> – Enter a port number or a port range.</p> <p><i>VLAN Name</i> – Enter a VLAN name.</p> <p><i>VLAN ID</i> – Enter a VLAN ID.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The Switch will use one minimum mask to cover all the terms that user input, however, some extra bits may also be masked at the same time. To optimize the ACL profile and rules, please use manual configuration.

## Access Profile List

Access profiles allow you to establish criteria to determine whether the Switch will forward packets based on the information contained in each packet's header.

To view Access Profile List window, click **ACL > Access Profile List** as shown below:

The Switch supports four Profile Types, Ethernet ACL, IPv4 ACL, IPv6 ACL, and Packet Content ACL.

Creating an access profile is divided into two basic parts. The first is to specify which part or parts of a frame the Switch will examine, such as the MAC source address or the IP destination address. The second part is entering the criteria the Switch will use to determine what to do with the frame. The entire process is described below in two parts.

Users can display the currently configured Access Profiles on the Switch.

Profile ID	Profile Name	Profile Type	
1	Ethernet	Ethernet	Show Details Add/View Rules Delete
2	IPv4	IP	Show Details Add/View Rules Delete
3	IPv6	IPv6	Show Details Add/View Rules Delete
4	PacketContent	Packet Content	Show Details Add/View Rules Delete

Figure 7-2 Access Profile List window

Click the **Add ACL Profile** button to add an entry to the **Access Profile List**.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all access profiles from this table.

Click the **Show Details** button to display the information of the specific profile ID entry.

Click the **Add/View Rules** button to view or add ACL rules within the specified profile ID.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

There are four **Add Access Profile** windows;

1. one for Ethernet (or MAC address-based) profile configuration,
2. one for IPv6 address-based profile configuration,
3. one for IPv4 address-based profile configuration, and
4. one for packet content profile configuration.

## Add an Ethernet ACL Profile

The window shown below is the Add ACL Profile window for Ethernet. To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more fields to the mask.

After clicking the **Add ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

**Figure 7-3 Add ACL Profile window (Ethernet ACL)**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-512)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 512.
<b>Profile Name</b>	Enter a profile name for the profile created.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or

	<p>packet content. This will change the window according to the requirements for the type of profile.</p> <p>Select Ethernet ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header.</p> <p>Select IPv4 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header.</p> <p>Select IPv6 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header.</p> <p>Select Packet Content to instruct the Switch to examine the packet content in each frame's header.</p>
<b>Source MAC Mask</b>	Enter a MAC address mask for the source MAC address, e.g. FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF.
<b>Destination MAC Mask</b>	Enter a MAC address mask for the destination MAC address, e.g. FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF.
<b>802.1Q VLAN</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the 802.1Q VLAN identifier of each packet header and use this as the full or partial criterion for forwarding.
<b>VLAN Mask</b>	Select and enter the VLAN mask value.
<b>802.1p</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the 802.1p priority value of each packet header and use this as the, or part of the criterion for forwarding.
<b>Ethernet Type</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the Ethernet type value in each frame's header.

Click the **Select** button to select an ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:

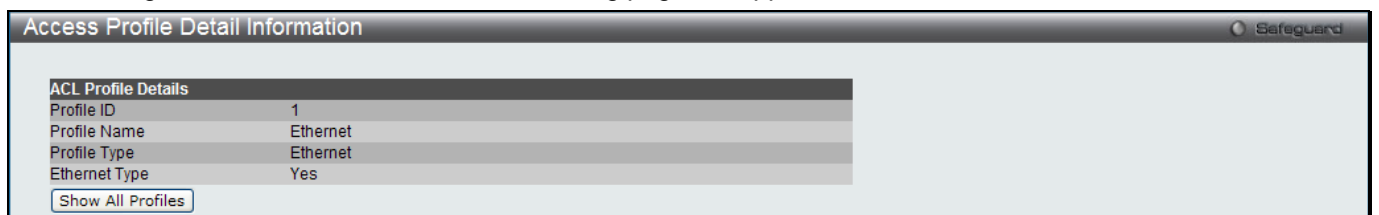


Figure 7-4 Access Profile Detail Information window (Ethernet ACL)

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **Access Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:

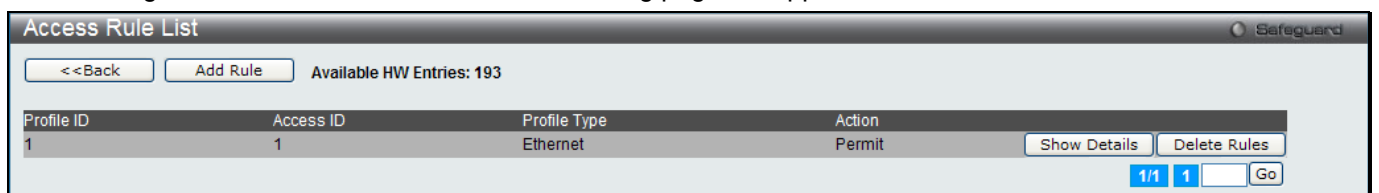


Figure 7-5 Access Rule List window (Ethernet ACL)

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 7-6 Add Access Rule window (Ethernet ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-256)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 256. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter the VLAN ID.
<b>VLAN Mask</b>	Select and enter the VLAN mask value.
<b>Source MAC Address</b>	Enter the source MAC address.
<b>Source MAC Address Mask</b>	Select and enter the source MAC address mask.
<b>Destination MAC Address</b>	Enter the destination MAC address.
<b>Destination MAC Address Mask</b>	Select and enter the destination MAC address mask.
<b>802.1p</b>	Enter the 802.1p priority tag value. This value must be between 0 and 7.
<b>Ethernet Type (0-FFFF)</b>	Enter the Ethernet type value.
<b>Action</b>	Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below). Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered. Select <i>Mirror</i> to specify that packets that match the access profile are mirrored to a port defined in the config mirror port command. Port Mirroring must be enabled and a target port must be set.
<b>Priority (0-7)</b>	Tick the corresponding check box if you want to re-write the 802.1p default priority of

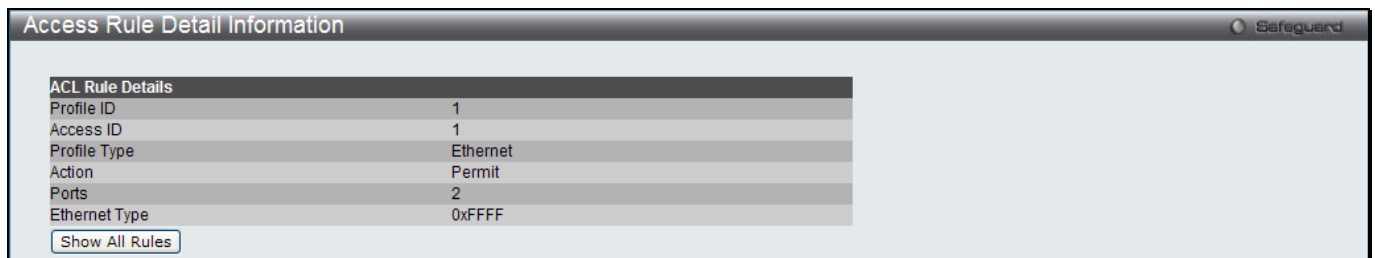


	a packet to the value entered in the Priority field, which meets the criteria specified previously in this command, before forwarding it on to the specified CoS queue. Otherwise, a packet will have its incoming 802.1p user priority re-written to its original value before being forwarded by the Switch. For more information on priority queues, CoS queues and mapping for 802.1p, see the QoS section of this manual.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Tick this check box to replace the Priority value in the adjacent field.
<b>Replace DSCP (0-63)</b>	Select this option to instruct the Switch to replace the DSCP value (in a packet that meets the selected criteria) with the value entered in the adjacent field. When an ACL rule is added to change both the priority and DSCP of an IPv4 packet, only one of them can be modified due to a chip limitation. Currently the priority is changed when both the priority and DSCP are set to be modified.
<b>Replace ToS Precedence (0-7)</b>	Specify that the IP precedence of the outgoing packet is changed with the new value. If used without an action priority, the packet is sent to the default traffic class.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Counter</b>	Here the user can select the counter. By checking the counter, the administrator can see how many times that the rule was hit.
<b>Ports</b>	When a range of ports is to be configured, the Auto Assign check box <b>MUST</b> be ticked in the Access ID field of this window. If not, the user will be presented with an error message and the access rule will not be configured.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Specify the VLAN name to apply to the access rule.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to apply to the access rule.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:



**Figure 7-7 Access Rule Detail Information window (Ethernet ACL)**

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the Access Rule List.

## Adding an IPv4 ACL Profile

The window shown below is the Add ACL Profile window for IPv4. To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more filed to the mask.

After clicking the **Add ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 7-8 Add ACL Profile window (IPv4 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-512)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 512.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet content. This will change the window according to the requirements for the type of profile. Select Ethernet ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header. Select IPv4 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header. Select IPv6 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header. Select Packet Content to instruct the Switch to examine the packet content in each frame's header.
<b>802.1Q VLAN</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the 802.1Q VLAN identifier of each packet header and use this as the full or partial criterion for forwarding.
<b>VLAN Mask</b>	Select and enter the VLAN mask value.
<b>IPv4 DSCP</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the DiffServ Code part of each packet header and use this as the, or part of the criterion for forwarding.
<b>IPv4 Source IP Mask</b>	Enter an IP address mask for the source IP address, e.g. 255.255.255.255.
<b>IPv4 Destination IP Mask</b>	Enter an IP address mask for the destination IP address, e.g. 255.255.255.255.
<b>Protocol</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the protocol type value in each frame's header. Then the user must specify what protocol(s) to include according to

the following guidelines:

Select *ICMP* to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) field in each frame's header.

Select *Type* to further specify that the access profile will apply an ICMP type value, or specify *Code* to further specify that the access profile will apply an ICMP code value.

Select *IGMP* to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) field in each frame's header.

Select *Type* to further specify that the access profile will apply an IGMP type value.

Select *TCP* to use the TCP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting TCP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.

*Source Port Mask* - Specify a TCP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff), which you wish to filter.

*Destination Port Mask* - Specify a TCP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff) which you wish to filter.

*TCP Flag Bits* - The user may also identify which flag bits to filter. Flag bits are parts of a packet that determine what to do with the packet. The user may filter packets by filtering certain flag bits within the packets, by checking the boxes corresponding to the flag bits of the TCP field. The user may choose between urg (urgent), ack (acknowledgement), psh (push), rst (reset), syn (synchronize), fin (finish).

Select *UDP* to use the UDP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting UDP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.

*Source Port Mask* - Specify a UDP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff).

*Destination Port Mask* - Specify a UDP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff).

Select *Protocol ID* - Enter a value defining the protocol ID in the packet header to mask. Specify the protocol ID mask in hex form (hex 0x0-0xff).

*Protocol ID Mask* - Specify that the rule applies to the IP protocol ID traffic.

*User Define* - Specify the Layer 4 part mask

Click the **Select** button to select an ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:

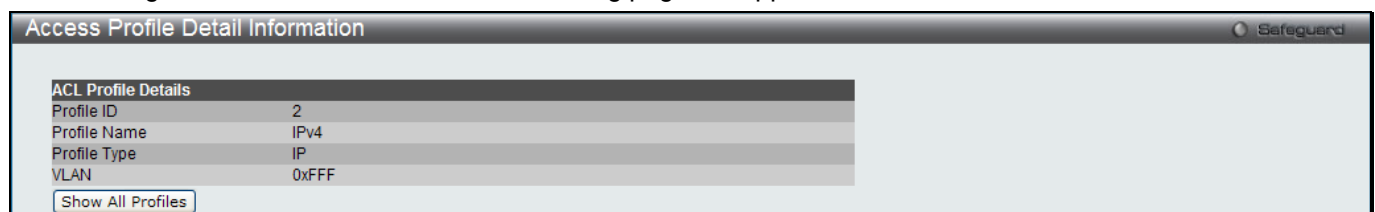


Figure 7-9 Access Profile Detail Information window (IPv4 ACL)

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **Access Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:

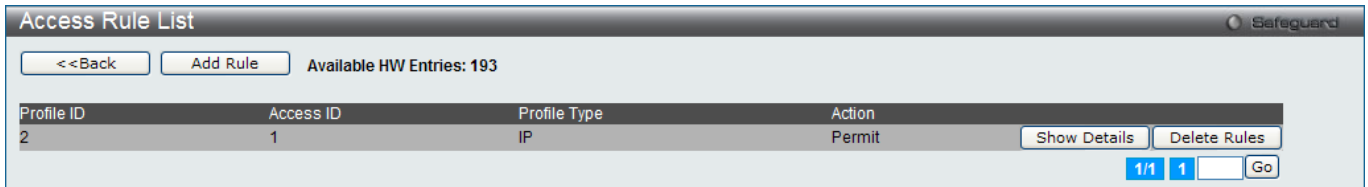


Figure 7-10 Access Rule List window (IPv4 ACL)

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:

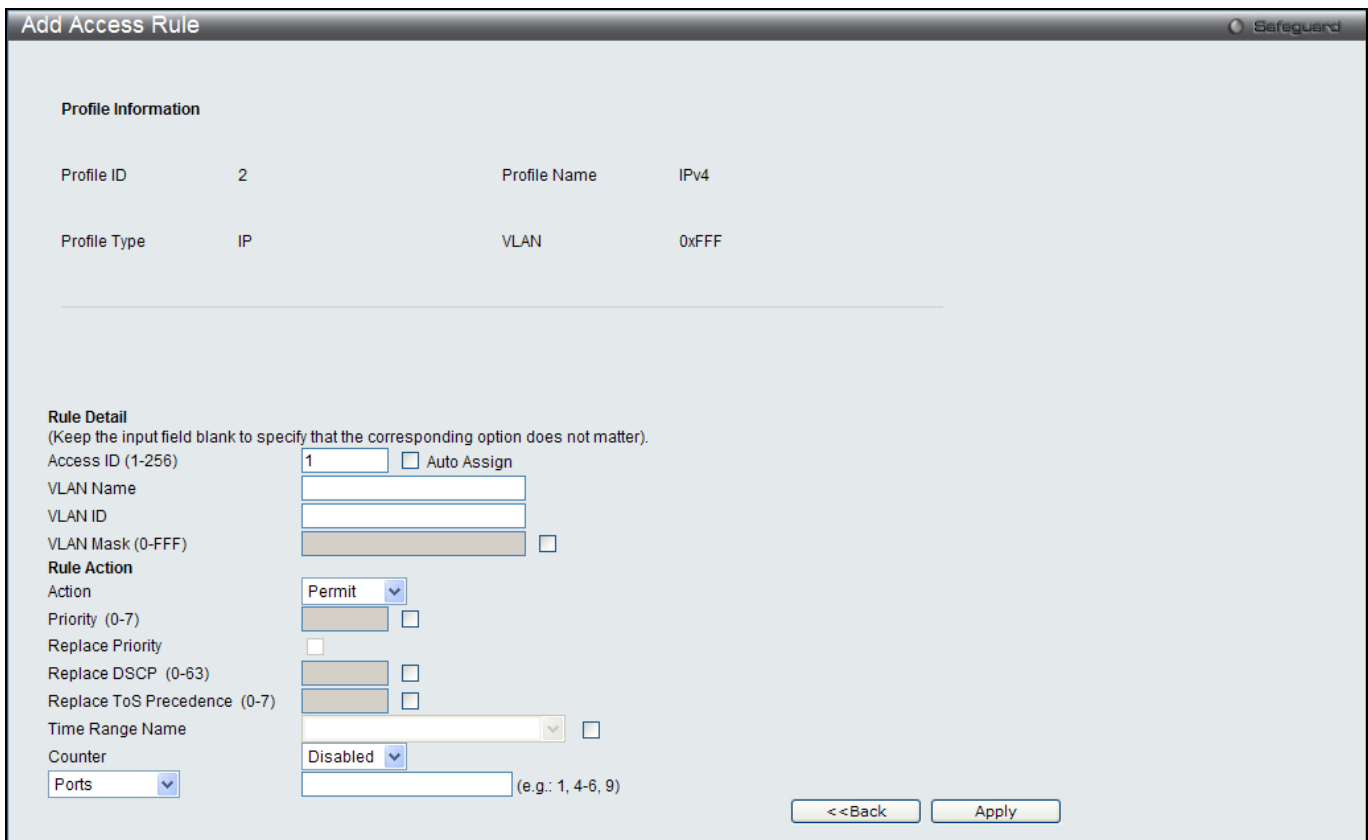


Figure 7-11 Add Access Rule (IPv4 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-256)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 256. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter the VLAN ID.
<b>VLAN Mask</b>	Select and enter the VLAN mask value.
<b>Source IP Address</b>	Enter the source IP address.
<b>Source IP Address Mask</b>	Select and enter the source IP address mask.

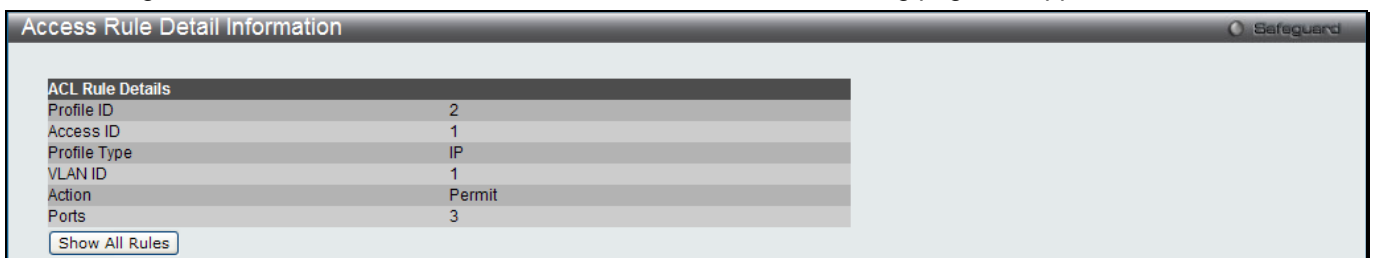
<b>Destination IP Address</b>	Enter the destination IP address.
<b>Destination IP Address Mask</b>	Select and enter the destination IP address mask.
<b>DSCP</b>	Enter the DSCP value.
<b>Protocol</b>	<p>Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the protocol type value in each frame's header. Then the user must specify what protocol(s) to include according to the following guidelines:</p> <p>Select this option to specify that the rule will be applied to ICMP traffic.  <i>Type</i> – Enter the ICMP packet type value.  <i>Code</i> – Enter the ICMP code value.</p> <p>Select <i>IGMP</i> to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) field in each frame's header.  <i>Type</i> – Enter the IGMP packet type value.</p> <p>Select <i>TCP</i> to use the TCP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting TCP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.  <i>TCP Source Port</i> - Specify a TCP port number for the source port form (0-65535).  <i>TCP Source Port Mask</i> - Specify a TCP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff), which you wish to filter.  <i>TCP Destination Port</i> - Specify a TCP port number for the destination port form (0-65535).  <i>TCP Destination Port Mask</i> - Specify a TCP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff) which you wish to filter.  <i>Flag Bits</i> - The user may also identify which flag bits to filter. Flag bits are parts of a packet that determine what to do with the packet. The user may filter packets by filtering certain flag bits within the packets, by checking the boxes corresponding to the flag bits of the TCP field. The user may choose between urg (urgent), ack (acknowledgement), psh (push), rst (reset), syn (synchronize), fin (finish).</p> <p>Select <i>UDP</i> to use the UDP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting UDP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.  <i>UDP Source Port</i> - Specify a UDP port number for the source port form (0-65535).  <i>UDP Source Port Mask</i> - Specify a UDP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff).  <i>UDP Destination Port</i> - Specify a UDP port number for the destination port form (0-65535).  <i>UDP Destination Port Mask</i> - Specify a UDP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff).</p> <p>Select <i>Protocol ID</i> - Enter a value defining the protocol ID in the packet header to mask.  <i>Protocol ID</i> - Specify that the rule applies to the IP protocol ID traffic from (0-255).  <i>User</i> - Specify the Layer 4 part value.  <i>User Mask</i> - Specify the Layer 4 part mask</p>
<b>Action</b>	<p>Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below).</p> <p>Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.</p> <p>Select <i>Mirror</i> to specify that packets that match the access profile are mirrored to a port</p>

	defined in the config mirror port command. Port Mirroring must be enabled and a target port must be set.
<b>Priority (0-7)</b>	Tick the corresponding check box if you want to re-write the 802.1p default priority of a packet to the value entered in the Priority field, which meets the criteria specified previously in this command, before forwarding it on to the specified CoS queue. Otherwise, a packet will have its incoming 802.1p user priority re-written to its original value before being forwarded by the Switch. For more information on priority queues, CoS queues and mapping for 802.1p, see the QoS section of this manual.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Tick this check box to replace the Priority value in the adjacent field.
<b>Replace DSCP (0-63)</b>	Select this option to instruct the Switch to replace the DSCP value (in a packet that meets the selected criteria) with the value entered in the adjacent field. When an ACL rule is added to change both the priority and DSCP of an IPv4 packet, only one of them can be modified due to a chip limitation. Currently the priority is changed when both the priority and DSCP are set to be modified.
<b>Replace ToS Precedence (0-7)</b>	Specify that the IP precedence of the outgoing packet is changed with the new value. If used without an action priority, the packet is sent to the default TC.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Counter</b>	Here the user can select the counter. By checking the counter, the administrator can see how many times that the rule was hit.
<b>Ports</b>	When a range of ports is to be configured, the Auto Assign check box <b>MUST</b> be ticked in the Access ID field of this window. If not, the user will be presented with an error message and the access rule will not be configured. Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Specify the VLAN name to apply to the access rule.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to apply to the access rule.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:



ACL Rule Details	
Profile ID	2
Access ID	1
Profile Type	IP
VLAN ID	1
Action	Permit
Ports	3

Show All Rules

Figure 7-12 Access Rule Detail Information (IPv4 ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the Access Rule List.

## Adding an IPv6 ACL Profile

The window shown below is the Add ACL Profile window for IPv6. To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more filed to the mask.

After clicking the **Add ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 7-13 Add ACL Profile window (IPv6 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-512)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 512.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet content. This will change the window according to the requirements for the type of profile. Select Ethernet ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header. Select IPv4 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header. Select IPv6 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header. Select Packet Content to instruct the Switch to examine the packet content in each frame's header.
<b>IPv6 Class</b>	Ticking this check box will instruct the Switch to examine the <i>class</i> field of the IPv6 header. This class field is a part of the packet header that is similar to the Type of Service (ToS) or Precedence bits field in IPv4.
<b>IPv6 Flow Label</b>	Ticking this check box will instruct the Switch to examine the <i>flow label</i> field of the IPv6 header. This flow label field is used by a source to label sequences of packets such as non-default quality of service or real time service packets.
<b>IPv6 TCP</b>	<i>Source Port Mask</i> – Specify that the rule applies to the range of TCP source ports. <i>Destination Port Mask</i> – Specify the range of the TCP destination port range.
<b>IPv6 UDP</b>	<i>Source Port Mask</i> – Specify the range of the TCP source port range. <i>Destination Port Mask</i> – Specify the range of the TCP destination port mask.

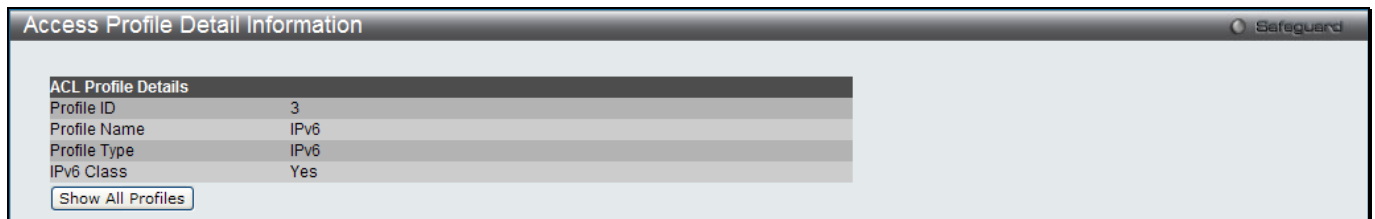
<b>ICMP</b>	Select <i>ICMP</i> to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) field in each frame's header. Select <i>Type</i> to further specify that the access profile will apply an ICMP type value, or specify <i>Code</i> to further specify that the access profile will apply an ICMP code value.
<b>IPv6 Source Mask</b>	The user may specify an IP address mask for the source IPv6 address by ticking the corresponding check box and entering the IP address mask.
<b>IPv6 Destination Mask</b>	The user may specify an IP address mask for the destination IPv6 address by ticking the corresponding check box and entering the IP address mask.

Click the **Select** button to select an ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

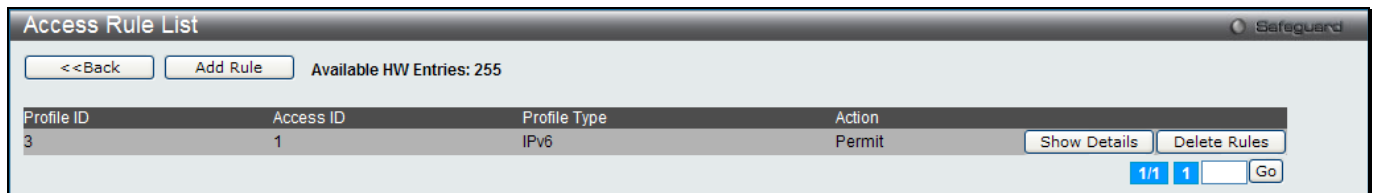
After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:



**Figure 7-14 Access Profile Detail Information window (IPv6 ACL)**

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **Access Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:



**Figure 7-15 Access Rule List window (IPv6 ACL)**

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:



Add Access Rule
Safeguard

**Profile Information**

Profile ID	3	Profile Name	IPv6
Profile Type	IPv6	IPv6 Class	Yes

---

**Rule Detail**  
(Keep the input field blank to specify that the corresponding option does *not* matter).

Access ID (1-256)   Auto Assign

Class  (e.g.: 0-255)

**Rule Action**

Action ▼  
Permit

Priority (0-7)

Replace Priority

Replace DSCP (0-63)

Replace ToS Precedence (0-7)

Time Range Name ▼

Counter ▼  
Disabled

Ports ▼  
 (e.g.: 1, 4-6, 9)

Figure 7-16 Add Access Rule (IPv6 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-256)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 256.  <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>Class</b>	Enter the IPv6 class mask value.
<b>Flow Label</b>	Configuring this field, in hex form, will instruct the Switch to examine the flow label field of the IPv6 header. This flow label field is used by a source to label sequences of packets such as non-default quality of service or real time service packets.
<b>Action</b>	Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below). Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered. Select <i>Mirror</i> to specify that packets that match the access profile are mirrored to a port defined in the config mirror port command. Port Mirroring must be enabled and a target port must be set.
<b>Priority (0-7)</b>	Tick the corresponding check box to re-write the 802.1p default priority of a packet to the value entered in the Priority field, which meets the criteria specified previously in this command, before forwarding it on to the specified CoS queue. Otherwise, a packet will have its incoming 802.1p user priority re-written to its original value before being forwarded by the Switch.  For more information on priority queues, CoS queues and mapping for 802.1p, see the QoS section of this manual.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Tick this check box to replace the Priority value in the adjacent field.
<b>Replace DSCP (0-63)</b>	Select this option to instruct the Switch to replace the DSCP value (in a packet that meets the selected criteria) with the value entered in the adjacent field. When an ACL rule is added to change both the priority and DSCP of an IPv6 packet, only one of them can be modified due to a chip limitation. Currently the priority is changed when

	both the priority and DSCP are set to be modified.
<b>Replace ToS Precedence (0-7)</b>	Specify that the IP precedence of the outgoing packet is changed with the new value. If used without an action priority, the packet is sent to the default TC.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Counter</b>	Here the user can select the counter. By checking the counter, the administrator can see how many times that the rule was hit.
<b>Ports</b>	When a range of ports is to be configured, the Auto Assign check box <b>MUST</b> be ticked in the Access ID field of this window. If not, the user will be presented with an error message and the access rule will not be configured. Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Specify the VLAN name to apply to the access rule.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to apply to the access rule.
<b>IPv6 Source Address</b>	Enter the source IPv6 address.
<b>IPv6 Source Address Mask</b>	Select and enter the source IPv6 address mask.
<b>IPv6 Destination Address</b>	Enter the destination IPv6 address.
<b>IPv6 Destination Address Mask</b>	Select and enter the destination IPv6 address mask.
<b>Protocol</b>	<p>Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the protocol type value in each frame's header. Then the user must specify what protocol(s) to include according to the following guidelines:</p> <p>Select <b>ICMP</b> to specify that the rule will be applied to ICMP traffic.  <i>Type</i> – Enter the ICMP packet type value.  <i>Code</i> – Enter the ICMP code value.</p> <p>Select <b>TCP</b> to use the TCP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting TCP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.  <i>TCP Source Port</i> - Specify a TCP port number for the source port form (0-65535).  <i>TCP Source Port Mask</i> - Specify a TCP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff), which you wish to filter.  <i>TCP Destination Port</i> - Specify a TCP port number for the destination port form (0-65535).  <i>TCP Destination Port Mask</i> - Specify a TCP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff) which you wish to filter.</p> <p>Select <b>UDP</b> to use the UDP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting UDP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.  <i>UDP Source Port</i> - Specify a UDP port number for the source port form (0-65535).  <i>UDP Source Port Mask</i> - Specify a UDP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff), which you wish to filter.  <i>UDP Destination Port</i> - Specify a UDP port number for the destination port form (0-65535).  <i>UDP Destination Port Mask</i> - Specify a UDP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff) which you wish to filter.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:

ACL Rule Details	
Profile ID	3
Access ID	1
Profile Type	IPv6
Action	Permit
Ports	4
IPv6 Class	100

[Show All Rules](#)

Figure 7-17 Access Rule Detail Information (IPv6 ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the Access Rule List.

## Adding a Packet Content ACL Profile

The window shown below is the Add ACL Profile window for Packet Content: To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more fields to the mask.

After clicking the **Add ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

Profile ID (1-512):  Profile Name:

Select ACL Type:

Ethernet ACL  IPv4 ACL  Packet Content ACL [Select](#)

You can select the field in the packet to create filtering mask

**Packet Content**

Chunk 1(0-31)  mask

Chunk 2(0-31)  mask

Chunk 3(0-31)  mask


Chunk 4(0-31)  mask

[<<Back](#) [Create](#)

Figure 7-18 Add ACL Profile (Packet Content ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-512)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 512.
<b>Select ACL</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet

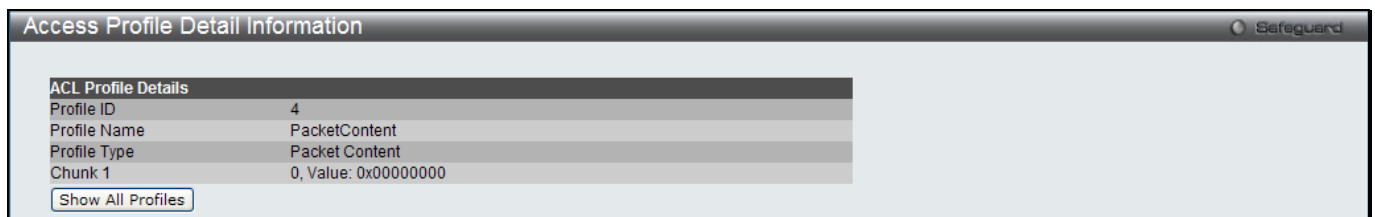
<p><b>Type</b></p>	<p>content. This will change the window according to the requirements for the type of profile.                  Select Ethernet ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header.                  Select IPv4 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header.                  Select IPv6 ACL to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header.                  Select Packet Content to instruct the Switch to examine the packet content in each frame's header.</p>														
<p><b>Packet Content</b></p>	<p>Allows users to examine up to 4 specified offset_chunks within a packet at one time and specifies the frame content offset and mask. There are 4 chunk offsets and masks that can be configured. A chunk mask presents 4 bytes. 4 offset_chunks can be selected from a possible 32 predefined offset_chunks as described below:</p> <p>offset_chunk_1,                  offset_chunk_2,                  offset_chunk_3,                  offset_chunk_4.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>chunk0</th> <th>chunk1</th> <th>chunk2</th> <th>.....</th> <th>chunk29</th> <th>chunk30</th> <th>chunk31</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>B126, B127, B0, B1</td> <td>B2, B3, B4, B5</td> <td>B6, B7, B8, B9</td> <td>.....</td> <td>B114, B115, B116, B117</td> <td>B118, B119, B120, B121</td> <td>B122, B123, B124, B125</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Example:                  offset_chunk_1 0 0xffffffff will match packet byte offset 126,127,0,1                  offset_chunk_1 0 0x0000ffff will match packet byte offset,0,1</p> <p> <b>NOTE:</b> Only one packet_content_mask profile can be created.</p>	chunk0	chunk1	chunk2	.....	chunk29	chunk30	chunk31	B126, B127, B0, B1	B2, B3, B4, B5	B6, B7, B8, B9	.....	B114, B115, B116, B117	B118, B119, B120, B121	B122, B123, B124, B125
chunk0	chunk1	chunk2	.....	chunk29	chunk30	chunk31									
B126, B127, B0, B1	B2, B3, B4, B5	B6, B7, B8, B9	.....	B114, B115, B116, B117	B118, B119, B120, B121	B122, B123, B124, B125									

Click the **Select** button to select an ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:



**Figure 7-19 Access Profile Detail Information (Packet Content ACL)**

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **Access Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:

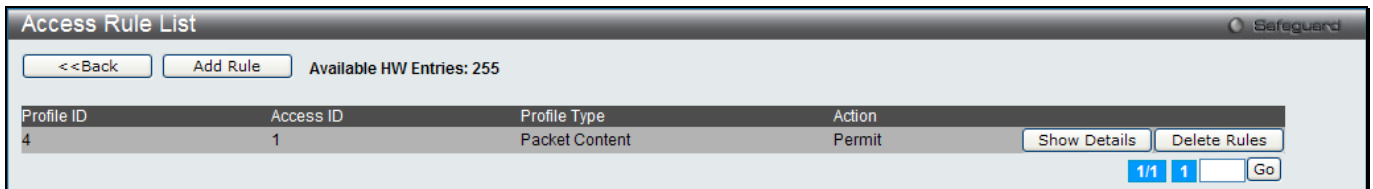


Figure 7-20 Access Rule List (Packet Content ACL)

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:

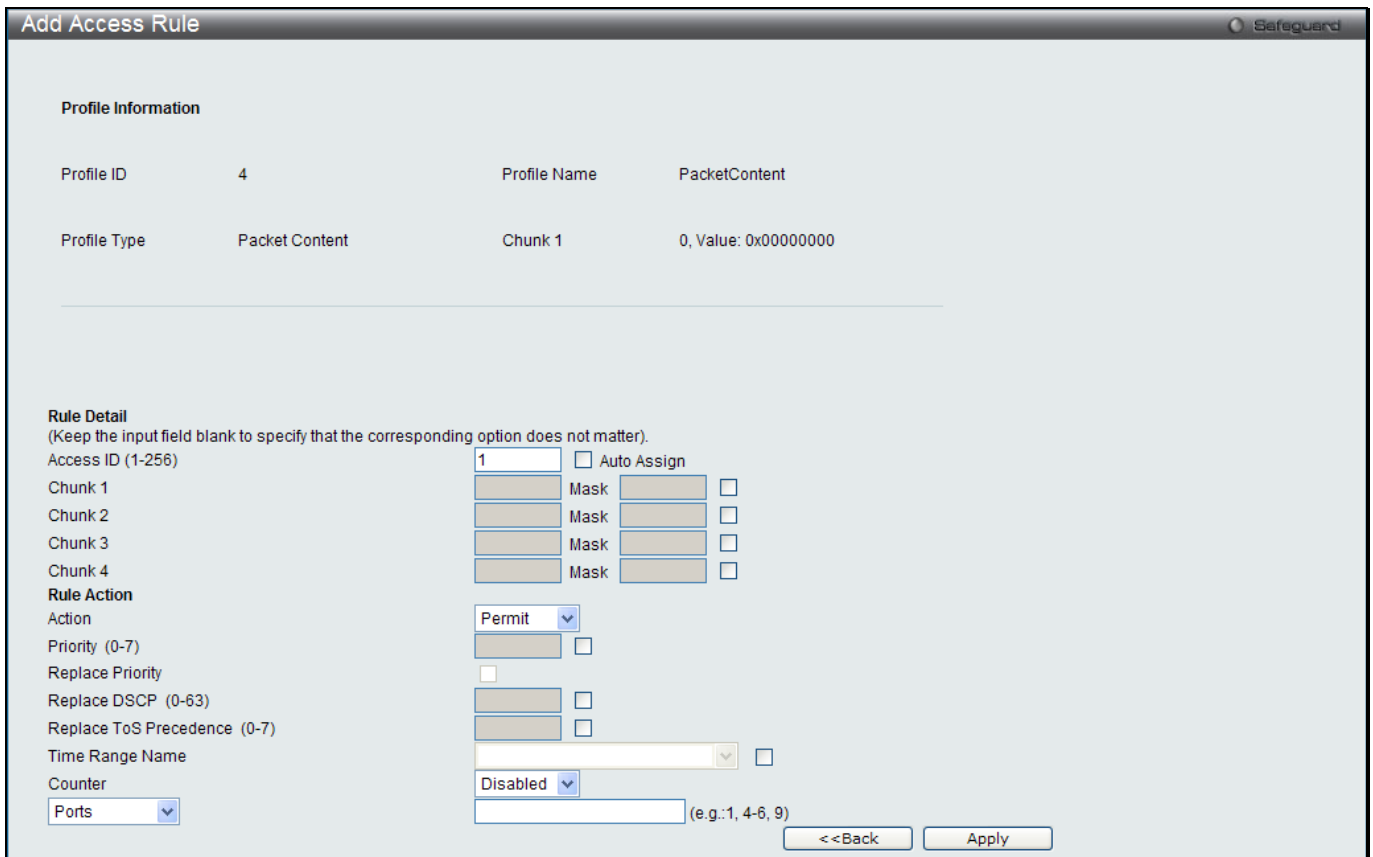


Figure 7-21 Add Access Rule (Packet Content ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-256)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 256. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>Offset1-4</b>	Enter the data to match for each UDF data field defined in the profile here. <i>Mask</i> – Enter the offset mask value used here.
<b>Action</b>	Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below). Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.

	Select <i>Mirror</i> to specify that packets that match the access profile are mirrored to a port defined in the config mirror port command. Port Mirroring must be enabled and a target port must be set.
<b>Priority (0-7)</b>	Tick the corresponding check box if you want to re-write the 802.1p default priority of a packet to the value entered in the Priority field, which meets the criteria specified previously in this command, before forwarding it on to the specified CoS queue. Otherwise, a packet will have its incoming 802.1p user priority re-written to its original value before being forwarded by the Switch. For more information on priority queues, CoS queues and mapping for 802.1p, see the QoS section of this manual.
<b>Replace Priority</b>	Tick this check box to replace the Priority value in the adjacent field.
<b>Replace DSCP (0-63)</b>	Select this option to instruct the Switch to replace the DSCP value (in a packet that meets the selected criteria) with the value entered in the adjacent field. When an ACL rule is added to change both the priority and DSCP of an IPv4 packet, only one of them can be modified due to a chip limitation. Currently the priority is changed when both the priority and DSCP are set to be modified.
<b>Replace ToS Precedence (0-7)</b>	Specify that the IP precedence of the outgoing packet is changed with the new value. If used without an action priority, the packet is sent to the default TC.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Counter</b>	Here the user can select the counter. By checking the counter, the administrator can see how many times that the rule was hit.
<b>Ports</b>	When a range of ports is to be configured, the Auto Assign check box MUST be ticked in the Access ID field of this window. If not, the user will be presented with an error message and the access rule will not be configured. Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Specify the VLAN name to apply to the access rule.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Specify the VLAN ID to apply to the access rule.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:

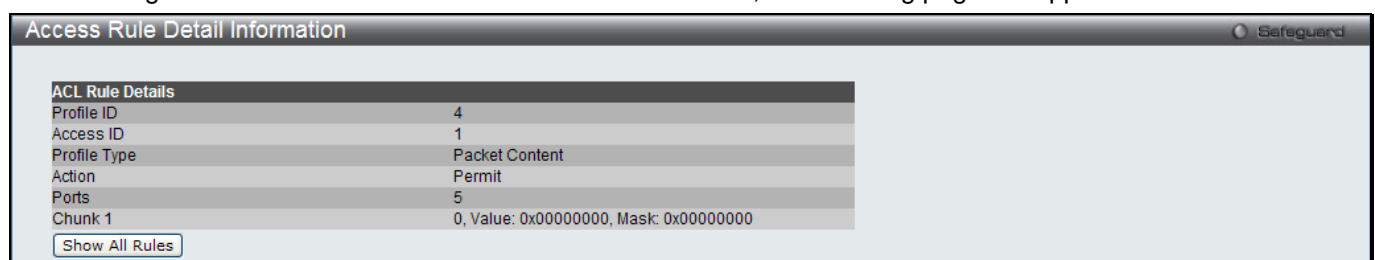


Figure 7-22 Access Rule Detail Information (Packet Content ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the Access Rule List.

## CPU Access Profile List

Due to a chipset limitation and needed extra switch security, the Switch incorporates CPU Interface filtering. This added feature increases the running security of the Switch by enabling the user to create a list of access rules for packets destined for the Switch's CPU interface. Employed similarly to the Access Profile feature previously mentioned, CPU interface filtering examines Ethernet, IPv4, IPv6 and Packet Content Mask packet headers destined for the CPU and will either forward them or filter them, based on the user's implementation. As an added feature for the CPU Filtering, the Switch allows the CPU filtering mechanism to be enabled or disabled globally, permitting the user to create various lists of rules without immediately enabling them.



**NOTE:** CPU Interface Filtering is used to control traffic access to the switch directly such as protocols transition or management access. A CPU interface filtering rule won't impact normal L2/3 traffic forwarding. However, an improper CPU interface filtering rule may cause the network to become unstable.

To view CPU Access Profile List window, click **ACL > CPU Access Profile List** as shown below:

Creating an access profile for the CPU is divided into two basic parts. The first is to specify which part or parts of a frame the Switch will examine, such as the MAC source address or the IP destination address. The second part is entering the criteria the Switch will use to determine what to do with the frame. The entire process is described below.

Users may globally enable or disable the CPU Interface Filtering State mechanism by using the radio buttons to change the running state. Choose Enabled to enable CPU packets to be scrutinized by the Switch and Disabled to disallow this scrutiny.

Profile ID	Profile Type			
1	Ethernet	Show Details	Add/View Rules	Delete
2	IP	Show Details	Add/View Rules	Delete
3	IPv6	Show Details	Add/View Rules	Delete
4	Packet Content	Show Details	Add/View Rules	Delete

Figure 7-23 CPU Access Profile List window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>CPU Interface Filtering State</b>	Click to enable or disable the CPU interface filtering state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add CPU ACL Profile** button to add an entry to the **CPU ACL Profile List**.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all access profiles from this table.

Click the **Show Details** button to display the information of the specific profile ID entry.

Click the **Add/View Rules** button to view or add CPU ACL rules within the specified profile ID.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

There are four **Add CPU ACL Profile** windows;

- 1 one for Ethernet (or MAC address-based) profile configuration,
- 2 one for IPv6 address-based profile configuration,
- 3 one for IPv4 address-based profile configuration, and
- 4 one for packet content profile configuration.

## Adding a CPU Ethernet ACL Profile

The window shown below is the Add CPU ACL Profile window for Ethernet. To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more filed to the mask.

After clicking the **Add CPU ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 7-24 Add CPU ACL Profile (Ethernet ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-5)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 5.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet content mask. This will change the window according to the requirements for the type of profile. Select Ethernet to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header. Select IPv4 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header. Select IPv6 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header. Select Packet Content Mask to specify a mask to hide the content of the packet header.
<b>Source MAC Mask</b>	Enter a MAC address mask for the source MAC address.
<b>Destination MAC Mask</b>	Enter a MAC address mask for the destination MAC address.
<b>802.1Q VLAN</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the VLAN identifier of each packet header and use this as the full or partial criterion for forwarding.
<b>802.1p</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to specify that the access profile will apply only to packets with this 802.1p priority value.
<b>Ethernet Type</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the Ethernet type value in each frame's header.

Click the **Select** button to select a CPU ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:



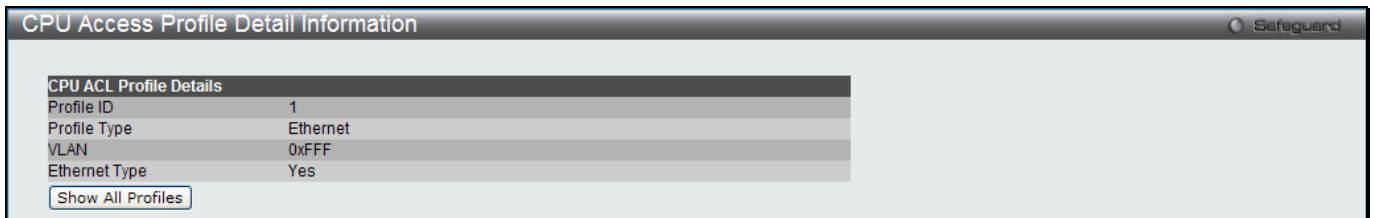


Figure 7-25 CPU Access Profile Detail Information (Ethernet ACL)

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **CPU ACL Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:



Figure 7-26 CPU Access Rule List (Ethernet ACL)

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new CPU ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:

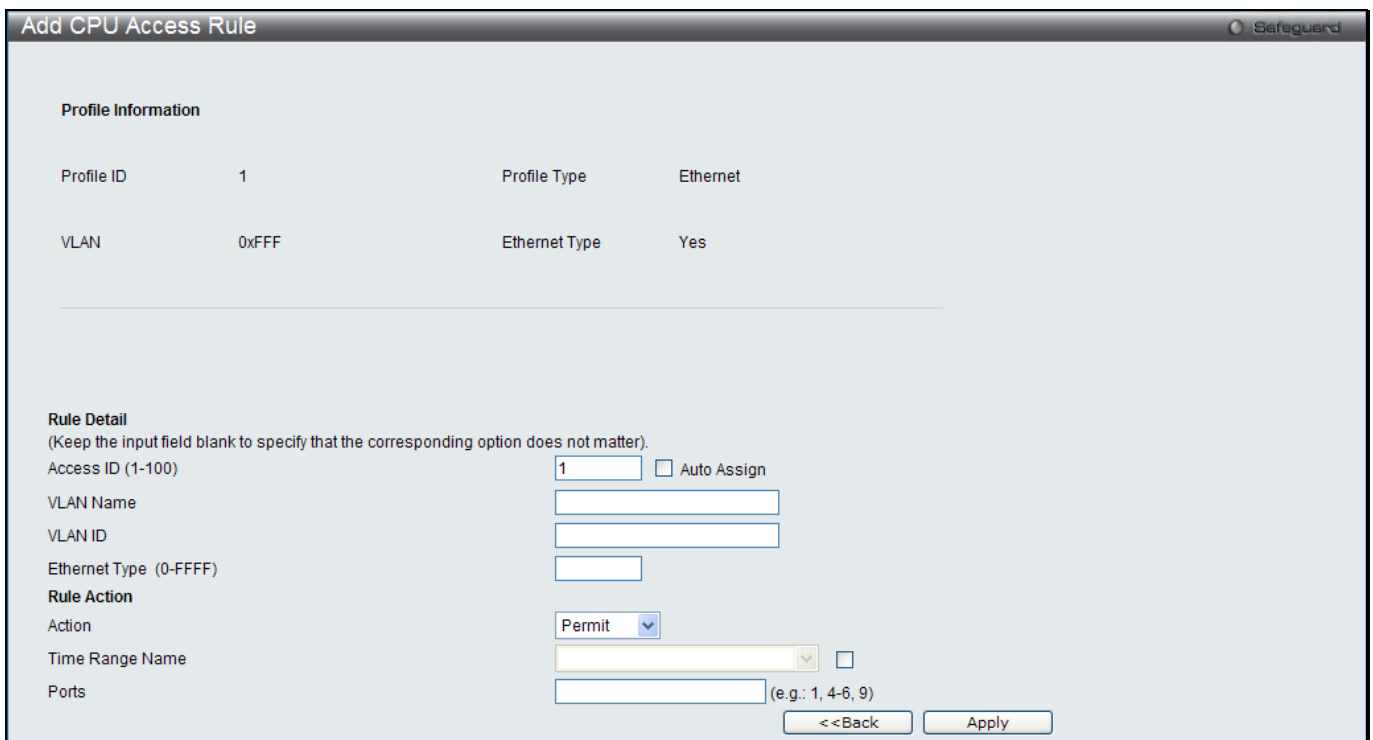


Figure 7-27 Add CPU Access Rule (Ethernet ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-100)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to

	100. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter the VLAN ID.
<b>Source MAC Address</b>	Enter the source MAC address.
<b>Destination MAC Address</b>	Enter the destination MAC address.
<b>802.1p</b>	Enter the 802.1p priority tag value. This value must be between 0 and 7.
<b>Ethernet Type (0-FFFF)</b>	Enter the Ethernet type value.
<b>Action</b>	Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below). Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Ports</b>	Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **CPU Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:



CPU ACL Rule Details	
Profile ID	1
Access ID	1
Profile Type	Ethernet
VLAN ID	1
Action	Permit
Ports	2
Ethernet Type	0xFFFF

Show All Rules

Figure 7-28 CPU Access Rule Detail Information (Ethernet ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the CPU Access Rule List.

## Adding a CPU IPv4 ACL Profile

The window shown below is the **Add CPU ACL Profile** window for IP (IPv4). To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more files to the mask.

After clicking the **Add CPU ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 7-29 Add CPU ACL Profile (IPv4 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-5)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 5.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet content mask. This will change the menu according to the requirements for the type of profile. Select Ethernet to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header. Select IPv4 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header. Select IPv6 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header. Select Packet Content Mask to specify a mask to hide the content of the packet header.
<b>802.1Q VLAN</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the VLAN part of each packet header and use this as the, or part of the criterion for forwarding.
<b>IPv4 DSCP</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the DiffServ Code part of each packet header and use this as the, or part of the criterion for forwarding.
<b>Source IP Mask</b>	Enter an IP address mask for the source IP address, e.g. 255.255.255.255.
<b>Destination IP Mask</b>	Enter an IP address mask for the destination IP address, e.g. 255.255.255.255.
<b>Protocol</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the protocol type value in each frame's header. You must then specify what protocol(s) to include according to the following guidelines:  Select <i>ICMP</i> to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) field in each frame's header. Select <i>Type</i> to further specify that the access profile will apply an ICMP type value, or

specify *Code* to further specify that the access profile will apply an ICMP code value.

Select *IGMP* to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) field in each frame's header.

Select *Type* to further specify that the access profile will apply an IGMP type value.

Select *TCP* to use the TCP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting TCP requires a source port mask and/or a destination port mask is to be specified.

*Source Port Mask* - Specify a TCP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff), which you wish to filter.

*Destination Port Mask* - Specify a TCP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff) which you wish to filter.

*TCP Flag Bits* - The user may also identify which flag bits to filter. Flag bits are parts of a packet that determine what to do with the packet. The user may filter packets by filtering certain flag bits within the packets, by checking the boxes corresponding to the flag bits of the TCP field. The user may choose between urg (urgent), ack (acknowledgement), psh (push), rst (reset), syn (synchronize), fin (finish).

Select *UDP* to use the UDP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting UDP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.

*Source Port Mask* - Specify a UDP port mask for the source port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff).

*Destination Port Mask* - Specify a UDP port mask for the destination port in hex form (hex 0x0-0xffff).

Select *Protocol ID* - Enter a value defining the protocol ID in the packet header to mask. Specify the protocol ID mask in hex form (hex 0x0-0xff).

*Protocol ID Mask* – Specify that the rule applies to the IP Protocol ID Traffic.

*User Define* – Specify the L4 part mask.

Click the **Select** button to select a CPU ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:

CPU ACL Profile Details	
Profile ID	2
Profile Type	IP
DSCP	Yes
ICMP	Yes
ICMP Type	Yes
ICMP Code	Yes

Show All Profiles

Figure 7-30 CPU Access Profile Detail Information (IPv4 ACL)

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **CPU ACL Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:



Figure 7-31 CPU Access Rule List (IPv4 ACL)

- Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new CPU ACL rule in this profile.
- Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.
- Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.
- Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.
- Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:

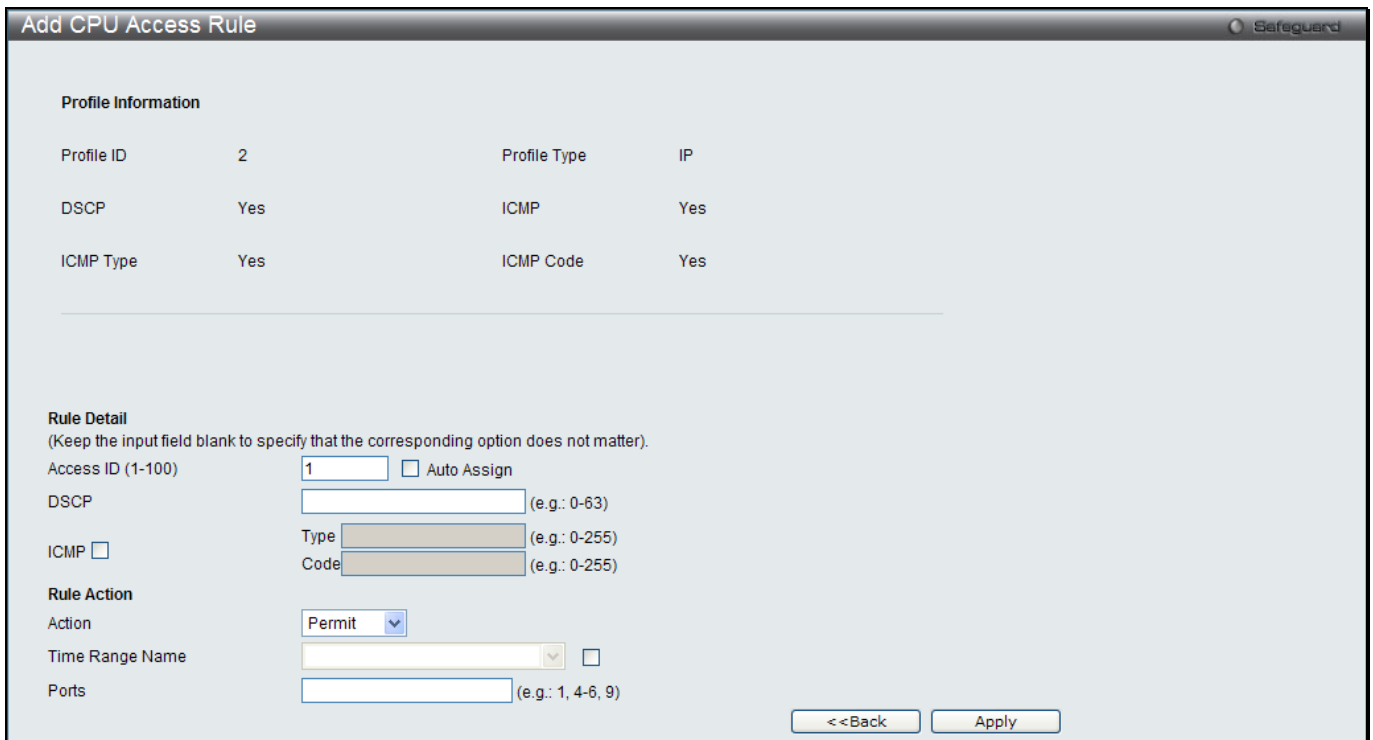


Figure 7-32 Add CPU Access Rule (IPv4 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-100)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 100. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Enter the VLAN ID.
<b>Source IP Address</b>	Enter the source IP address.
<b>Destination IP Address</b>	Enter the destination IP address.
<b>DSCP</b>	Enter the DSCP value.
<b>Protocol</b>	Selecting this option instructs the Switch to examine the protocol type value in each frame's header. Then the user must specify what protocol(s) to include according to

	<p>the following guidelines:</p> <p>Select this option to specify that the rule will be applied to ICMP traffic.  <i>Type</i> – Enter the ICMP packet type value.  <i>Code</i> – Enter the ICMP code value.</p> <p>Select <i>IGMP</i> to instruct the Switch to examine the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) field in each frame's header.  <i>Type</i> – Enter the IGMP packet type value.</p> <p>Select <i>TCP</i> to use the TCP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting TCP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.  <i>TCP Source Port</i> - Specify a TCP port number for the source port form (0-65535).  <i>TCP Destination Port</i> - Specify a TCP port number for the destination port form (0-65535).  <i>Flag Bits</i> - The user may also identify which flag bits to filter. Flag bits are parts of a packet that determine what to do with the packet. The user may filter packets by filtering certain flag bits within the packets, by checking the boxes corresponding to the flag bits of the TCP field. The user may choose between urg (urgent), ack (acknowledgement), psh (push), rst (reset), syn (synchronize), fin (finish).</p> <p>Select <i>UDP</i> to use the UDP port number contained in an incoming packet as the forwarding criterion. Selecting UDP requires that you specify a source port mask and/or a destination port mask.  <i>UDP Source port</i> - Specify a UDP port number for the source port form (0-65535).  <i>UDP Destination port</i> - Specify a UDP port number for the destination port form (0-65535).</p> <p>Select <i>Protocol ID</i> - Enter a value defining the protocol ID in the packet header to mask.  <i>Protocol ID</i> - Specify that the rule applies to the IP protocol ID traffic from (0-255).  <i>User</i> - Specify the Layer 4 part value.</p>
<b>Action</b>	<p>Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below).</p> <p>Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.</p>
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Allows the entry of a name for a previously configured VLAN.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Ports</b>	Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **CPU Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:

CPU ACL Rule Details	
Profile ID	2
Access ID	1
Profile Type	IP
Action	Permit
Ports	3
DSCP	10
ICMP	Yes
ICMP Type	5
ICMP Code	2

Show All Rules

Figure 7-33 CPU Access Rule Detail Information (IPv4 ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the CPU Access Rule List.

## Adding a CPU IPv6 ACL Profile

The window shown below is the **Add CPU ACL Profile** window for IPv6. To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more fields to the mask.

After clicking the **Add CPU ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

Add CPU ACL Profile

Profile ID (1-5)

Select ACL Type

Ethernet ACL  IPv4 ACL  IPv6 ACL  Packet Content ACL

You can select the field in the packet to create filtering mask

**IPv6 Class**

IPv6 Class

**IPv6 Flow Label**

IPv6 Flow Label

**IPv6 Address**

IPv6 Source Mask

IPv6 Destination Mask

Figure 7-34 Add CPU ACL Profile (IPv6 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-5)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 5.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet content mask. This will change the menu according to the requirements for the type of profile.

	<p>Select Ethernet to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header.</p> <p>Select IPv4 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header.</p> <p>Select IPv6 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header.</p> <p>Select Packet Content Mask to specify a mask to hide the content of the packet header.</p>
<b>IPv6 Class</b>	Checking this field will instruct the Switch to examine the <i>class</i> field of the IPv6 header. This class field is a part of the packet header that is similar to the Type of Service (ToS) or Precedence bits field in IPv4.
<b>IPv6 Flow Label</b>	Checking this field will instruct the Switch to examine the <i>flow label</i> field of the IPv6 header. This flow label field is used by a source to label sequences of packets such as non-default quality of service or real time service packets.
<b>IPv6 Source Mask</b>	The user may specify an IP address mask for the source IPv6 address by checking the corresponding box and entering the IP address mask.
<b>IPv6 Destination Mask</b>	The user may specify an IP address mask for the destination IPv6 address by checking the corresponding box and entering the IP address mask.

Click the **Select** button to select a CPU ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:

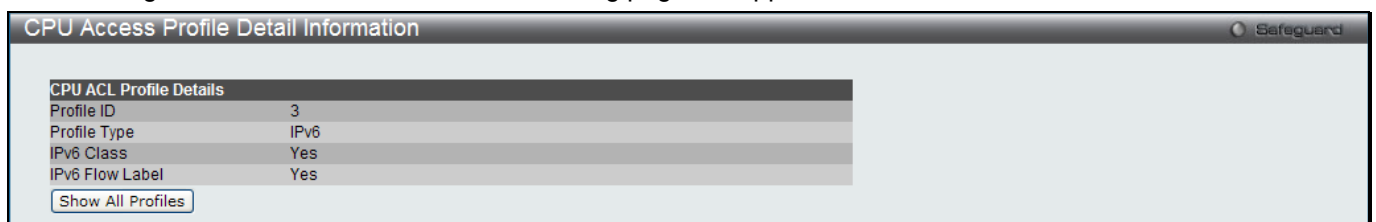


Figure 7-35 CPU Access Profile Detail Information (IPv6 ACL)

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **CPU ACL Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:

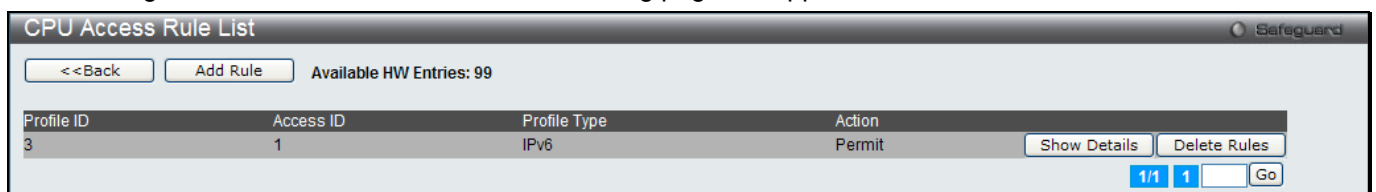


Figure 7-36 CPU Access Rule List (IPv6 ACL)

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new CPU ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:



Add CPU Access Rule
Safeguard

**Profile Information**

Profile ID	3	Profile Type	IPv6
IPv6 Class	Yes	IPv6 Flow Label	Yes

---

**Rule Detail**  
(Keep the input field blank to specify that the corresponding option does not matter).

Access ID (1-100)   Auto Assign

Class  (e.g.: 0-255)

Flow Label  (e.g.: 0-FFFFFF)

**Rule Action**

Action Permit ▼

Time Range Name   ▼

Ports  (e.g.: 1, 4-6, 9)

<<Back
Apply

Figure 7-37 Add CPU Access Rule (IPv6 ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-100)</b>	Enter a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 100. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>Class</b>	Enter the IPv6 class mask value.
<b>Flow Label</b>	Configuring this field, in hex form, will instruct the Switch to examine the flow label field of the IPv6 header. This flow label field is used by a source to label sequences of packets such as non-default quality of service or real time service packets.
<b>Action</b>	Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below). Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Ports</b>	Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.
<b>IPv6 Source Address</b>	Enter the source IPv6 address.
<b>IPv6 Destination Address</b>	Enter the destination IPv6 address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **CPU Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:

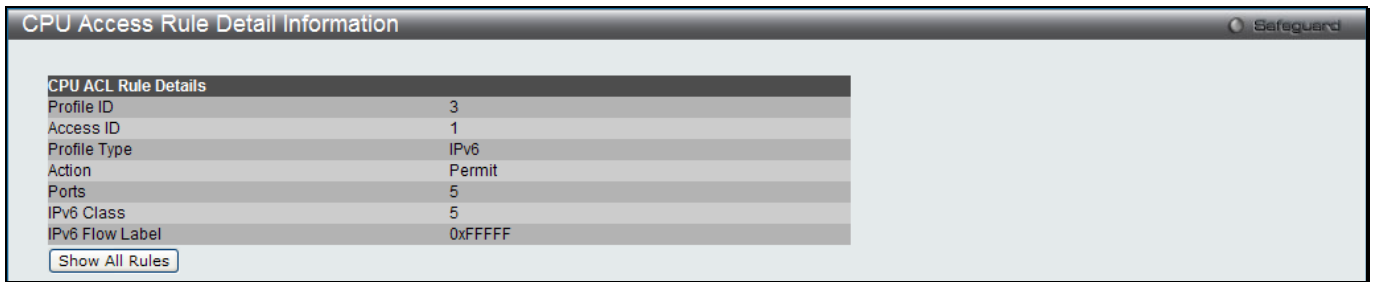


Figure 7-38 CPU Access Rule Detail Information (IPv6 ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the CPU Access Rule List.

## Adding a CPU Packet Content ACL Profile

The window shown below is the Add CPU ACL Profile window for Packet Content. To use specific filtering masks in this ACL profile, click the packet filtering mask field to highlight it red. This will add more filed to the mask.

After clicking the **Add CPU ACL Profile** button, the following page will appear:

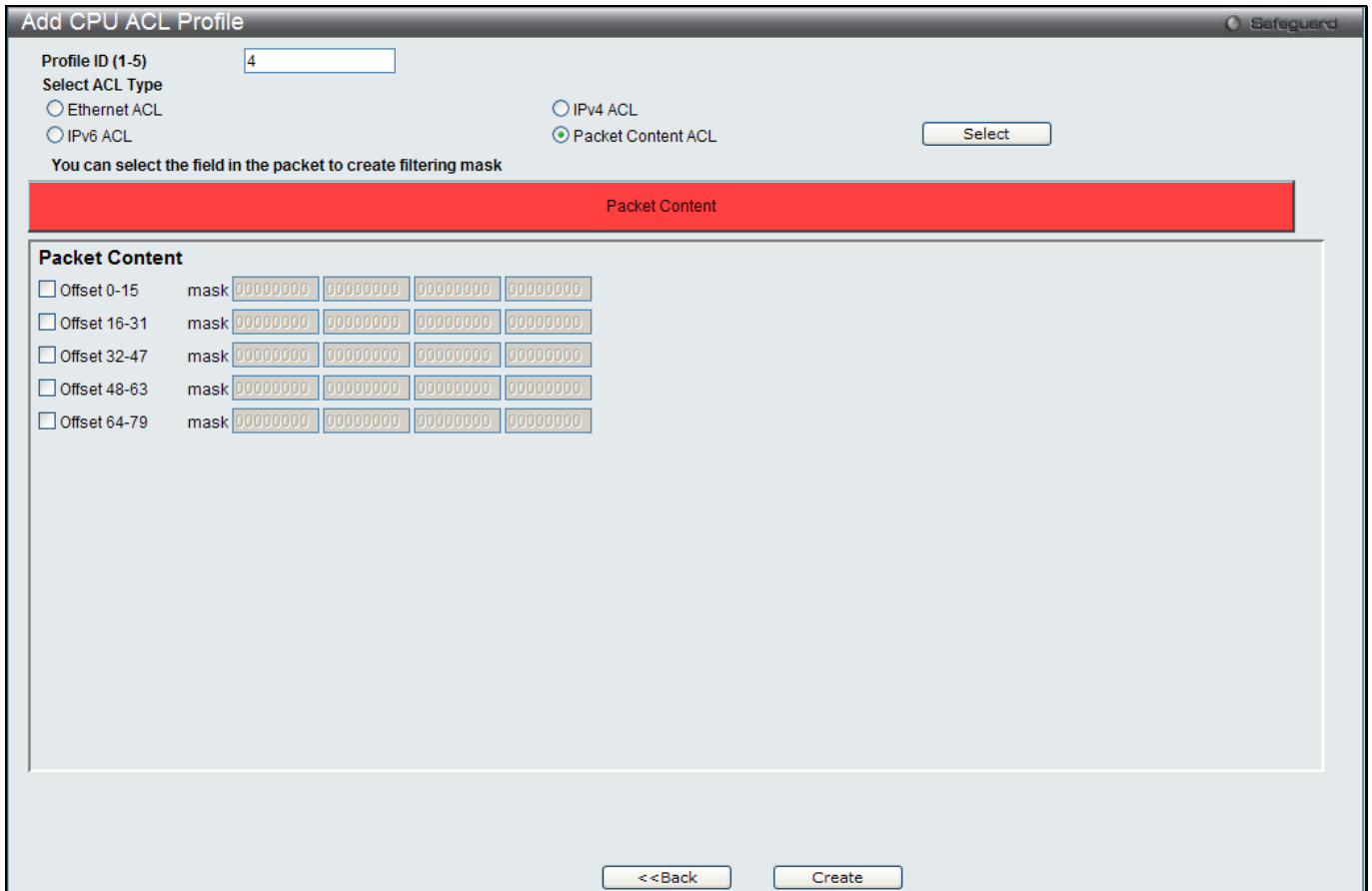


Figure 7-39 Add CPU ACL Profile (Packet Content ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-5)</b>	Here the user can enter a unique identifier number for this profile set. This value can be set from 1 to 5.
<b>Select ACL Type</b>	Select profile based on Ethernet (MAC Address), IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or packet content mask. This will change the menu according to the requirements for the type of profile. Select Ethernet to instruct the Switch to examine the layer 2 part of each packet header.

	Select IPv4 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv4 address in each frame's header. Select IPv6 to instruct the Switch to examine the IPv6 address in each frame's header. Select Packet Content Mask to specify a mask to hide the content of the packet header.
<b>Offset</b>	This field will instruct the Switch to mask the packet header beginning with the offset value specified: <i>0-15</i> - Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from the beginning of the packet to the 15th byte. <i>16-31</i> – Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 16 to byte 31. <i>32-47</i> – Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 32 to byte 47. <i>48-63</i> – Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 48 to byte 63. <i>64-79</i> – Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 64 to byte 79.

Click the **Select** button to select a CPU ACL type.

Click the **Create** button to create a profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button, the following page will appear:

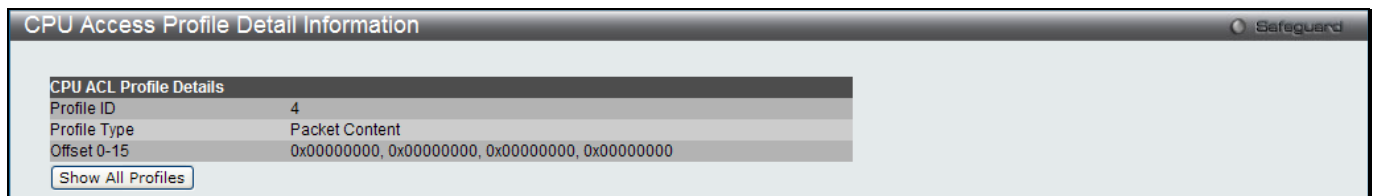


Figure 7-40 CPU Access Profile Detail Information (Packet Content ACL)

Click the **Show All Profiles** button to navigate back to the **CPU ACL Profile List** Page.

After clicking the **Add/View Rules** button, the following page will appear:

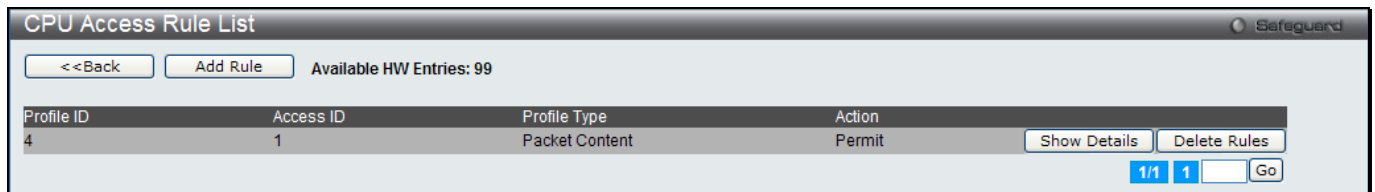


Figure 7-41 CPU Access Rule List (Packet Content ACL)

Click the **Add Rule** button to create a new CPU ACL rule in this profile.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Show Details** button to view more information about the specific rule created.

Click the **Delete Rules** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add Rule** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 7-42 Add CPU Access Rule (Packet Content ACL)

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Access ID (1-100)</b>	Type in a unique identifier number for this access. This value can be set from 1 to 100. <i>Auto Assign</i> – Select this check box will instruct the Switch to automatically assign an Access ID for the rule being created.
<b>Offset</b>	This field will instruct the Switch to mask the packet header beginning with the offset value specified: Offset 0-15 - Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from the beginning of the packet to the 15th byte. Offset 16-31 - Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 16 to byte 31. Offset 32-47 - Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 32 to byte 47. Offset 48-63 - Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 48 to byte 63. Offset 64-79 - Enter a value in hex form to mask the packet from byte 64 to byte 79.
<b>Action</b>	Select <i>Permit</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are forwarded by the Switch, according to any additional rule added (see below). Select <i>Deny</i> to specify that the packets that match the access profile are not forwarded by the Switch and will be filtered.
<b>Time Range Name</b>	Tick the check box and enter the name of the Time Range settings that has been previously configured in the <b>Time Range Settings</b> window. This will set specific times when this access rule will be implemented on the Switch.
<b>Ports</b>	Ticking the All Ports check box will denote all ports on the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Show Details** button in the **CPU Access Rule List**, the following page will appear:

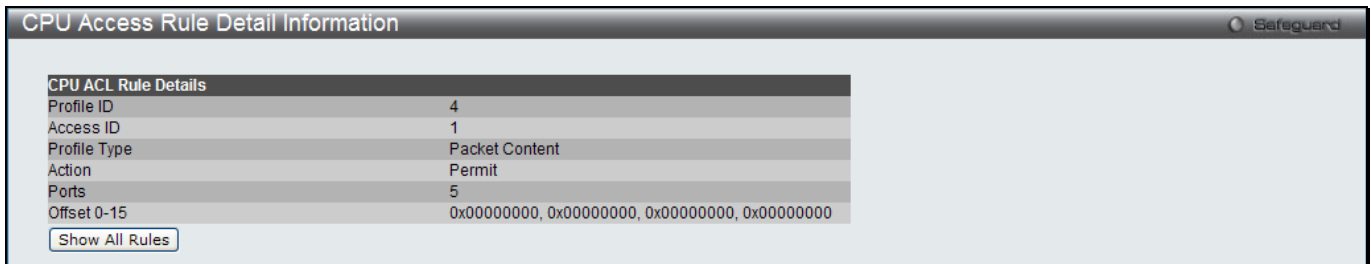


Figure 7-43 CPU Access Rule Detail Information (Packet Content ACL)

Click the **Show All Rules** button to navigate back to the CPU Access Rule List.

## ACL Finder

The ACL rule finder helps you to identify any rules that have been assigned to a specific port and edit existing rules quickly.

To view this window, click **ACL > ACL Finder** as shown below:

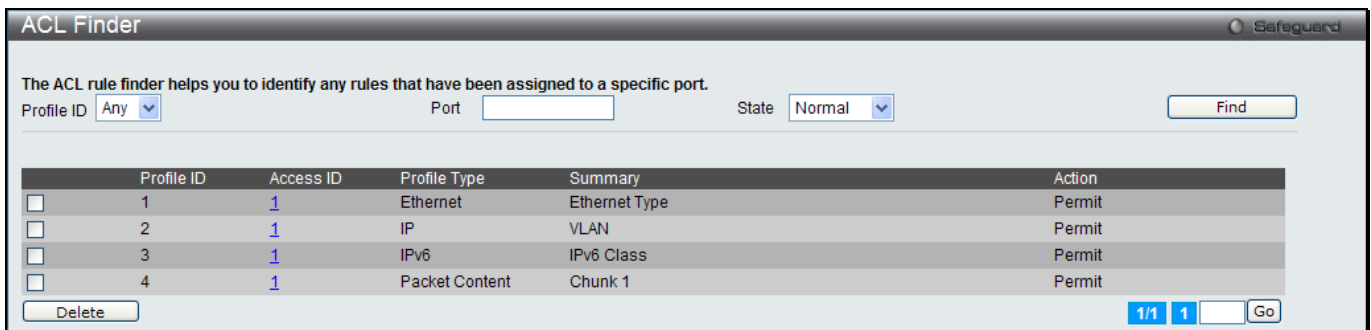


Figure 7-44 ACL Finder window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the Profile ID for the ACL rule finder to identify the rule.
<b>Port</b>	Enter the port number for the ACL rule finder to identify the rule.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the state. <i>Normal</i> - Allow the user to find normal ACL rules. <i>CPU</i> - Allow the user to find CPU ACL rules.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry selected.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## ACL Flow Meter

Before configuring the ACL Flow Meter, here is a list of acronyms and terms users will need to know.

**trTCM** – Two Rate Three Color Marker. This, along with the srTCM, are two methods available on the switch for metering and marking packet flow. The trTCM meters and IP flow and marks it as a color based on the flow's surpassing of two rates, the CIR and the PIR.

**CIR** – Committed Information Rate. Common to both the trTCM and the srTCM, the CIR is measured in bytes of IP packets. IP packet bytes are measured by taking the size of the IP header but not the link specific headers. For the trTCM, the packet flow is marked green if it doesn't exceed the CIR and yellow if it does. The configured rate of the CIR must not exceed that of the PIR. The CIR can also be configured for unexpected packet bursts using the CBS and PBS fields.

**CBS** – Committed Burst Size. Measured in bytes, the CBS is associated with the CIR and is used to identify packets that exceed the normal boundaries of packet size. The CBS should be configured to accept the biggest IP packet that is expected in the IP flow.

**PIR** – Peak Information Rate. This rate is measured in bytes of IP packets. IP packet bytes are measured by taking the size of the IP header but not the link specific headers. If the packet flow exceeds the PIR, that packet flow is marked red. The PIR must be configured to be equal or more than that of the CIR.

**PBS** – Peak Burst Size. Measured in bytes, the PBS is associated with the PIR and is used to identify packets that exceed the normal boundaries of packet size. The PBS should be configured to accept the biggest IP packet that is expected in the IP flow.

**srTCM** – Single Rate Three Color Marker. This, along with the trTCM, are two methods available on the switch for metering and marking packet flow. The srTCM marks its IP packet flow based on the configured CBS and EBS. A packet flow that does not reach the CBS is marked green, if it exceeds the CBS but not the EBS its marked yellow, and if it exceeds the EBS its marked red.

**CBS** – Committed Burst Size. Measured in bytes, the CBS is associated with the CIR and is used to identify packets that exceed the normal boundaries of packet size. The CBS should be configured to accept the biggest IP packet that is expected in the IP flow.

**EBS** – Excess Burst Size. Measured in bytes, the EBS is associated with the CIR and is used to identify packets that exceed the boundaries of the CBS packet size. The EBS is to be configured for an equal or larger rate than the CBS.

**DSCP** – Differentiated Services Code Point. The part of the packet header where the color will be added. Users may change the DSCP field of incoming packets.

The ACL Flow Meter function will allow users to color code IP packet flows based on the rate of incoming packets. Users have two types of Flow metering to choose from, trTCM and srTCM, as explained previously. When a packet flow is placed in a color code, the user can choose what to do with packets that have exceeded that color-coded rate.

**Green** – When an IP flow is in the green mode, its configurable parameters can be set in the Conform field, where the packets can have their DSCP field changed. This is an acceptable flow rate for the ACL Flow Meter function.

**Yellow** – When an IP flow is in the yellow mode, its configurable parameters can be set in the Exceed field. Users may choose to either Permit or Drop exceeded packets. Users may also choose to change the DSCP field of the packets.

**Red** – When an IP flow is in the red mode, its configurable parameters can be set in the Violate field. Users may choose to either Permit or Drop exceeded packets. Users may also choose to change the DSCP field of the packets.

Users may also choose to count exceeded packets by clicking the Counter check box. If the counter is enabled, the counter setting in the access profile will be disabled. Users may only enable two counters for one flow meter at any given time.

To view this window, click **ACL > ACL Flow Meter**, as shown below:

Figure 7-45 ACL Flow Meter

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select it and enter the Profile ID for the flow meter.
<b>Profile Name</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select it and enter the Profile Name for the flow meter.

<b>Access ID (1-256)</b>	Here the user can enter the Access ID for the flow meter.
--------------------------	---

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Modify** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **View** button to display the information of the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

After clicking the **Add** or **Modify** button, the following page will appear:

**Figure 7-46 ACL Flow meter Configuration window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Profile ID (1-512)</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Profile ID for the flow meter.
<b>Profile Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Profile Name for the flow meter.
<b>Access ID (1-256)</b>	Enter the Access ID for the flow meter.
<b>Mode</b>	<p><b>Rate</b> – Specify the rate for single rate two color mode.</p> <p><i>Rate</i> – Specify the committed bandwidth in Kbps for the flow.</p> <p><i>Burst Size</i> – Specify the burst size for the single rate two color mode. The unit is in kilobyte.</p> <p><i>Rate Exceeded</i> – Specify the action for packets that exceed the committed rate in single rate two color mode. The action can be specified as one of the following:</p> <p><i>Drop Packet</i> – Drop the packet immediately.</p> <p><i>Remark DSCP</i> – Mark the packet with a specified DSCP. The packet is set to drop for packets with a high precedence.</p> <p><b>trTCM</b> – Specify the “two-rate three-color mode.”</p> <p><i>CIR</i> – Specify the Committed information Rate. The unit is Kbps. CIR should always be equal or less than PIR.</p>

	<p><i>PIR</i> – Specify the Peak information Rate. The unit is Kbps. PIR should always be equal to or greater than CIR.</p> <p><i>CBS</i> – Specify the Committed Burst Size. The unit is in kilobyte.</p> <p><i>PBS</i> – Specify the Peak Burst Size. The unit is in kilobyte.</p> <p><b>srTCM</b> – Specify the “single-rate three-color mode”.</p> <p><i>CIR</i> – Specify the Committed Information Rate. The unit is in kilobyte.</p> <p><i>CBS</i> – Specify the Committed Burst Size. The unit is in kilobyte.</p> <p><i>EBS</i> – Specify the Excess Burst Size. The unit is in kilobyte.</p>
<b>Action</b>	<p><b>Conform</b> – This field denotes the green packet flow. Green packet flows may have their <i>DSCP</i> field rewritten to a value stated in this field. Users may also choose to count green packets by using counter parameter.</p> <p><i>Replace DSCP</i> – Packets that are in the green flow may have their <i>DSCP</i> field rewritten using this parameter and entering the <i>DSCP</i> value to replace.</p> <p><i>Counter</i> – Use this parameter to enable or disable the packet counter for the specified <i>ACL</i> entry in the green flow.</p> <p><b>Exceed</b> – This field denotes the yellow packet flow. Yellow packet flows may have excess packets permitted through or dropped. Users may replace the <i>DSCP</i> field of these packets by checking its radio button and entering a new <i>DSCP</i> value in the allotted field.</p> <p><i>Counter</i> – Use this parameter to enable or disable the packet counter for the specified <i>ACL</i> entry in the yellow flow.</p> <p><b>Violate</b> – This field denotes the red packet flow. Red packet flows may have excess packets permitted through or dropped. Users may replace the <i>DSCP</i> field of these packets by checking its radio button and entering a new <i>DSCP</i> value in the allotted field.</p> <p><i>Counter</i> – Use this parameter to enable or disable the packet counter for the specified <i>ACL</i> entry in the red flow.</p>

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

After clicking the **View** button, the following page will appear:

ACL Flow Meter Display				Safeguard
Profile ID	1			
Access ID	1			
Mode	Rate	Rate (Kbps)	123456	
		Burst Size (Kbyte)	123456	
		Rate Exceeded	Remark DSCP	10
				<input type="button" value=" &lt;&lt;Back"/>

**Figure 7-47 ACL Flow meter Display window**

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.



# Chapter 8 Security

## 802.1X

### RADIUS

### IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB)

### MAC-based Access Control (MAC)

### Web-based Access Control (WAC)

### Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC)

### Compound Authentication

### Port Security

### ARP Spoofing Prevention Settings

### BPDU Attack Protection

### Loopback Detection Settings

### Traffic Segmentation Settings

### NetBIOS Filtering Settings

### DHCP Server Screening

### Access Authentication Control

### SSL Settings

### SSH

### Trusted Host Settings

### Safeguard Engine Settings

### DoS Attack Prevention Settings

### IGMP Access Control Settings

### ND Spoofing Prevention Settings

## 802.1X

### 802.1X (Port-Based and Host-Based Access Control)

The IEEE 802.1X standard is a security measure for authorizing and authenticating users to gain access to various wired or wireless devices on a specified Local Area Network by using a Client and Server based access control model. This is accomplished by using a RADIUS server to authenticate users trying to access a network by relaying Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL) packets between the Client and the Server. The following figure represents a basic EAPOL packet:

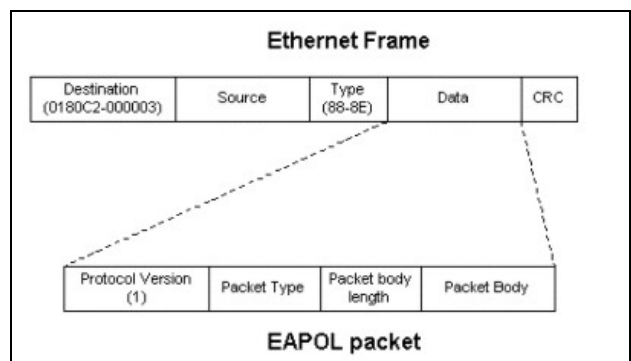


Figure 8-1 The EAPOL Packet

Utilizing this method, unauthorized devices are restricted from connecting to a LAN through a port to which the user is connected. EAPOL packets are the only traffic that can be transmitted through the specific port until authorization is granted. The 802.1X Access Control method has three roles, each of which are vital to creating and up keeping a stable and working Access Control security method.

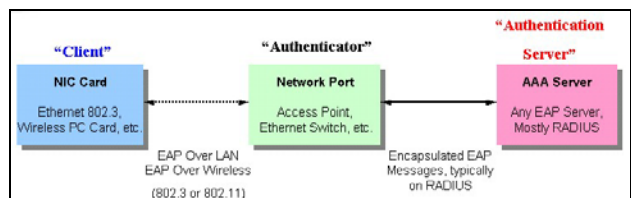


Figure 8-2 The three roles of 802.1X

The following section will explain the three roles of Client, Authenticator and Authentication Server in greater detail.

### Authentication Server

The Authentication Server is a remote device that is connected to the same network as the Client and Authenticator, must be running a RADIUS Server program and must be configured properly on the Authenticator (Switch). Clients connected to a port on the Switch must be authenticated by the Authentication Server (RADIUS) before attaining any services offered by the Switch on the LAN. The role of the Authentication Server is to certify the identity of the Client attempting to access the network by exchanging secure information between the RADIUS server and the Client through EAPOL packets and, in turn, informs the Switch whether or not the Client is granted access to the LAN and/or switches services.

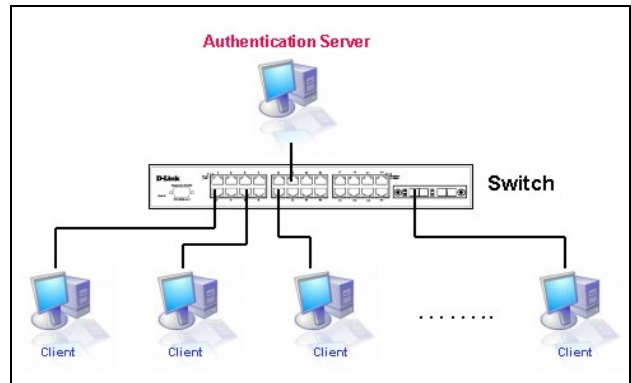


Figure 8-3 The Authentication Server

### Authenticator

The Authenticator (the Switch) is an intermediary between the Authentication Server and the Client. The Authenticator serves two purposes when utilizing the 802.1X function. The first purpose is to request certification information from the Client through EAPOL packets, which is the only information allowed to pass through the Authenticator before access is granted to the Client. The second purpose of the Authenticator is to verify the information gathered from the Client with the Authentication Server, and to then relay that information back to the Client.

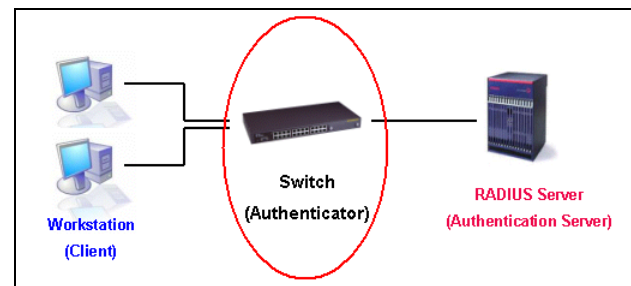


Figure 8-4 The Authenticator

Three steps must be implemented on the Switch to properly configure the Authenticator.

- 1 The 802.1X State must be *Enabled*. (**Security / 802.1X / 802.1X Global Settings**)
- 2 The 802.1X settings must be implemented by port (**Security / 802.1X / 802.1X Port Settings**)
- 3 A RADIUS server must be configured on the Switch. (**Security / RADIUS / Authentication RADIUS Server Settings**)

### Client

The Client is simply the end station that wishes to gain access to the LAN or switch services. All end stations must be running software that is compliant with the 802.1X protocol. For users running Windows XP and Windows Vista, that software is included within the operating system. All other users are required to attain 802.1X client software from an outside source. The Client will request access to the LAN and or Switch through EAPOL packets and, in turn will respond to requests from the Switch.

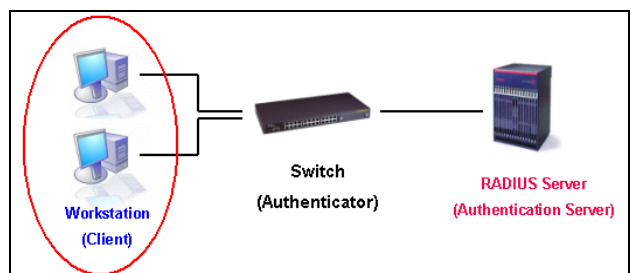


Figure 8-5 The Client

## Authentication Process

Utilizing the three roles stated above, the 802.1X protocol provides a stable and secure way of authorizing and authenticating users attempting to access the network. Only EAPOL traffic is allowed to pass through the specified port before a successful authentication is made. This port is “locked” until the point when a Client with the correct username and password is granted access and therefore successfully “unlocks” the port. Once unlocked, normal traffic is allowed to pass through the port. The following figure displays a more detailed explanation of how the authentication process is completed between the three roles stated above.

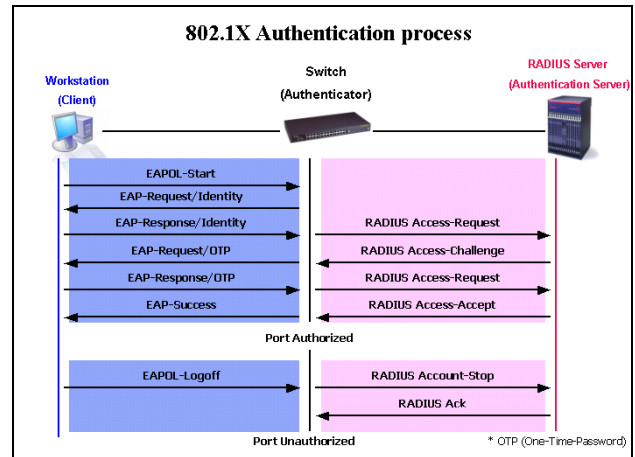


Figure 8-6 The 802.1X Authentication Process

The D-Link implementation of 802.1X allows network administrators to choose between two types of Access Control used on the Switch, which are:

1. Port-Based Access Control – This method requires only one user to be authenticated per port by a remote RADIUS server to allow the remaining users on the same port access to the network.
2. Host-Based Access Control – Using this method, the Switch will automatically learn up to a maximum of 448 MAC addresses by port and set them in a list. Each MAC address must be authenticated by the Switch using a remote RADIUS server before being allowed access to the Network. This configuration can be modified port by port, and is controlled by compound authentication. The default configurations of all the ports are host-based.

## Understanding 802.1X Port-based and Host-based Network Access Control

The original intent behind the development of 802.1X was to leverage the characteristics of point-to-point in LANs. As any single LAN segment in such infrastructures has no more than two devices attached to it, one of which is a Bridge Port. The Bridge Port detects events that indicate the attachment of an active device at the remote end of the link, or an active device becoming inactive. These events can be used to control the authorization state of the Port and initiate the process of authenticating the attached device if the Port is unauthorized. This is the Port-Based Network Access Control.

## Port-Based Network Access Control

Once the connected device has successfully been authenticated, the Port then becomes Authorized, and all subsequent traffic on the Port is not subject to access control restriction until an event occurs that causes the Port to become Unauthorized. Hence, if the Port is actually connected to a shared media LAN segment with more than one attached device, successfully authenticating one of the attached devices effectively provides access to the LAN for all devices on the shared segment. Clearly, the security offered in this situation is open to attack.

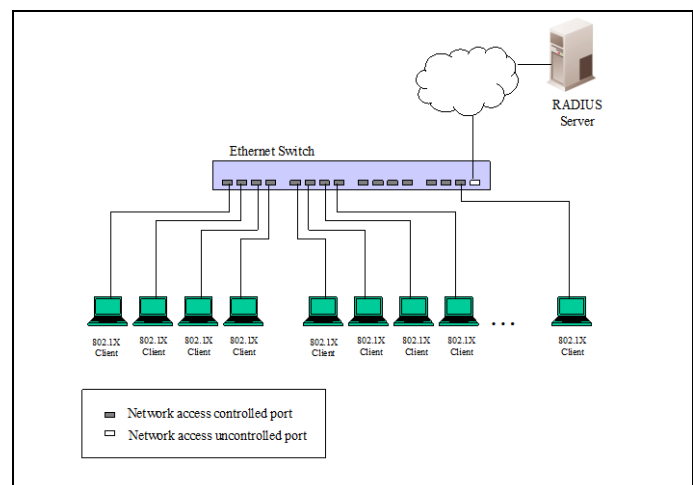


Figure 8-7 Example of Typical Port-based Configuration

## Host-Based Network Access Control

In order to successfully make use of 802.1X in a shared media LAN segment, it would be necessary to create “logical” Ports, one for each attached device that required access to the LAN. The Switch would regard the single physical Port connecting it to the shared media segment as consisting of a number of distinct logical Ports, each logical Port being independently controlled from the point of view of EAPOL exchanges and authorization state. The Switch learns each attached devices’ individual MAC addresses, and effectively creates a logical Port that the attached device can then use to communicate with the LAN via the Switch.

Furthermore, the user can also configure the authentication VLANs to specify that the client with a specific VLAN ID must get authorized to access the network. The clients that are not part of the authentication VLAN ID can access the network without being authorized.

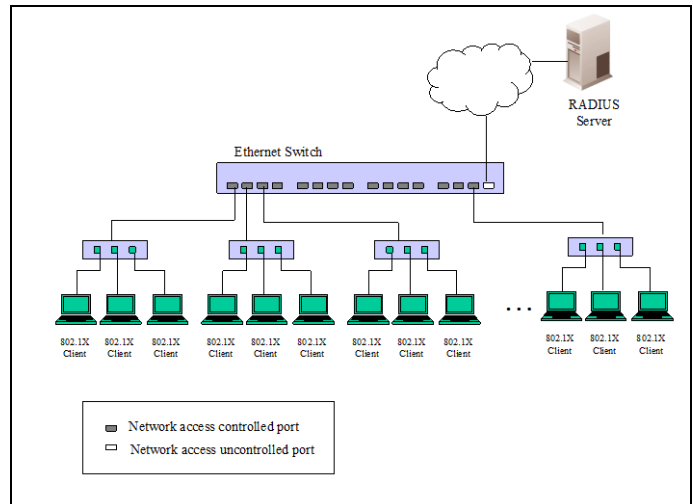


Figure 8-8 Example of Typical Host-based Configuration

## 802.1X Global Settings

Users can configure the 802.1X global parameter.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > 802.1X Global Settings** as shown below:

The screenshot shows the '802.1X Global Settings' window. The settings are as follows:

- Authentication State: Disabled
- Authentication Protocol: RADIUS EAP
- Forward EAPOL PDU: Disabled
- Max User (1-448): No Limit (checked)
- RADIUS Authorization: Enabled
- Trap State: Disabled

An 'Apply' button is located at the bottom right of the window.

Figure 8-9 802.1X Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Authentication State</b>	Choose the 802.1X authentication state. Options to choose from are <i>Disabled</i> or <i>Enabled</i> .
<b>Authentication Protocol</b>	Choose the authentication protocol. Options to choose from are <i>Local</i> or <i>RADIUS EAP</i> .
<b>Forward EAPOL PDU</b>	This is a global setting to control the forwarding of EAPOL PDU. When 802.1X functionality is disabled globally or for a port, and if 802.1X forward PDU is enabled both globally and for the port, a received EAPOL packet on the port will be flooded in the same VLAN to those ports for which 802.1X forward PDU is enabled and 802.1X is disabled (globally or just for the port). The default state is disabled.
<b>Max Users (1-448)</b>	Specify the maximum number of users. The limit on the maximum users is 448 users. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have 448 users.
<b>RADIUS Authorization</b>	This option is used to enable or disable acceptance of authorized configuration. When the authorization is enabled for 802.1X’s RADIUS, the authorized data assigned by the RADIUS server will be accepted if the global authorization network is enabled.
<b>Trap State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable trap state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## 802.1X Port Settings

Users can configure the 802.1X authenticator port settings.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > 802.1X Port Settings** as shown below:

Port	AdmDir	OpenCriDir	Port Control	TX Period	Quiet Period	Supp-Timeout	Server-Timeout	MaxReq	ReAuth Period	ReAuth	Capability	Forward EAPOL PDU	Max User
1	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
2	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
3	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
4	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
5	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
6	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
7	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
8	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
9	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
10	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
11	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
12	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
13	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
14	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
15	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
16	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
17	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16
18	Both	Both	Auto	30	60	30	30	2	3600	Disabled	None	Disabled	16

Figure 8-10 802.1X Port Settings

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports you wish to configure.
<b>QuietPeriod (0-65535)</b>	This allows the user to set the number of seconds that the Switch remains in the quiet state following a failed authentication exchange with the client. The default setting is 60 seconds.
<b>SuppTimeout (1-65535)</b>	This value determines timeout conditions in the exchanges between the Authenticator and the client. The default setting is 30 seconds. It is defined in SuppTimeout, IEEE-802.1X-2001, page 47. The initialization value is used for the awhile timer when timing out the Supplicant. Its default value is 30 seconds; however, if the type of challenge involved in the current exchange demands a different value of timeout (for example, if the challenge requires an action on the part of the user), then the timeout value is adjusted accordingly. It can be set by management to any value in the range from 1 to 65535 seconds.
<b>ServerTimeout (1-65535)</b>	This value determines timeout conditions in the exchanges between the Authenticator and the authentication server. The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>MaxReq (1-10)</b>	The maximum number of times that the Switch will retransmit an EAP Request to the client before it times out of the authentication sessions. The default setting is 2. It is defined in MaxReq, IEEE-802.1X-2001 page 47. The maximum number of times that the state machine will retransmit an EAP Request packet to the Supplicant before it times out the authentication session. Its default value is 2; it can be set by management to any value in the range from 1 to 10.

<b>TxPeriod (1-65535)</b>	This sets the TxPeriod of time for the authenticator PAE state machine. This value determines the period of an EAP Request/Identity packet transmitted to the client. The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>ReAuthPeriod (1-65535)</b>	A constant that defines a nonzero number of seconds between periodic re-authentication of the client. The default setting is 3600 seconds.
<b>ReAuthentication</b>	Determines whether regular re-authentication will take place on this port. The default setting is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>Port Control</b>	<p>This allows the user to control the port authorization state.</p> <p>Select <i>ForceAuthorized</i> to disable 802.1X and cause the port to transition to the authorized state without any authentication exchange required. This means the port transmits and receives normal traffic without 802.1X-based authentication of the client.</p> <p>If <i>ForceUnauthorized</i> is selected, the port will remain in the unauthorized state, ignoring all attempts by the client to authenticate. The Switch cannot provide authentication services to the client through the interface.</p> <p>If <i>Auto</i> is selected, it will enable 802.1X and cause the port to begin in the unauthorized state, allowing only EAPOL frames to be sent and received through the port. The authentication process begins when the link state of the port transitions from down to up, or when an EAPOL-start frame is received. The Switch then requests the identity of the client and begins relaying authentication messages between the client and the authentication server.</p> <p>The default setting is <i>Auto</i>.</p>
<b>Capability</b>	This allows the 802.1X Authenticator settings to be applied on a per-port basis. Select <i>Authenticator</i> to apply the settings to the port. When the setting is activated, a user must pass the authentication process to gain access to the network. Select <i>None</i> disable 802.1X functions on the port.
<b>Direction</b>	Sets the administrative-controlled direction to <i>Both</i> or <i>In</i> . If <i>Both</i> is selected, control is exerted over both incoming and outgoing traffic through the controlled port selected in the first field. If <i>In</i> is selected, the control is only exerted over incoming traffic through the port the user selected in the first field.
<b>Forward EAPOL PDU</b>	This is a port setting to control the forwarding of EAPOL PDU. When 802.1X functionality is disabled globally or for a port, and if 802.1X forward PDU is enabled both globally and for the port, a received EAPOL packet on the port will be flooded in the same VLAN to those ports for which 802.1X forward PDU is enabled and 802.1X is disabled (globally or just for the port). The default state is disabled.
<b>Max Users (1-448)</b>	Specify the maximum number of users. The maximum user limit is 448 users. The default is 16. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have 448 users.

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new entries will appear.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## 802.1X User Settings

Users can set different 802.1X users in switch's local database.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > 802.1X User Settings** as shown below:



Figure 8-11 802.1X User Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>802.1X User</b>	The user can enter an 802.1X user's username in here.
<b>Password</b>	The user can enter an 802.1X user's password in here.
<b>Confirm Password</b>	The user can re-enter an 802.1X user's password in here.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.



**NOTE:** The **802.1X User** and **Password** values should be less than 16 characters.

## Guest VLAN Settings

On 802.1X security-enabled networks, there is a need for non- 802.1X supported devices to gain limited access to the network, due to lack of the proper 802.1X software or incompatible devices, such as computers running Windows 98 or older operating systems, or the need for guests to gain access to the network without full authorization or local authentication on the Switch. To supplement these circumstances, this switch now implements 802.1X Guest VLANs. These VLANs should have limited access rights and features separate from other VLANs on the network.

To implement 802.1X Guest VLANs, the user must first create a VLAN on the network with limited rights and then enable it as an 802.1X guest VLAN. Upon initial entry to the Switch, the client wishing services on the Switch will need to be authenticated by a remote RADIUS Server or local authentication on the Switch to be placed in a fully operational VLAN.

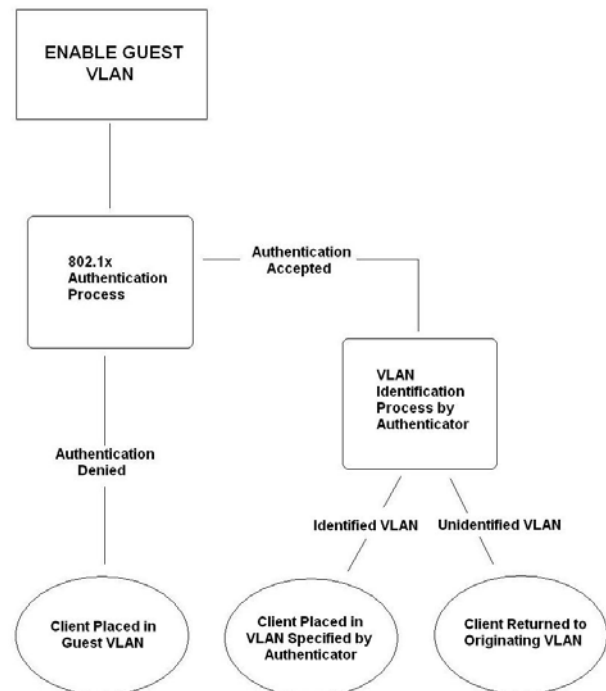


Figure 8-12 Guest VLAN Authentication Process

If authenticated and the authenticator possess the VLAN placement information, that client will be accepted into the fully operational target VLAN and normal switch functions will be open to the client. If the authenticator does not have target VLAN placement information, the client will be returned to its originating VLAN. Yet, if the client is denied authentication by the authenticator, it will be placed in the Guest VLAN where it has limited rights and access. The adjacent figure should give the user a better understanding of the Guest VLAN process.

### Limitations Using the Guest VLAN

- 1 Ports supporting Guest VLANs cannot be GVRP enabled and vice versa.

- 2 A port cannot be a member of a Guest VLAN and a static VLAN simultaneously.
- 3 Once a client has been accepted into the target VLAN, it can no longer access the Guest VLAN.

Remember, to set an 802.1X guest VLAN, the user must first configure a normal VLAN, which can be enabled here for guest VLAN status. Only one VLAN may be assigned as the 802.1X guest VLAN.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Guest VLAN Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-13 Guest VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the pre-configured VLAN name to create as an 802.1X guest VLAN.
<b>Port</b>	Set the ports to be enabled for the 802.1X guest VLAN. Click the <b>All</b> button to select all the ports.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

## Authenticator State

This window is used to display the authenticator state.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Authenticator State** as shown below:

Figure 8-14 Authenticator State window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Select a port to be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new entries will appear.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Authenticator Statistics

This window is used to display the authenticator statistics information.



To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Authenticator Statistics** as shown below:

Index	Frames RX	Frames TX	RX Start	TX ReqId	RX LogOn
1	null	null	null	null	null
2	null	null	null	null	null
3	null	null	null	null	null
4	null	null	null	null	null
5	null	null	null	null	null
6	null	null	null	null	null
7	null	null	null	null	null
8	null	null	null	null	null
9	null	null	null	null	null
10	null	null	null	null	null

Figure 8-15 Authenticator Statistics window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Time Interval	Use the drop-down menu to select the interval to update the statistics.

Click the **OK** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Authenticator Session Statistics

This window is used to display the authenticator session statistics information.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Authenticator Session Statistics** as shown below:

Index	Octets RX	Octets TX	Frames RX	Frames TX	Time Interval
1	null	null	null	null	
2	null	null	null	null	
3	null	null	null	null	
4	null	null	null	null	
5	null	null	null	null	
6	null	null	null	null	
7	null	null	null	null	
8	null	null	null	null	
9	null	null	null	null	
10	null	null	null	null	

Figure 8-16 Authenticator Session Statistics window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Select a port to be displayed.
Time Interval	Use the drop-down menu to select the interval to update the statistics.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **OK** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Authenticator Diagnostics

This window is used to display the authenticator diagnostics information.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Authenticator Diagnostics** as shown below:

Index	Connect Enter	Connect LogOff	Auth Enter	Auth Success	Auth Timeout
1	null	null	null	null	null
2	null	null	null	null	null
3	null	null	null	null	null
4	null	null	null	null	null
5	null	null	null	null	null
6	null	null	null	null	null
7	null	null	null	null	null
8	null	null	null	null	null
9	null	null	null	null	null
10	null	null	null	null	null

Figure 8-17 Authenticator Diagnostics window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port	Select a port to be displayed.
Time Interval	Use the drop-down menu to select the interval to update the statistics.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **OK** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Initialize Port-based Port(s)

This window is used to display the authenticator diagnostics information.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Initialize Port-based Port(s)** as shown below:

Port	MAC Address	Authenticated VID	PAE State	Backend State	Status	VID	Priority
------	-------------	-------------------	-----------	---------------	--------	-----	----------

Figure 8-18 Initialize Port-based Port(s) window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be displayed.
----------------------------	--

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Initialize Host-based Port(s)

This window is used to display the current initialized host-based ports.

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Initialize Host-based Port(s)** as shown below:

Figure 8-19 Initialize Host-based Port(s) window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be displayed.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Tick the check box and enter the authenticated MAC address of the client connected to the corresponding port.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Reauthenticate Port-based Port(s)

This window is used to display the current status of the re-authenticated port-based port(s).

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Reauthenticate Port-based Port(s)** as shown below:

Figure 8-20 Reauthenticate Port-based Port(s) window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be displayed.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## Reauthenticate Host-based Port(s)

This window is used to display the current status of the re-authenticated host-based port(s).

To view this window, click **Security > 802.1X > Reauthenticate Host-based Port(s)** as shown below:

Figure 8-21 Reauthenticate Host-based Port(s) window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to be displayed.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Tick the check box and enter the authenticated MAC address of the client connected to the corresponding port.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** The user must first globally enable **Authentication State** in the 802.1X Global Settings window before initializing ports. Information in this window cannot be viewed before enabling the authentication state.

## RADIUS

### Authentication RADIUS Server Settings

The RADIUS feature of the Switch allows the user to facilitate centralized user administration as well as providing protection against a sniffing, active hacker.

To view this window, click **Security > RADIUS > Authentication RADIUS Server Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-22 Authentication RADIUS Server Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Index</b>	Choose the desired RADIUS server to configure: 1, 2 or 3.
<b>Server IP</b>	Set the RADIUS server IP address.

<b>Authentication Port (1-65535)</b>	Set the RADIUS authentic server(s) UDP port which is used to transmit RADIUS data between the Switch and the RADIUS server. The default port is 1812.
<b>Accounting Port (1-65535)</b>	Set the RADIUS account server(s) UDP port which is used to transmit RADIUS accounting statistics between the Switch and the RADIUS server. The default port is 1813.
<b>Timeout (1-255)</b>	Set the RADIUS server age-out, in seconds.
<b>Retransmit (1-20)</b>	Set the RADIUS server retransmit time, in times.
<b>Key</b>	Set the key the same as that of the RADIUS server.
<b>Confirm Key</b>	Confirm the key the same as that of the RADIUS server.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the specified entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specified entry.

## RADIUS Accounting Settings

Users can configure the state of the specified RADIUS accounting service.

To view this window, click **Security > RADIUS > RADIUS Accounting Settings** as shown below:

**RADIUS Accounting Settings** Safeguard

Network  Enabled  Disabled

Shell  Enabled  Disabled

System  Enabled  Disabled

**Network:** When enabled, the switch will send informational packets to a remote RADIUS server when 802.1X, WAC and JWAC port access control events occur on the switch.

**Shell:** When enabled, the switch will send informational packets to a remote RADIUS server when a user either logs in, logs out or times out on the switch, using the console, Telnet, or SSH.

**System:** When enabled, the switch will send informational packets to a remote RADIUS server when system events occur on the switch, such as a system reset or system boot.

Figure 8-23 RADIUS Accounting Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Network</b>	When enabled, the Switch will send informational packets to a remote RADIUS server when 802.1X port access control events occur on the Switch.
<b>Shell</b>	When enabled, the Switch will send informational packets to a remote RADIUS server when a user either logs in, logs out or times out on the Switch, using the console, Telnet, or SSH.
<b>System</b>	When enabled, the Switch will send informational packets to a remote RADIUS server when system events occur on the Switch, such as a system reset or system boot.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## RADIUS Authentication

Users can display information concerning the activity of the RADIUS authentication client on the client side of the RADIUS authentication protocol.

To view this window, click **Security > RADIUS > RADIUS Authentication** as shown below:

ServerIndex	InvalidServerAddr	Identifier	AuthServerAddr	ServerPortNumber	RoundTripTime	AccessRequests	AccessReplies
1	0	D-Link		0	0	0	
2	0	D-Link		0	0	0	
3	0	D-Link		0	0	0	

Figure 8-24 RADIUS Authentication window

The user may also select the desired time interval to update the statistics, between 1s and 60s, where “s” stands for seconds. The default value is 1s.

The fields that can be displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>ServerIndex</b>	The identification number assigned to each RADIUS Authentication server that the client shares a secret with.
<b>InvalidServerAddr</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Response packets received from unknown addresses.
<b>Identifier</b>	The NAS-Identifier of the RADIUS authentication client.
<b>AuthServerAddr</b>	The (conceptual) table listing the RADIUS authentication servers with which the client shares a secret.
<b>ServerPortNumber</b>	The UDP port the client is using to send requests to this server.
<b>RoundTripTime</b>	The time interval (in hundredths of a second) between the most recent Access-Reply/Access-Challenge and the Access-Request that matched it from this RADIUS authentication server.
<b>AccessRequests</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Request packets sent to this server. This does not include retransmissions.
<b>AccessRetrans</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Request packets retransmitted to this RADIUS authentication server.
<b>AccessAccepts</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Accept packets (valid or invalid) received from this server.
<b>AccessRejects</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Reject packets (valid or invalid) received from this server.
<b>AccessChallenges</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Challenge packets (valid or invalid) received from

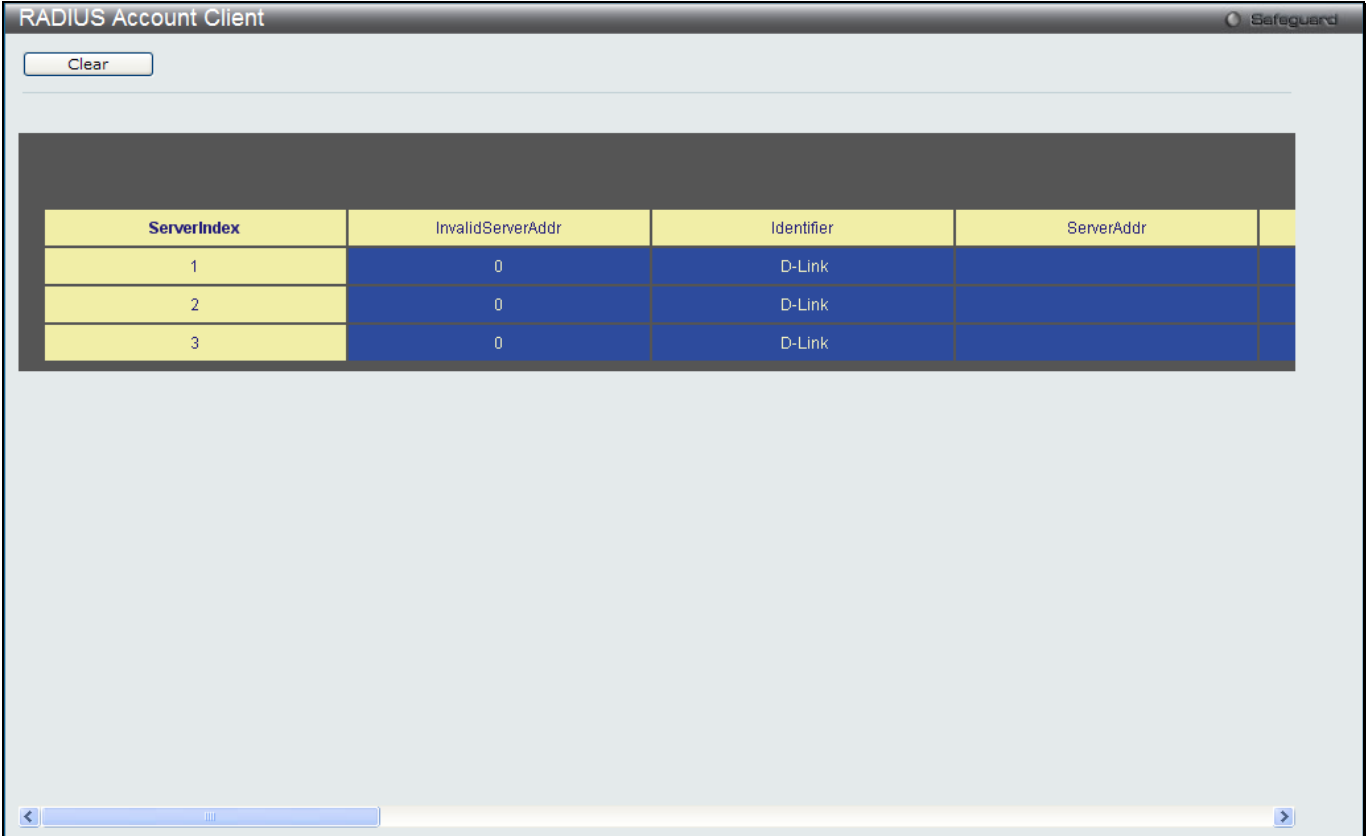
	this server.
<b>AccessResponses</b>	The number of malformed RADIUS Access-Response packets received from this server. Malformed packets include packets with an invalid length. Bad authenticators or Signature attributes or known types are not included as malformed access responses.
<b>BadAuthenticators</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Response packets containing invalid authenticators or Signature attributes received from this server.
<b>PendingRequests</b>	The number of RADIUS Access-Request packets destined for this server that have not yet timed out or received a response. This variable is incremented when an Access-Request is sent and decremented due to receipt of an Access-Accept, Access-Reject or Access-Challenge, a timeout or retransmission.
<b>Timeouts</b>	The number of authentication timeouts to this server. After a timeout the client may retry to the same server, send to a different server, or give up. A retry to the same server is counted as a retransmit as well as a timeout. A send to a different server is counted as a Request as well as a timeout.
<b>UnknownTypes</b>	The number of RADIUS packets of unknown type which were received from this server on the authentication port
<b>PacketsDropped</b>	The number of RADIUS packets of which were received from this server on the authentication port and dropped for some other reason.

Click the **Clear** button to clear the current statistics shown.

## RADIUS Account Client

Users can display managed objects used for managing RADIUS accounting clients, and the current statistics associated with them.

To view this window, click **Security > RADIUS > RADIUS Account Client** as shown below:



The screenshot shows a web interface window titled "RADIUS Account Client" with a "Clear" button at the top left. Below the button is a table with the following data:

ServerIndex	InvalidServerAddr	Identifier	ServerAddr
1	0	D-Link	
2	0	D-Link	
3	0	D-Link	

Figure 8-25 RADIUS Account Client window



The user may also select the desired time interval to update the statistics, between 1s and 60s, where “s” stands for seconds. The default value is 1s.

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>ServerIndex</b>	The identification number assigned to each RADIUS Accounting server that the client shares a secret with.
<b>InvalidServerAddr</b>	The number of RADIUS Accounting-Response packets received from unknown addresses.
<b>Identifier</b>	The NAS-Identifier of the RADIUS accounting client.
<b>ServerAddr</b>	The IP address of the RADIUS authentication server referred to in this table entry.
<b>ServerPortNumber</b>	The UDP port the client is using to send requests to this server.
<b>RoundTripTime</b>	The time interval between the most recent Accounting-Response and the Accounting-Request that matched it from this RADIUS accounting server.
<b>Requests</b>	The number of RADIUS Accounting-Request packets sent. This does not include retransmissions.
<b>Retransmissions</b>	The number of RADIUS Accounting-Request packets retransmitted to this RADIUS accounting server. Retransmissions include retries where the Identifier and Acct-Delay have been updated, as well as those in which they remain the same.
<b>Responses</b>	The number of RADIUS packets received on the accounting port from this server.
<b>MalformedResponses</b>	The number of malformed RADIUS Accounting-Response packets received from this server. Malformed packets include packets with an invalid length. Bad authenticators and unknown types are not included as malformed accounting responses.
<b>BadAuthenticators</b>	The number of RADIUS Accounting-Response packets, which contained invalid authenticators, received from this server.
<b>PendingRequests</b>	The number of RADIUS Accounting-Request packets sent to this server that have not yet timed out or received a response. This variable is incremented when an Accounting-Request is sent and decremented due to receipt of an Accounting-Response, a timeout or a retransmission.
<b>Timeouts</b>	The number of accounting timeouts to this server. After a timeout the client may retry to the same server, send to a different server, or give up. A retry to the same server is counted as a retransmit as well as a timeout. A send to a different server is counted as an Accounting-Request as well as a timeout.
<b>UnknownTypes</b>	The number of RADIUS packets of unknown type which were received from this server on the accounting port.
<b>PacketsDropped</b>	The number of RADIUS packets, which were received from this server on the accounting port and dropped for some other reason.

Click the **Clear** button to clear the current statistics shown.

## IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB)

The IP network layer uses a four-byte address. The Ethernet link layer uses a six-byte MAC address. Binding these two address types together allows the transmission of data between the layers. The primary purpose of IP-MAC-port binding is to restrict the access to a Switch to a number of authorized users. Authorized clients can access a Switch’s port by either checking the pair of IP-MAC addresses with the pre-configured database or if DHCP snooping has been enabled in which case the Switch will automatically learn the IP/MAC pairs by snooping DHCPv4, DHCPv6, and ND packets and saving them to the IMPB white list. If an unauthorized user tries to access an IP-MAC binding enabled port, the system will block the access by dropping its packet. For the DGS-3000 series of switches, active and inactive entries use the same database. The maximum number of entries that can be created is 510 for IPv4 and 255 for IPv6, by which only a maximum of 127 entries can be active at any given time. The creation of authorized users can be manually configured by CLI or Web. The function is port-based, meaning a user can enable or disable the function on the individual port.

## IMPB Global Settings

Users can enable or disable the Roaming State, Trap/Log state, DHCPv4/DHCPv6 Snoop state, and ND Snoop state on the Switch. The Trap/Log field will enable and disable the sending of trap/log messages for IP-MAC-port binding. When enabled, the Switch will send a trap message to the SNMP agent and the Switch log when an ARP packet is received that doesn't match the IP-MAC-port binding configuration set on the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > IMPB Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-26 IMPB Global Settings

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Roaming State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the IMPB roaming state.
<b>Trap / Log</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the sending of trap/log messages for IP-MAC-port binding. When <i>Enabled</i> , the Switch will send a trap message to the SNMP agent and the Switch log when an ARP packet is received that doesn't match the IP-MAC-port binding configuration set on the Switch. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>DHCP Snooping (IPv4)</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable DHCP snooping (IPv4) for IP-MAC-Port binding. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>DHCP Snooping (IPv6)</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable DHCP snooping (IPv6) for IP-MAC-Port binding. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>ND Snooping</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable enable ND snooping on the Switch. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>Recover Learning Ports</b>	Enter the port numbers used to recover the learning port state. Tick the <b>All</b> check box to apply to all ports.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## IMPB Port Settings

Select a port or a range of ports with the From Port and To Port fields. Enable or disable the port with the ARP Inspection state, IP Inspection state, Allow Zero IP and Forward DHCP Packet field, and configure the port's protocol setting and Stop Learning Threshold.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > IMPB Port Settings** as shown below:

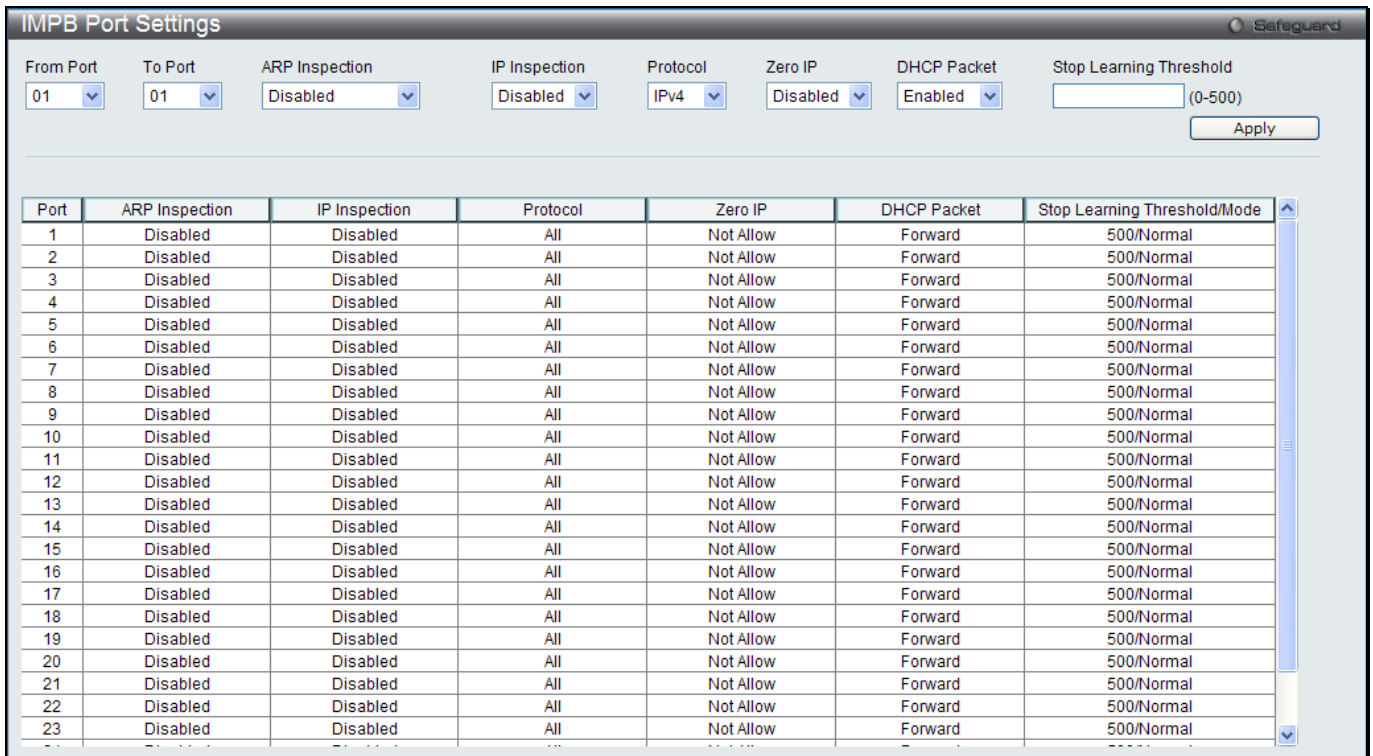


Figure 8-27 IMPB Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to set for IP-MAC-port binding.
<b>ARP Inspection</b>	<p>When the ARP inspection function is enabled, the legal ARP packets are forwarded, while the illegal packets are dropped.</p> <p><i>Disabled</i> - Disable the ARP inspection function.</p> <p><i>Enabled (Strict)</i> - This mode disables hardware learning of the MAC address. All packets are dropped by default until a legal ARP or IP packets are detected. When enabling this mode, the Switch stops writing dropped FDB entries on these ports. If detecting legal packets, the Switch needs to write forward FDB entry.</p> <p><i>Enabled (Loose)</i> - In this mode, all packets are forwarded by default until an illegal ARP packet is detected.</p> <p>The default value is Disabled.</p>
<b>IP Inspection</b>	<p>When both ARP and IP inspections are enabled, all IP packets are checked. The legal IP packets are forwarded, while the illegal IP packets are dropped. When IP Inspection is enabled, and ARP Inspection is disabled, all non-IP packets (Ex. L2 packets, or ARP) are forwarded by default.</p> <p>The default value is Disabled.</p>
<b>Protocol</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the protocol. Available options are: <i>IPv4</i> , <i>IPv6</i> and <i>All</i> .
<b>Zero IP</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable this feature. Allow zero IP configures the state which allows ARP packets with 0.0.0.0 source IP to bypass.
<b>DHCP Packet</b>	By default, the DHCP packet with broadcast DA will be flooded. When set to disable, the broadcast DHCP packet received by the specified port will not be forwarded in strict mode. This setting is effective when DHCP snooping is enabled, in the case when a DHCP packet which has been trapped by the CPU needs to be forwarded by the software. This setting controls the forwarding behavior in this situation.
<b>Stop Learning Threshold</b>	Here is displayed the number of blocked entries on the port. The default value is 500.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## IMPB Entry Settings

This window is used to create static IP-MAC-binding port entries and view all IMPB entries on the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > IMPB Entry Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-28 IMPB Entry Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IP address to bind to the MAC address set below.
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter the IPv6 address to bind to the MAC address set below.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the MAC address to bind to the IPv4/IPv6 Address set above.
<b>Ports</b>	Specify the switch ports for which to configure this IP-MAC binding entry (IP Address + MAC Address). Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to configure this entry for all ports on the Switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the specified entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specified entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## MAC Block List

This window is used to view unauthorized devices that have been blocked by IP-MAC binding restrictions.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > MAC Block List** as shown below:

Figure 8-29 MAC Block List

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter a VLAN Name.

<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter a MAC address.
--------------------	----------------------

Click the **Find** button to find an unauthorized device that has been blocked by the IP-MAC binding restrictions  
Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.  
Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

## DHCP Snooping

### DHCP Snooping Maximum Entry Settings

Users can configure the maximum DHCP snooping entry for ports on this page.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > DHCP Snooping > DHCP Snooping Maximum Entry Settings** as shown below:

Port	Maximum Entry	Maximum IPv6 Entry
1	No Limit	No Limit
2	No Limit	No Limit
3	No Limit	No Limit
4	No Limit	No Limit
5	No Limit	No Limit
6	No Limit	No Limit
7	No Limit	No Limit
8	No Limit	No Limit
9	No Limit	No Limit
10	No Limit	No Limit
11	No Limit	No Limit
12	No Limit	No Limit
13	No Limit	No Limit
14	No Limit	No Limit
15	No Limit	No Limit
16	No Limit	No Limit
17	No Limit	No Limit
18	No Limit	No Limit
19	No Limit	No Limit
20	No Limit	No Limit
21	No Limit	No Limit
22	No Limit	No Limit
23	No Limit	No Limit
24	No Limit	No Limit
25	No Limit	No Limit
26	No Limit	No Limit

Figure 8-30 DHCP Snooping Max Entry Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to use.
<b>Maximum Entry (1-50)</b>	Enter the maximum entry value. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to lift the maximum entry.
<b>Maximum IPv6 Entry (1-50)</b>	Enter the maximum entry value for IPv6 DHCP Snooping. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have unlimited maximum number of the learned entries.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

### DHCP Snooping Entry

This window is used to view dynamic entries on specific ports.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > DHCP Snooping > DHCP Snooping Entry** as shown below:

Figure 8-31 DHCP Snooping Entry window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the desired port.
<b>Ports</b>	Specify the ports for DHCP snooping entries. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to select all entries for all ports. Tick the <b>IPv4</b> check box to select IPv4 DHCP snooping learned entries. Tick the <b>IPv6</b> check box to select IPv6 DHCP snooping learned entries.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the port number selected.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## ND Snooping

### ND Snooping Maximum Entry Settings

Users can configure the maximum ND Snooping entry for ports on this page.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > ND Snooping > ND Snooping Maximum Entry Settings** as shown below:

Port	Maximum Entry
1	No Limit
2	No Limit
3	No Limit
4	No Limit
5	No Limit
6	No Limit
7	No Limit
8	No Limit
9	No Limit
10	No Limit
11	No Limit
12	No Limit
13	No Limit
14	No Limit
15	No Limit
16	No Limit
17	No Limit
18	No Limit
19	No Limit
20	No Limit
21	No Limit
22	No Limit
23	No Limit
24	No Limit
25	No Limit
26	No Limit

Figure 8-32 ND Snooping Maximum Entry Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports that require a restriction on the maximum number of entries that can be learned with ND snooping.
<b>Maximum Entry (1-50)</b>	Enter the maximum entry value. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have unlimited maximum number of the learned entries.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## ND Snooping Entry

This window is used to view dynamic entries on specific ports.

To view this window, click **Security > IP-MAC-Port Binding (IMPB) > ND Snooping > ND Snooping Entry** as shown below:

Figure 8-33 ND Snooping Entry window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the desired port.
<b>Ports</b>	Specify the ports for ND snooping entries. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to select all entries for all ports.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the port number selected.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## MAC-based Access Control (MAC)

MAC-based access control is a method to authenticate and authorize access using either a port or host. For port-based MAC-based access control, the method decides port access rights, while for host-based MAC-based access control, the method determines the MAC access rights.

A MAC user must be authenticated before being granted access to a network. Both local authentication and remote RADIUS server authentication methods are supported. In MAC-based access control, MAC user information in a local database or a RADIUS server database is searched for authentication. Following the authentication result, users achieve different levels of authorization.

### **Notes about MAC-based Access Control**

There are certain limitations and regulations regarding MAC-based access control:

- Once this feature is enabled for a port, the Switch will clear the FDB of that port.
- If a port is granted clearance for a MAC address in a VLAN that is not a Guest VLAN, other MAC addresses on that port must be authenticated for access and otherwise will be blocked by the Switch.
- Ports that have been enabled for Link Aggregation and Port Security cannot be enabled for MAC-based Authentication.

- Ports that have been enabled for GVRP cannot be enabled for Guest VLAN.

## MAC-based Access Control Settings

This window is used to set the parameters for the MAC-based access control function on the Switch. The user can set the running state, method of authentication, RADIUS password, view the Guest VLAN configuration to be associated with the MAC-based access control function of the Switch, and configure ports to be enabled or disabled for the MAC-based access control feature of the Switch. Please remember, ports enabled for certain other features, listed previously, and cannot be enabled for MAC-based access control.

To view this window, click **Security > MAC-based Access Control (MAC) > MAC-based Access Control Settings** as shown below:

**MAC-based Access Control Settings**

MAC-based Access Control Global Settings

MAC-based Access Control State:  Enabled  Disabled Apply

Method:  Password Type:   
 RADIUS Authorization:  Password:   
 Local Authorization:  Trap State:   
 Log State:  Max User (1-1000):   No Limit Apply

Guest VLAN Settings

VLAN Name:  VID (1-4094):   
 Member Ports (e.g.: 1-5, 9):  Add Delete

Port Settings

From Port:  To Port:  State:  Mode:   
 Aging Time (1-1440):  min  Infinite Block Time (0-300):  sec  
 Max User (1-1000):   No Limit Apply

Port	State	Mode	Aging Time (min)	Block Time (sec)	Max User
1	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
2	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
3	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
4	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
5	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
6	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
7	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
8	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
9	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
10	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128
11	Disabled	Host-based	1440	300	128

Figure 8-34 MAC-based Access Control Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MAC-based Access Control State</b>	Toggle to globally enable or disable the MAC-based access control function on the Switch.
<b>Method</b>	Use this drop-down menu to choose the type of authentication to be used when authentication MAC addresses on a given port. The user may choose between the following methods:  <i>Local</i> – Use this method to utilize the locally set MAC address database as the authenticator for MAC-based access control. This MAC address list can be configured in the MAC-based access control Local Database Settings window.  <i>RADIUS</i> – Use this method to utilize a remote RADIUS server as the authenticator for MAC-based access control.
<b>RADIUS Authorization</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the use of RADIUS Authorization.



<b>Local Authorization</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the use of Local Authorization.
<b>Log State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable log state.
<b>Password Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the type of RADIUS authentication password for MAC-based access control. <i>Manual String</i> – Use the same password in the <b>Password</b> text box. <i>Client MAC Address</i> – Use the client's MAC address as the password.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password for the RADIUS server, which is to be used for packets being sent requesting authentication. The default password is "default".
<b>Trap State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable trap state.
<b>Max User (1-1000)</b>	Enter the maximum amount of users of the Switch. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have 1000 users.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the name of the previously configured Guest VLAN being used for this function.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Click the radio button and enter a Guest VLAN ID.
<b>Member Ports</b>	Enter the list of ports that have been configured for the Guest VLAN.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be configured for MAC-based access control.
<b>State</b>	Use this drop-down menu to enable or disable MAC-based access control on the port or range of ports selected in the Port Settings section of this window.
<b>Mode</b>	Toggle between <i>Port-based</i> and <i>Host-based</i> .
<b>Aging Time (1-1440)</b>	Enter a value between 1 and 1440 minutes. The default is 1440. To set this value to have no aging time, select the <b>Infinite</b> option.
<b>Block Time (0-300)</b>	Enter a value between 0 and 300 seconds. The default is 300.
<b>Max User (1-1000)</b>	Enter the maximum amount of users of the Switch. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have 1000 users.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specified entry.

## MAC-based Access Control Local Settings

This window is used to configure a list of MAC addresses, along with their corresponding target VLAN, which will be authenticated for the Switch. Once a queried MAC address is matched in this window, it will be placed in the VLAN associated with it here. The Switch administrator may enter up to 128 MAC addresses to be authenticated using the local method configured here.

To view this window, click **Security > MAC-based Access Control (MAC) > MAC-based Access Control Local Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-35 MAC-based Access Control Local Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<b>MAC address</b>	Enter the MAC address that will be added to the local authentication list here.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name of the corresponding MAC address here.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Enter the VLAN ID of the corresponding MAC address here.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete by MAC** button to remove the specific entry based on the MAC address entered.

Click the **Delete by VLAN** button to remove the specific entry based on the VLAN name or ID entered.

Click the **Find by MAC** button to locate a specific entry based on the MAC address entered.

Click the **Find by VLAN** button to locate a specific entry based on the VLAN name or ID entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Edit by Name** to modify the specific VLAN name.

Click the **Edit by ID** button to modify the specific VLAN ID.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

To change the selected MAC address' VLAN Name, the user can click the **Edit by Name** button.

Figure 8-36 MAC-based Access Control Local Settings – Edit by Name window

To change the selected MAC address' VID value, the user can click the **Edit by ID** button.

Figure 8-37 MAC-based Access Control Local Settings – Edit by ID window

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## MAC-based Access Control Authentication State

This window is used to display MAC-based access control authentication state information.

To view this window, click **Security > MAC-based Access Control (MAC) > MAC-based Access Control Authentication State** as shown below:

Figure 8-38 MAC-based Access Control Authentication State window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port List	Enter a list of ports to be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear by Port** button to clear all the information linked to the port number entered.

Click the **View All Hosts** button to display all the existing hosts.

Click the **Clear All Hosts** button to clear out all the existing hosts.

## Web-based Access Control (WAC)

Web-based Authentication Login is a feature designed to authenticate a user when the user is trying to access the Internet via the Switch. The authentication process uses the HTTP or HTTPS protocol. The Switch enters the authenticating stage when users attempt to browse Web pages (e.g., <http://www.dlink.com>) through a Web browser. When the Switch detects HTTP or HTTPS packets and this port is un-authenticated, the Switch will redirect the user to the WAC login page where the user name and password must be entered. Users are not able to access the Internet until the authentication process is passed.

The Switch can be the authentication server itself and do the authentication based on a local database, or be a RADIUS client and perform the authentication process via the RADIUS protocol with a remote RADIUS server. The client user initiates the authentication process of WAC by attempting to gain Web access.

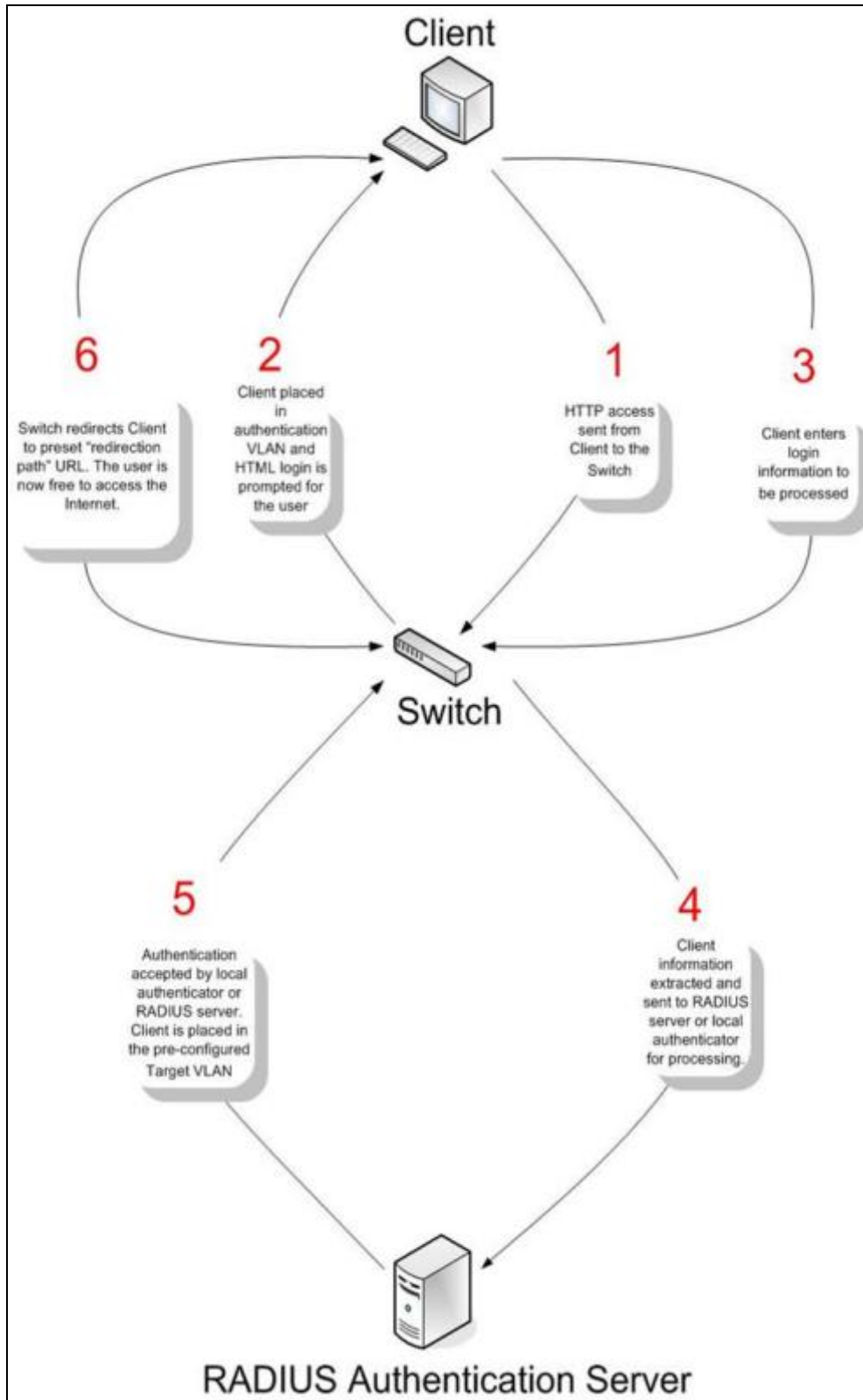
D-Link's implementation of WAC uses a virtual IP that is exclusively used by the WAC function and is not known by any other modules of the Switch. In fact, to avoid affecting a Switch's other features, WAC will only use a virtual IP address to communicate with hosts. Thus, all authentication requests must be sent to a virtual IP address but not to the IP address of the Switch's physical interface.

Virtual IP works like this, when a host PC communicates with the WAC Switch through a virtual IP, the virtual IP is transformed into the physical IPIF (IP interface) address of the Switch to make the communication possible. The host PC and other servers' IP configurations do not depend on the virtual IP of WAC. The virtual IP does not respond to any ICMP packets or ARP requests, which means it is not allowed to configure a virtual IP on the same subnet as the Switch's IPIF (IP interface) or the same subnet as the host PCs' subnet.

As all packets to a virtual IP from authenticated and authenticating hosts will be trapped to the Switch's CPU, if the virtual IP is the same as other servers or PCs, the hosts on the WAC-enabled ports cannot communicate with the server or PC which really own the IP address. If the hosts need to access the server or PC, the virtual IP cannot be the same as the one of the server or PC. If a host PC uses a proxy to access the Web, to make the authentication work properly the user of the PC should add the virtual IP to the exception of the proxy configuration.

The Switch's implementation of WAC features a user-defined port number that allows the configuration of the TCP port for either the HTTP or HTTPS protocols. This TCP port for HTTP or HTTPS is used to identify the HTTP or HTTPS packets that will be trapped to the CPU for authentication processing, or to access the login page. If not specified, the default port number for HTTP is 80 and the default port number for HTTPS is 443. If no protocol is specified, the default protocol is HTTP.

The following diagram illustrates the basic six steps all parties go through in a successful Web Authentication process:



### Conditions and Limitations

1. If the client is utilizing DHCP to attain an IP address, the authentication VLAN must provide a DHCP server or a DHCP relay function so that client may obtain an IP address.
2. Certain functions exist on the Switch that will filter HTTP packets, such as the Access Profile function. The user needs to be very careful when setting filter functions for the target VLAN, so that these HTTP packets are not denied by the Switch.
3. If a RADIUS server is to be used for authentication, the user must first establish a RADIUS Server with the appropriate parameters, including the target VLAN, before enabling Web Authentication on the Switch.

## WAC Global Settings

Users can configure the Switch for the Web-based access control function.

To view this window, click **Security > Web-based Access Control (WAC) > WAC Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-39 WAC Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>WAC Global State</b>	Use this selection menu to either enable or disable the Web Authentication on the Switch.
<b>Virtual IP</b>	Enter a virtual IP address. This is used to accept authentication requests from unauthenticated hosts. Only requests sent to this IP will get a correct response.
<b>Virtual IPv6</b>	Enter a virtual IPv6 address. This is used to accept authentication requests from unauthenticated hosts. Only requests sent to this IP will get a correct response.
<b>Redirection Path</b>	Enter the URL of the website that authenticated users placed in the VLAN are directed to once authenticated.
<b>Clear Redirection Path</b>	The user can enable or disable this option to clear the redirection path.
<b>RADIUS Authorization</b>	The user can enable or disable this option to enable RADIUS Authorization or not.
<b>Local Authorization</b>	The user can enable or disable this option to enable Local Authorization or not.
<b>Method</b>	Use this drop-down menu to choose the authenticator for Web-based Access Control. The user may choose: <i>Local</i> – Choose this parameter to use the local authentication method of the Switch as the authenticating method for users trying to access the network via the switch. This is, in fact, the username and password to access the Switch configured using the WAC User Settings window ( <b>Security &gt; Web-based Access Control &gt; WAC User Settings</b> ) seen below. <i>RADIUS</i> – Choose this parameter to use a remote RADIUS server as the authenticating method for users trying to access the network via the switch. This RADIUS server must have already been pre-assigned by the administrator using the Authentication RADIUS Server Settings window ( <b>Security &gt; RADIUS &gt; Authentication RADIUS Server Settings</b> ).
<b>HTTP(S) Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter a HTTP port number. Port 80 is the default. <i>HTTP</i> – Specify that the TCP port will run the WAC HTTP protocol. The default value is 80. HTTP port cannot run at TCP port 443. <i>HTTPS</i> – Specify that the TCP port will run the WAC HTTPS protocol. The default value is 443. HTTPS cannot run at TCP port 80.
<b>Trap State</b>	Select to enable or disable WAC trap state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



**NOTE:** A successful authentication should direct the client to the stated web page. If the client does not reach this web page, yet does not receive a **Fail!** Message, the client will already be authenticated and therefore should refresh the current browser window or attempt to open a different web page.

## WAC User Settings

Users can view and set local database user accounts for Web authentication.

To view this window, click **Security > Web-based Access Control (WAC) > WAC User Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-40 WAC User Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the user name of up to 15 alphanumeric characters of the guest wishing to access the Web through this process. This field is for administrators who have selected <i>Local</i> as their Web-based authenticator.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the button and enter a VLAN Name in this field.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Click the button and enter a VID in this field.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password the administrator has chosen for the selected user. This field is case-sensitive and must be a complete alphanumeric string. This field is for administrators who have selected <i>Local</i> as their Web-based authenticator.
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Retype the password entered in the previous field.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit VLAN Name** button to re-configure the specific entry's VLAN Name.

Click the **Edit VID** button to re-configure the specific entry's VLAN ID.

Click the **Clear VLAN** button to remove the VLAN information from the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## WAC Port Settings

Users can view and set port configurations for Web authentication.

To view this window, click **Security > Web-based Access Control (WAC) > WAC Port Settings** as shown below:

**WAC Port Settings**
Safeguard

From Port:

Aging Time (1-1440):  min  Infinite

Idle Time (1-1440):  min  Infinite

To Port:

State:

Block Time (0-300):  sec

Port	State	Aging Time	Idle Time	Block Time
1	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
2	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
3	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
4	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
5	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
6	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
7	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
8	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
9	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
10	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
11	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
12	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
13	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
14	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
15	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
16	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
17	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
18	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
19	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
20	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
21	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
22	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
23	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60
24	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60

Figure 8-41 WAC Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be enabled as WAC ports.
<b>Aging Time (1-1440)</b>	Specify the time period during which an authenticated host will remain in the authenticated state. Enter a value between 1 and 1440 minutes. Tick the <b>Infinite</b> check box to indicate the authenticated host will never age out on the port. The default value is 1440 minutes (24 hours).
<b>State</b>	Use this drop-down menu to enable the configured ports as WAC ports.
<b>Idle Time (1-1440)</b>	If there is no traffic during the Idle Time parameter, the host will be moved back to the unauthenticated state. Enter a value between 1 and 1440 minutes. Tick the <b>Infinite</b> check box to indicate the Idle state of the authenticated host on the port will never be checked. The default value is <i>infinite</i> .
<b>Block Time (0-300)</b>	This parameter is the period of time a host will be blocked if it fails to pass authentication. Enter a value between 0 and 300 seconds. The default value is 60 seconds.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## WAC Authentication State

Users can view and delete the hosts for Web authentication.

To view this window, click **Security > Web-based Access Control (WAC) > WAC Authentication State** as shown below:

WAC Authentication State Safeguard

Port List (e.g.: 1, 5-10)

Port List (e.g.: 1, 5-10)   Authenticated  Authenticating  Blocked

Total Authenticating Hosts: 0  
 Total Authenticated Hosts: 0  
 Total Blocked Hosts: 0

Port	MAC Address	Original RX VID	State	VID	Assigned Priority	Aging Time / Block Time	Idle Time
------	-------------	-----------------	-------	-----	-------------------	-------------------------	-----------

Figure 8-42 WAC Authentication State window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port List</b>	Enter the desired range of ports and tick the appropriate check box(s), Authenticated, Authenticating, and Blocked.
<b>Authenticated</b>	Tick this check box to clear all authenticated users for a port.
<b>Authenticating</b>	Tick this check box to clear all authenticating users for a port.
<b>Blocked</b>	Tick this check box to clear all blocked users for a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear by Port** button to remove entry based on the port list entered.

Click the **View All Hosts** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Clear All Hosts** button to remove all the entries listed.

## WAC Customize Page

This window is used to customize the authenticate page elements.

To view this window, click **Security > Web-based Access Control (WAC) > WAC Customize Page** as shown below:



**Note:** Name should be less than 128 characters.

**Current Status:** **Un-Authenticated**

**Authentication Login**

User Name

Password

**Logout From The Network**

**Notification**

Figure 8-43 WAC Customize Page window

Complete the WAC authentication information in this window to set the WAC page settings. Click the **Apply** button to implement the changes made. Click the **Set to default** button to go back to the default settings of all elements.

## Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC)



### JWAC Global Settings


This window is used to enable and configure Japanese Web-based Access Control on the Switch. To use the JWAC feature, computer users need to pass through two stages of authentication. The first stage is to do the authentication with the quarantine server and the second stage is the authentication with the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) > JWAC Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-44 JWAC Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>JWAC State</b>	Click to enable or disable JWAC on the Switch.
<b>Virtual IPv4</b>	Enter the JWAC Virtual IP address that is used to accept authentication requests from an unauthenticated host. The Virtual IP address of JWAC is used to accept authentication requests from an unauthenticated host. Only requests sent to this IP will get a correct response.  <b>NOTE:</b> This IP does not respond to ARP requests or ICMP packets.
<b>IPv4 Virtual URL</b>	Enter the IPv4 Virtual URL used.
<b>Virtual IPv6</b>	Enter the JWAC Virtual IPv6 address that is used to accept authentication requests from an unauthenticated host.
<b>IPv6 Virtual URL</b>	Enter the IPv6 Virtual URL used.
<b>UDP Filtering</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable JWAC UDP Filtering. When UDP Filtering is <i>Enabled</i> , all UDP and ICMP packets except DHCP and DNS packets from unauthenticated hosts will be dropped.  <b>NOTE:</b> ICMPv6 packets will not be dropped because they utilize the Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP).
<b>Port Number (1-65535)</b>	Enter the TCP port that the JWAC Switch listens to and uses to finish the authenticating process.
<b>Forcible Logout</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable JWAC Forcible Logout. When Forcible Logout is <i>Enabled</i> , a Ping packet from an authenticated host to the JWAC Switch with TTL=1 will be regarded as a logout request, and the host will move back to the unauthenticated state.
<b>Authentication Protocol</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the RADIUS protocol used by JWAC to complete a RADIUS authentication. The options include <i>Local</i> , <i>EAP MD5</i> , <i>PAP</i> , <i>CHAP</i> , <i>MS CHAP</i> , and <i>MS CHAPv2</i> .
<b>Redirect State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable JWAC Redirect. When the redirect quarantine server is enabled, the unauthenticated host will be redirected to the quarantine server when it tries to access a random URL. When the

	<p>redirect JWAC login page is enabled, the unauthenticated host will be redirected to the JWAC login page in the Switch to finish authentication. When redirect is disabled, only access to the quarantine server and the JWAC login page from the unauthenticated host are allowed, all other web access will be denied.</p> <p> <b>NOTE:</b> When enabling redirect to the quarantine server, a quarantine server must be configured first.</p>
<b>Redirect Destination</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the destination before an unauthenticated host is redirected to either the <i>Quarantine Server</i> or the <i>JWAC Login Page</i> .
<b>Redirect Delay Time (0-10)</b>	Enter the Delay Time before an unauthenticated host is redirected to the Quarantine Server or JWAC Login Page. Enter a value between 0 and 10 seconds. A value of 0 indicates no delay in the redirect.
<b>RADIUS Authorization</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable this option to enable RADIUS Authorization or not.
<b>Local Authorization</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable this option to enable Local Authorization or not.
<b>Error Timeout (5-300)</b>	Enter the Quarantine Server Error Timeout. When the Quarantine Server Monitor is enabled, the JWAC Switch will periodically check if the Quarantine Server works okay. If the Switch does not receive any response from the Quarantine Server during the configured Error Timeout, the Switch then regards it as not working properly. Enter a value between 5 and 300 seconds.
<b>Monitor</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the JWAC Quarantine Server Monitor. When <i>Enabled</i> , the JWAC Switch will monitor the Quarantine Server to ensure the server is okay. If the Switch detects no Quarantine Server, it will redirect all unauthenticated HTTP access attempts to the JWAC Login Page forcibly if the Redirect is enabled and the Redirect Destination is configured to be a Quarantine Server.
<b>IPv4 URL</b>	Enter the JWAC Quarantine Server IPv4 URL. If the Redirect is enabled and the Redirect Destination is the Quarantine Server, when an unauthenticated host sends the HTTP request packets to a random Web server, the Switch will handle this HTTP packet and send back a message to the host to allow it access to the Quarantine Server with the configured URL. When a computer is connected to the specified URL, the quarantine server will request the computer user to input the user name and password to complete the authentication process.
<b>IPv6 URL</b>	Enter the JWAC Quarantine Server IPv6 URL.
<b>Update Server IP</b>	Enter the Update Server IP address.
<b>Update Server IPv6</b>	Enter the Update Server IPv6 address.
<b>Mask</b>	Specify the Server IP net mask.
<b>Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter the port number used by the Update Server.
<b>TCP</b>	Click the radio button to use TCP port.
<b>UDP</b>	Click the radio button to use UDP port.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specified entry.

## JWAC Port Settings

This window is used to configure JWAC port settings for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) > JWAC Port Settings** as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'JWAC Port Settings' window with the following configuration:

- From Port: 01
- To Port: 01
- State: Disabled
- Max Authenticating Host (0-50): 50
- Aging Time (1-1440): 1440 min,  Infinite
- Block Time (0-300): 60 sec
- Idle Time (1-1440):  min,  Infinite
- Authentication Mode: Host-based

Below the configuration fields is a table with the following data:

Port	State	Aging Time	Idle Time	Block Time	Authentication Mode	Max Host
1	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
2	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
3	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
4	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
5	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
6	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
7	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
8	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
9	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
10	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
11	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
12	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
13	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
14	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
15	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
16	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
17	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
18	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
19	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
20	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
21	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
22	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
23	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
24	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
25	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50
26	Disabled	1440	Infinite	60	Host-based	50

Figure 8-45 JWAC Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be enabled as JWAC ports.
<b>State</b>	Use this drop-down menu to enable the configured ports as JWAC ports.
<b>Max Authenticating Host (0-50)</b>	Enter the maximum number of host that process authentication on each port at the same time.
<b>Aging Time (1-1440)</b>	Specify the time period during which an authenticated host will remain in the authenticated state. Enter a value between 1 and 1440 minutes. Tick the <b>Infinite</b> check box to indicate the authenticated host will never age out on the port. The default value is 1440 minutes (24 hours).
<b>Idle Time (1-1440)</b>	If there is no traffic during the Idle Time parameter, the host will be moved back to the unauthenticated state. Enter a value between 1 and 1440 minutes. Tick the <b>Infinite</b> check box to indicate the Idle state of the authenticated host on the port will never be checked. The default value is <i>infinite</i> .
<b>Block Time (0-300)</b>	This parameter is the period of time a host will be blocked if it fails to pass authentication. Enter a value between 0 and 300 seconds. The default value is 60 seconds.
<b>Authentication Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select the port authentication mode to be either <i>Host-based</i> or <i>Port-based</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## JWAC User Settings

This window is used to configure JWAC user settings for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) > JWAC User Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-46 JWAC User Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the user name of up to 15 alphanumeric characters of the guest wishing to access the Web through this process. This field is for administrators who have selected <i>Local</i> as their Web-based authenticator.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Click the button and enter a VID in this field.
<b>Password</b>	Enter the password the administrator has chosen for the selected user. This field is case-sensitive and must be a complete alphanumeric string. This field is for administrators who have selected <i>Local</i> as their Web-based authenticator.
<b>Confirm Password</b>	Retype the password entered in the previous field.
<b>Old Password</b>	Enter the previous configured password.
<b>New Password</b>	Enter the newly updated password.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## JWAC Authentication State

This window is used to display Japanese web-based access control host table information.

To view this window, click **Security > Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) > JWAC Authentication State** as shown below:

Figure 8-47 JWAC Authentication State window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port List</b>	Enter the desired range of ports and tick the appropriate check box(s), Authenticated, Authenticating, and Blocked.
<b>Authenticated</b>	Tick this check box to clear all authenticated users for a port.

<b>Authenticating</b>	Tick this check box to clear all authenticating users for a port.
<b>Blocked</b>	Tick this check box to clear all blocked users for a port.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear** button to remove entry based on the port list entered.

Click the **View All Hosts** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Clear All Hosts** button to remove all the entries listed.

## JWAC Customize Page Language

This window is used to configure JWAC page language settings for the Switch. The current firmware supports either English or Japanese.

To view this window, click **Security > Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) > JWAC Customize Page Language** as shown below:

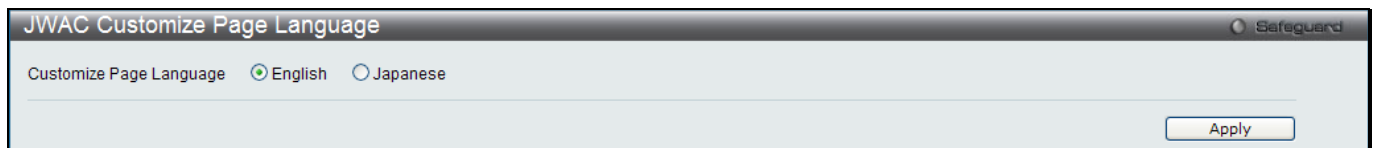


Figure 8-48 JWAC Customize Page Language window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Customize Page Language</b>	Click to select the language of JWAC Customize Page, either English or Japanese.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## JWAC Customize Page

This window is used to configure JWAC page settings for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Japanese Web-based Access Control (JWAC) > JWAC Customize Page** as shown below:

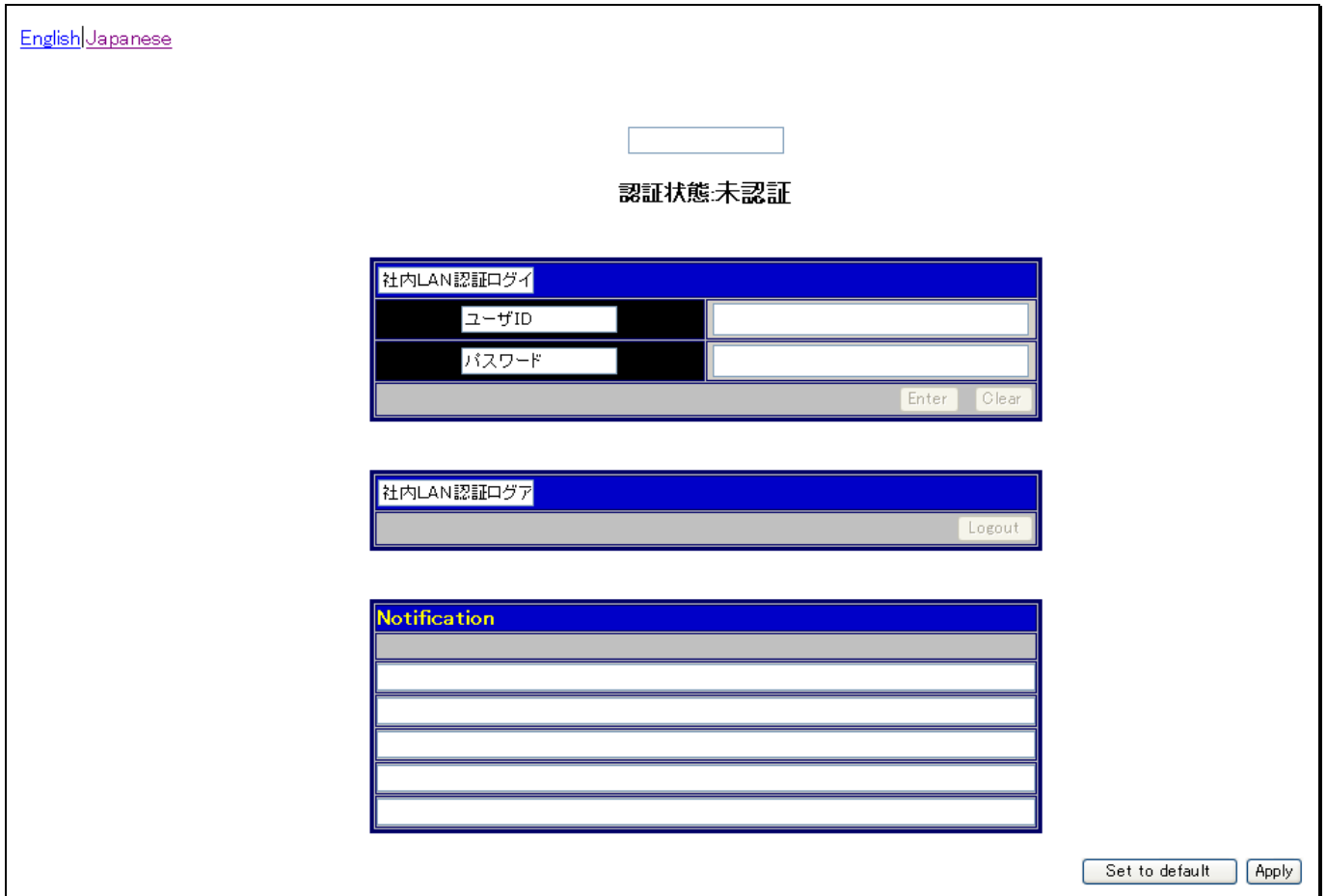


Figure 8-49 JWAC Customize Page - Japanese window

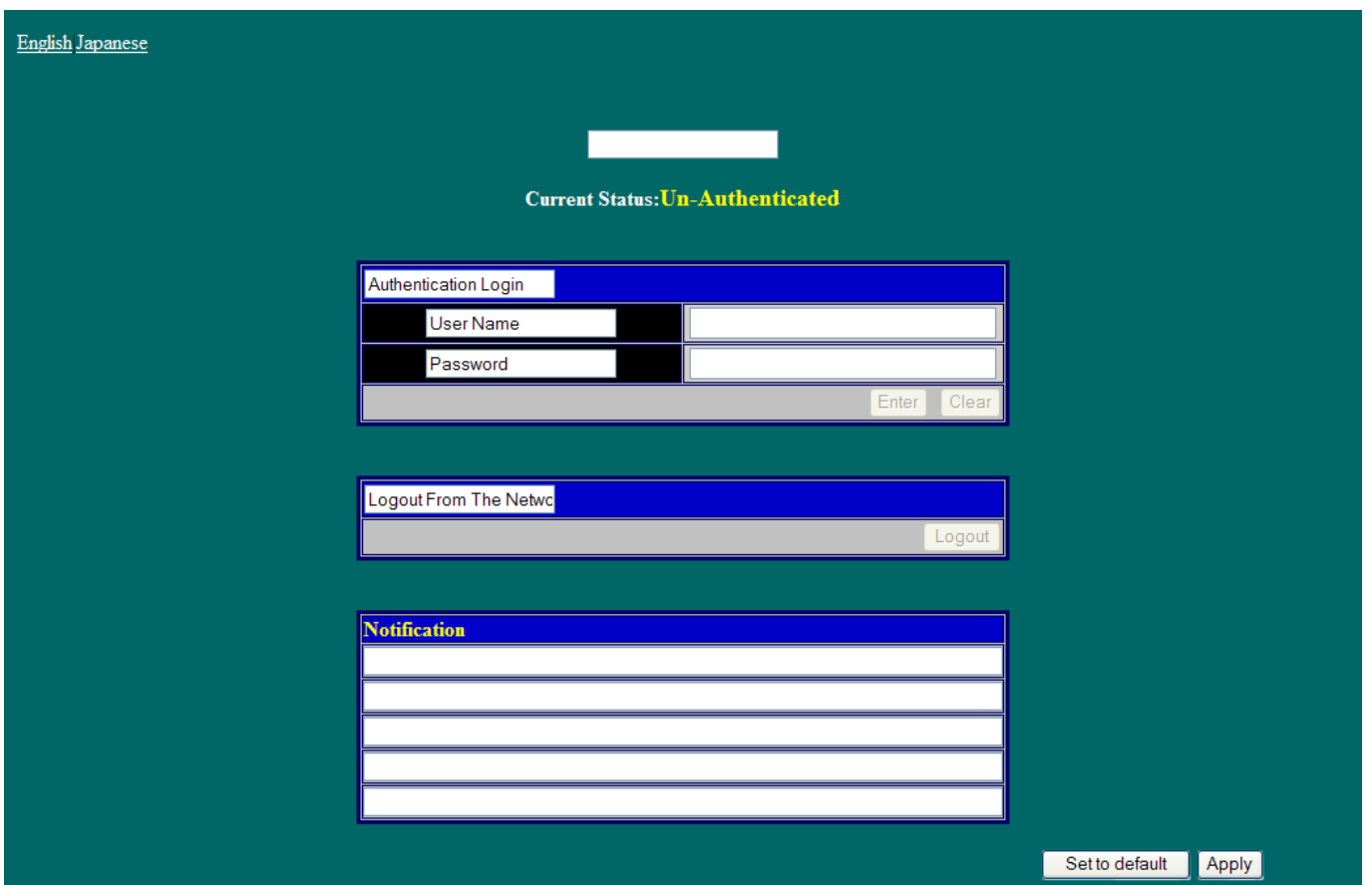


Figure 8-50 JWAC Customize Page - English window

Complete the JWAC authentication information in this window to set the JWAC page settings. Click the **Apply** button to implement the changes made. Click the **Set to default** button to go back to the default settings of all elements.

## Compound Authentication

Compound Authentication settings allows for multiple authentication to be supported on the Switch.

## Compound Authentication Settings

Users can configure Authorization Network State Settings and compound authentication methods for a port or ports on the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Compound Authentication > Compound Authentication Settings** as shown below:

Port	Authentication Methods	Authorized Mode	Authentication VLAN
1	None	Host-based	
2	None	Host-based	
3	None	Host-based	
4	None	Host-based	
5	None	Host-based	
6	None	Host-based	
7	None	Host-based	
8	None	Host-based	
9	None	Host-based	
10	None	Host-based	
11	None	Host-based	
12	None	Host-based	
13	None	Host-based	
14	None	Host-based	
15	None	Host-based	
16	None	Host-based	
17	None	Host-based	
18	None	Host-based	
19	None	Host-based	
20	None	Host-based	

Figure 8-51 Compound Authentication Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Authorization Attributes State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the Authorization Attributes State.
<b>Authentication Server Failover</b>	Click the radio buttons to configure the authentication server failover function. <b>Block</b> (default setting). The client is always regarded as un-authenticated. <b>Local</b> . The switch will resort to using the local database to authenticate the client. If the client fails on local authentication, the client is regarded as un-authenticated, otherwise, it is authenticated. <b>Permit</b> . The client is always regarded as authenticated. If guest VLAN is enabled, clients will stay on the guest VLAN, otherwise, they will stay on the original VLAN.



<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be enabled as compound authentication ports.
<b>Authentication Methods</b>	<p>The compound authentication method options include: <i>None</i>, <i>Any (MAC, 802.1X, JWAC or WAC)</i>, <i>802.1X+IMPB</i>, <i>IMPB+JWAC</i>, <i>IMPB+WAC</i>, <i>MAC+IMPB</i>, <i>MAC+JWAC</i>, and <i>MAC+WAC</i>. If the compound authentication method selected includes IMPB and all other methods (802.1X, JWAC, WAC or MAC) are globally disabled, only IMPB will be used. If the <i>MAC+JWAC</i> or <i>MAC+WAC</i> option is selected, both authentication methods will be applied. If one of the authentication methods fail or is globally disabled, then access will be denied.</p> <p><i>None</i> - all compound authentication methods are disabled.</p> <p><i>Any (MAC, 802.1X, JWAC or WAC)</i> - if any of the authentication methods pass, then access will be granted. In this mode, MAC, 802.1X, JWAC and WAC can be enabled on a port at the same time. In <i>Any (MAC, 802.1X, JWAC or WAC)</i> mode, whether an individual security module is active on a port depends on its system state.</p> <p><i>802.1X+IMPB</i> - 802.1X will be verified first, and then IMPB will be verified. Both authentication methods need to be passed.</p> <p><i>IMPB+JWAC</i> - JWAC will be verified first, and then IMPB will be verified. Both authentication methods need to be passed.</p> <p><i>IMPB+WAC</i> - WAC will be verified first, and then IMPB will be verified. Both authentication methods need to be passed.</p> <p><i>MAC+IMPB</i> - MAC will be verified first, and then IMPB will be verified. Both authentication methods need to be passed.</p> <p><i>MAC+JWAC</i> - MAC will be verified first, and then JWAC will be verified. Both authentication methods need to be passed.</p> <p><i>MAC+WAC</i> - MAC will be verified first, and then WAC will be verified. Both authentication methods need to be passed.</p>
<b>Authorized Mode</b>	Toggle between <i>Host-based</i> and <i>Port-based</i> . When <i>Port-based</i> is selected, if one of the attached hosts passes the authentication, all hosts on the same port will be granted access to the network. If the user fails the authorization, this port will keep trying the next authentication method. When <i>Host-based</i> is selected, users are authenticated individually.
<b>VID List</b>	When <i>Host-based</i> is selected in <b>Authorized Mode</b> , enter a list of VLAN IDs. When the VID List is entered, hosts that belong to the specified VLANs need to be authenticated to be able to access the network. Hosts that belong to VLANs, which are not specified in the VID List, do not need to be authenticated to be able to access the network.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to assign or remove the specified VID list as authentication VLAN(s).

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Compound Authentication Guest VLAN Settings

Users can assign ports to or remove ports from a guest VLAN.

To view this window, click **Security > Compound Authentication > Compound Authentication Guest VLAN Settings** as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Compound Authentication Guest VLAN Settings' window. It includes the following elements:

- Guest VLAN Settings:**
  - VLAN Name: [Text Input Field]
  - VID (1-4094): [Text Input Field]
  - Port List (e.g.: 1, 6-9): [Text Input Field]
  - All Ports
  - Action: [Create VLAN ▼]
  - [Apply]
- Guest VLAN Table Total Entries: 0**
- VID** | **Member Ports**

Figure 8-52 Compound Authentication Guest VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the button and assign a VLAN as a Guest VLAN. The VLAN must be an existing static VLAN.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Click the button and assign a VLAN ID for a Guest VLAN. The VLAN must be an existing static VLAN before this VID can be configured.
<b>Port List</b>	The list of ports to be configured. Alternatively, tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to set every port at once.
<b>Action</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the desired operation: <i>Create VLAN</i> , <i>Add Ports</i> , or <i>Delete Ports</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Once properly configured, the Guest VLAN and associated ports will be listed in the lower part of the window.

## Compound Authentication MAC Format Settings

This window is used to configure the MAC address format to be used for authenticating the user name via the RADIUS server.

To view this window, click **Security > Compound Authentication > Compound Authentication MAC Format Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-53 Compound Authentication MAC Format Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Case</b>	Select to use uppercase or lowercase format.
<b>Delimiter</b>	Select to have <i>Hyphen</i> , <i>Colon</i> or <i>Dot</i> when entering the MAC address. Select <i>None</i> for not having any delimiter.
<b>Delimiter Number</b>	Select number of delimiters in the MAC address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Port Security

### Port Security Settings

A given port's (or a range of ports') dynamic MAC address learning can be locked such that the current source MAC addresses entered into the MAC address forwarding table cannot be changed once the port lock is enabled. The port can be locked by changing the **Admin State** drop-down menu to *Enabled* and clicking **Apply**.

Port Security is a security feature that prevents unauthorized computers (with source MAC addresses) unknown to the Switch prior to locking the port (or ports) from connecting to the Switch's locked ports and gaining access to the network.

To view this window, click **Security > Port Security > Port Security Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-54 Port Security Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port Security Trap/Log Settings</b>	Click to enable or disable Port Security Traps and Logs on the Switch.
<b>System Maximum Address (1-3328)</b>	Enter the system maximum address. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have unlimited system addresses.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>Admin State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable Port Security (locked MAC address table for the selected ports).
<b>Lock Address Mode</b>	This drop-down menu allows the option of how the MAC address table locking will be implemented on the Switch, for the selected group of ports. The options are: <i>DeleteOnReset</i> – The locked addresses will not age out until the Switch has been reset or rebooted. <i>DeleteOnTimeout</i> – The locked addresses will age out after the aging timer expires. <i>Permanent</i> – The locked addresses will only age out after the Switch has been reset.
<b>Max Learning Address (0-3328)</b>	Specify the maximum value of port security entries that can be learned on this port.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **View Details** button to display the information of the specific entry.

After clicking the **View Details** button, the following page will appear:

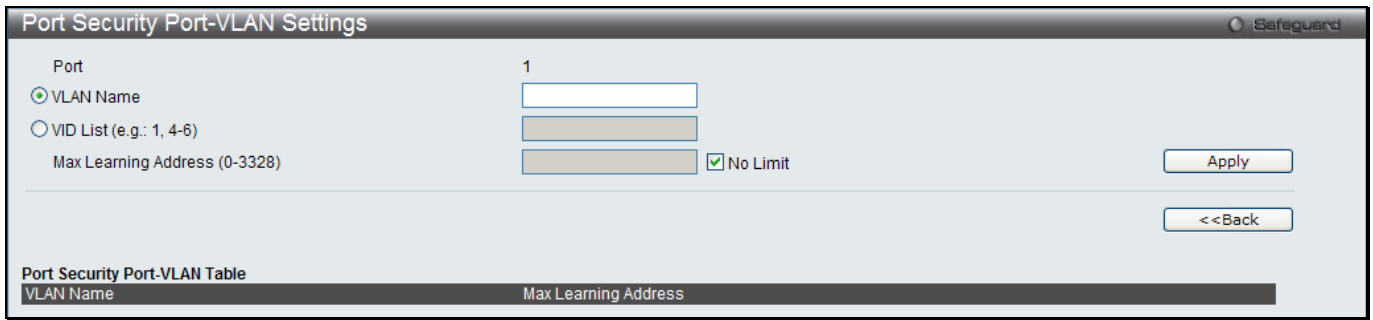


Figure 8-55 Port Security Port-VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the button and enter the name of the VLAN that the port security settings will be displayed for.
<b>VID List</b>	Click the button and enter VLAN IDs that the port security settings will be displayed for.
<b>Max Learning Address (0-3328)</b>	Specify the maximum value of port security entries that can be learned on this port. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have unlimited number of port security entries that can be learned by the system.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## Port Security VLAN Settings

Users can configure the maximum number of port-security entries that can be learned on a specific VLAN.

To view this window, click **Security > Port Security > Port Security VLAN Settings** as shown below:

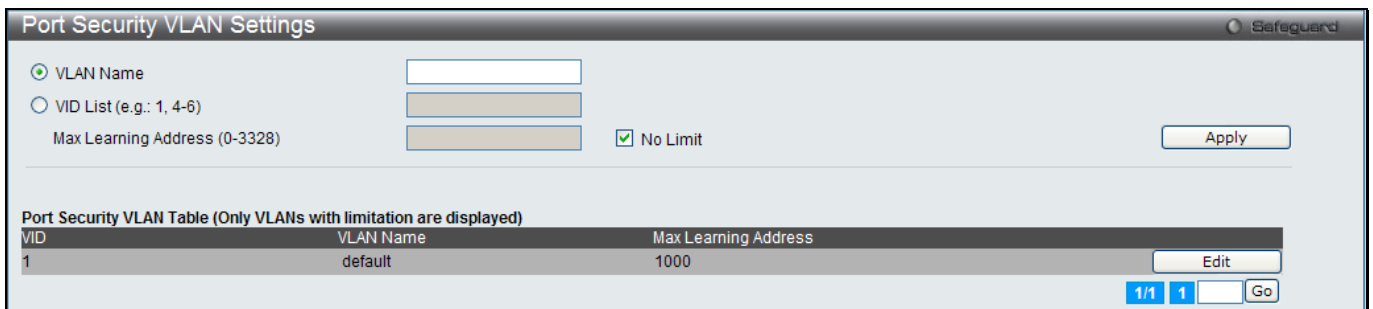


Figure 8-56 Port Security VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN Name.
<b>VID List</b>	Specify a list of the VLAN be VLAN ID.
<b>Max Learning Address (0-3328)</b>	Specify the maximum number of port-security entries that can be learned by this VLAN. Tick the <b>No Limit</b> check box to have unlimited number of port security entries that can be learned by the VLAN.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## Port Security Entries

Users can remove an entry from the port security entries learned by the Switch and entered into the forwarding database.

To view this window, click **Security > Port Security > Port Security Entries** as shown below:

Figure 8-57 Port Security Entries window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VLAN Name</b>	The VLAN Name of the entry in the forwarding database table that has been permanently learned by the Switch.
<b>VID List</b>	The VLAN ID of the entry in the forwarding database table that has been permanently learned by the Switch.
<b>Port List</b>	Enter the port number or list here to be used for the port security entry search. When <b>All</b> is selected, all the ports configured will be displayed.
<b>MAC Address</b>	The MAC address of the entry in the forwarding database table that has been permanently learned by the Switch.
<b>Lock Mode</b>	The type of MAC address in the forwarding database table.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the entries based on the information entered.

Click the **Show All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Enter a page number and click the **Go** button to navigate to a specific page when multiple pages exist.

## ARP Spoofing Prevention Settings

The user can configure the spoofing prevention entry to prevent spoofing of MAC for the protected gateway. When an entry is created, those ARP packets whose sender IP matches the gateway IP of an entry, but its source MAC field does not match the gateway MAC of the entry will be dropped by the system.

To view this window, click **Security > ARP Spoofing Prevention Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-58 ARP Spoofing Prevention Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Gateway IP Address</b>	Enter the gateway IP address to help prevent ARP Spoofing.
<b>Gateway MAC Address</b>	Enter the gateway MAC address to help prevent ARP Spoofing.
<b>Ports</b>	Enter the port numbers that this feature applies to. Alternatively the user can select <b>All Ports</b> to apply this feature to all the ports of the switch.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## BPDU Attack Protection

This page is used to configure the BPDU protection function for the ports on the switch. In generally, there are two states in BPDU protection function. One is normal state, and another is under attack state. The under attack state have three modes: drop, block, and shutdown. A BPDU protection enabled port will enter an under attack state when it receives one STP BPDU packet. And it will take action based on the configuration. Thus, BPDU protection can only be enabled on the STP-disabled port.

BPDU protection has a higher priority than the FBPDU setting configured by configure STP command in the determination of BPDU handling. That is, when FBPDU is configured to forward STP BPDU but BPDU protection is enabled, then the port will not forward STP BPDU.

BPDU protection also has a higher priority than the BPDU tunnel port setting in determination of BPDU handling. That is, when a port is configured as BPDU tunnel port for STP, it will forward STP BPDU. But if the port is BPDU protection enabled. Then the port will not forward STP BPDU.

To view this window, click **Security > BPDU Attack Protection** as shown below:

**BPDU Attack Protection Global Settings**

BPDU Attack Protection State:  Enabled  Disabled Apply

Trap State:  Log State:  Apply

Recover Time (60-1000000):  sec  Infinite Apply

From Port:  To Port:  State:  Mode:  Apply

Port	State	Mode	Status
1	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
2	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
3	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
4	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
5	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
6	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
7	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
8	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
9	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
10	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
11	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
12	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
13	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
14	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
15	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
16	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
17	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
18	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
19	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal
20	Disabled	Shutdown	Normal

Figure 8-59 BPDU Attack Protection window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>BPDU Attack Protection State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the BPDU Attack Protection state.
<b>Trap State</b>	Specify when a trap will be sent. Options to choose from are <b>None</b> , <b>Attack Detected</b> , <b>Attack Cleared</b> or <b>Both</b> .
<b>Log State</b>	Specify when a log entry will be sent. Options to choose from are <b>None</b> , <b>Attack Detected</b> , <b>Attack Cleared</b> or <b>Both</b> .
<b>Recover Time (60-1000000)</b>	Specify the BPDU protection Auto-Recovery timer. The default value of the recovery timer is 60. Tick the <b>Infinite</b> check box so that the port will not recovered automatically.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports to use for this configuration.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the protection mode for a specific port.
<b>Mode</b>	Specify the BPDU protection mode. The default mode is shutdown. <i>Drop</i> – Drop all received BPDU packets when the port enters under attack state. <i>Block</i> – Drop all packets (include BPDU and normal packets) when the port enters under attack state. <i>Shutdown</i> – Shut down the port when the port enters under attack state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Loopback Detection Settings

The Loopback Detection (LBD) function is used to detect the loop created by a specific port. This feature is used to temporarily shut down a port on the Switch when a CTP (Configuration Testing Protocol) packet has been looped back to the Switch. When the Switch detects CTP packets received from a port or a VLAN, this signifies a loop on the network. The Switch will automatically block the port or the VLAN and send an alert to the administrator. The



Loopback Detection port will restart (change to normal state) when the Loopback Detection Recover Time times out. The Loopback Detection function can be implemented on a range of ports at a time. The user may enable or disable this function using the drop-down menu.



**NOTE:** LBD should be disabled on the ring ports before enabling ERPS.

To view this window, click **Security > Loopback Detection Settings** as shown below:

Port	Loopback Detection State	Loop Status
1	Disabled	Normal
2	Disabled	Normal
3	Disabled	Normal
4	Disabled	Normal
5	Disabled	Normal
6	Disabled	Normal
7	Disabled	Normal
8	Disabled	Normal
9	Disabled	Normal
10	Disabled	Normal
11	Disabled	Normal
12	Disabled	Normal
13	Disabled	Normal
14	Disabled	Normal

Figure 8-60 Loopback Detection Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Loopback Detection State</b>	Use the radio button to enable or disable loopback detection. The default is Disabled.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to toggle between <i>Port-based</i> and <i>VLAN-based</i> .
<b>Trap State</b>	Set the desired trap status: <i>None</i> , <i>Loop Detected</i> , <i>Loop Cleared</i> , or <i>Both</i> .
<b>Log State</b>	Specify the state of the log for loopback detection.
<b>Interval (1-32767)</b>	The time interval (in seconds) that the device will transmit all the CTP (Configuration Test Protocol) packets to detect a loop-back event. The valid range is from 1 to 32767 seconds. The default setting is 10 seconds.
<b>Recover Time (0 or 60-1000000)</b>	Time allowed (in seconds) for recovery when a Loopback is detected. The Loop-detect Recover Time can be set at 0 seconds, or 60 to 1000000 seconds. Entering 0 will disable the Loop-detect Recover Time. The default is 60 seconds.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to toggle between <i>Enabled</i> and <i>Disabled</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



## Traffic Segmentation Settings

Traffic segmentation is used to limit traffic flow from a single or group of ports, to a group of ports. This method of segmenting the flow of traffic is similar to using VLANs to limit traffic, but is more restrictive. It provides a method of directing traffic that does not increase the overhead of the master switch CPU.

To view this window, click **Security > Traffic Segmentation Settings** as shown below:

Port	Forward Port List
1	1-26
2	1-26
3	1-26
4	1-26
5	1-26
6	1-26
7	1-26
8	1-26
9	1-26
10	1-26
11	1-26
12	1-26
13	1-26
14	1-26
15	1-26
16	1-26
17	1-26
18	1-26
19	1-26
20	1-26
21	1-26
22	1-26
23	1-26
24	1-26
25	1-26
26	1-26

Figure 8-61 Traffic Segmentation Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port List</b>	Enter a list of ports to be included in the traffic segmentation setup. Tick the <b>All ports</b> check box to select all ports.
<b>Forward Port List</b>	Enter a list of ports to be included in the traffic segmentation setup. by simply ticking the corresponding port's tick box. Tick the <b>All ports</b> check box to select all ports.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## NetBIOS Filtering Settings

NetBIOS is an application programming interface, providing a set of functions that applications use to communicate across networks. NetBEUI, the NetBIOS Enhanced User Interface, was created as a data-link-layer frame structure for NetBIOS. A simple mechanism to carry NetBIOS traffic, NetBEUI has been the protocol of choice for small MS-DOS- and Windows-based workgroups. NetBIOS no longer lives strictly inside of the NetBEUI protocol. Microsoft worked to create the international standards described in RFC 1001 and RFC 1002, NetBIOS over TCP/IP (NBT).

If the network administrator wants to block the network communication on more than two computers which use NETBUEI protocol, it can use NETBIOS filtering to filter these kinds of packets.

If the user enables the NETBIOS filter, the switch will create one access profile and three access rules automatically. If the user enables the extensive NETBIOS filter, the switch will create one more access profile and one more access rule.

To view this window, click **Security > NetBIOS Filtering Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-62 NetBIOS Filtering Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>NetBIOS Filtering</b>	Select the appropriate port to include in the NetBIOS filtering configuration.
<b>Extensive NetBIOS Filtering</b>	Select the appropriate port to include in the Extensive NetBIOS filtering configuration. Extensive NetBIOS is NetBIOS over 802.3. The Switch will deny the NetBIOS over 802.3 frame on these enabled ports.
<b>Ports</b>	Tick the appropriate ports to be configured.

Click the **Select All** button to select all ports.

Click the **Clear All** button to deselect all ports.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## DHCP Server Screening

This function allows the user to not only to restrict all DHCP Server packets but also to receive any specified DHCP server packet by any specified DHCP client, it is useful when one or more DHCP servers are present on the network and both provide DHCP services to different distinct groups of clients.

The first time the DHCP filter is enabled it will create both an access profile entry and an access rule per port entry, it will also create other access rules. These rules are used to block all DHCP server packets. In addition to a permit DHCP entry it will also create one access profile and one access rule entry the first time the DHCP client MAC address is used as the client MAC address. The Source IP address is the same as the DHCP server's IP address (UDP port number 67). These rules are used to permit the DHCP server packets with specific fields, which the user has configured.

When DHCP Server filter function is enabled all DHCP Server packets will be filtered from a specific port.

## DHCP Server Screening Port Settings

The Switch supports DHCP Server Screening, a feature that denies access to rogue DHCP servers. When the DHCP server filter function is enabled, all DHCP server packets will be filtered from a specific port.

To view this window, click **Security > DHCP Server Screening > DHCP Server Screening Port Settings** as shown below:

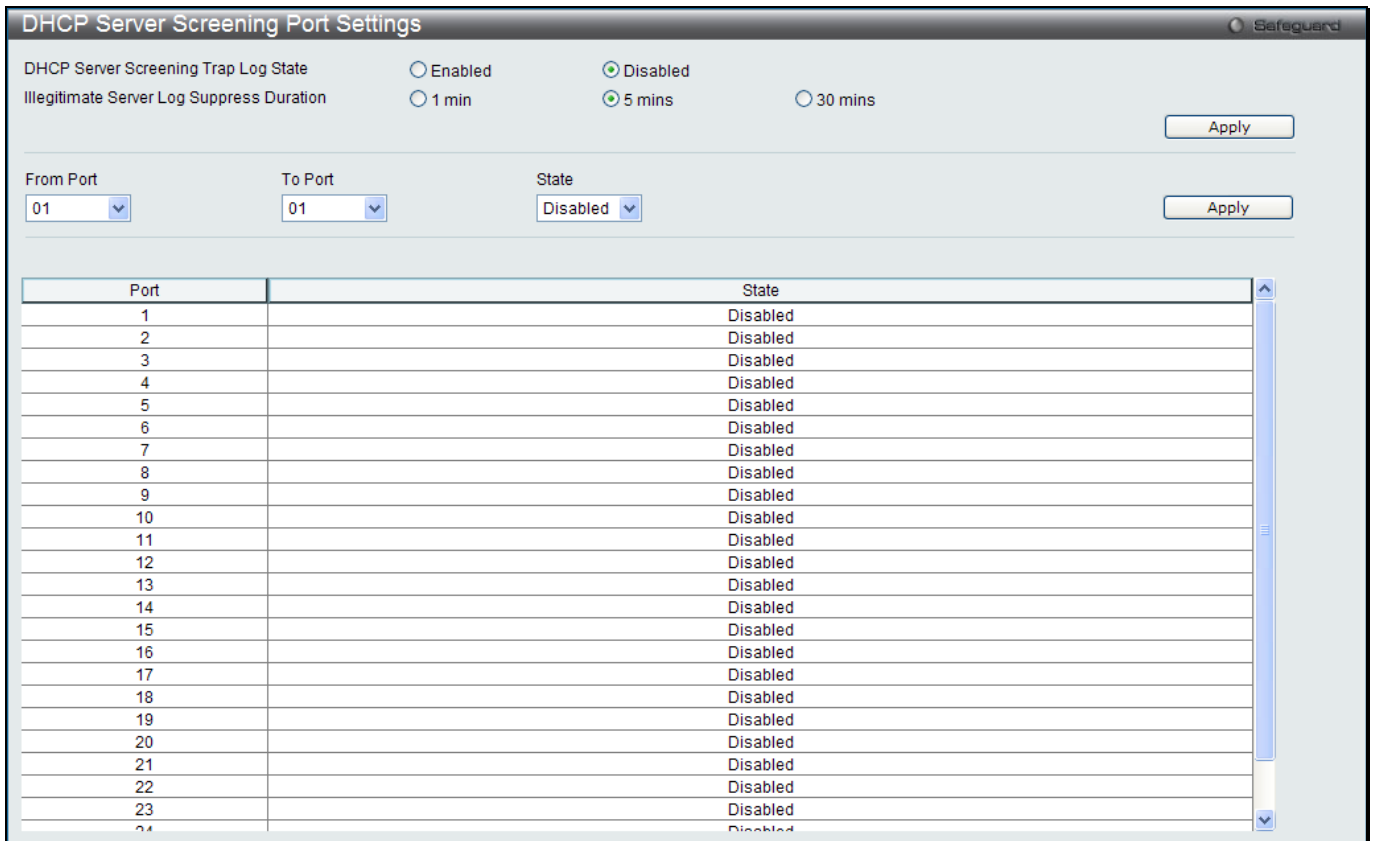


Figure 8-63 DHCP Server Screening Port Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCP Server Screening Trap Log State</b>	Click to enable or disable filtering DHCP server trap and log.
<b>Illegitimate Server Log Suppress Duration</b>	Choose an illegal server log suppress duration of 1 minute, 5 minutes, or 30 minutes.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>State</b>	Choose <i>Enabled</i> to enable the DHCP server screening or <i>Disabled</i> to disable it. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## DHCP Offer Permit Entry Settings

Users can add or delete permit entries on this page.

To view this window, click **Security > DHCP Server Screening > DHCP Offer Permit Entry Settings** as shown below:

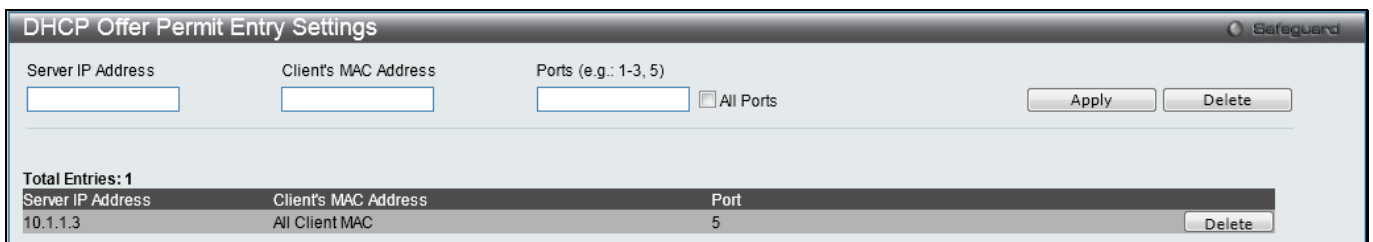


Figure 8-64 DHCP Offer Permit Entry Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Server IP Address</b>	The IP address of the DHCP server to be permitted.
<b>Client's MAC Address</b>	Enter the client's MAC address. Leave it blank to received packets from all client's MAC address.
<b>Ports</b>	The port numbers of the filter DHCP server. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to include all the ports on this switch for this configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## Filter DHCPv6 Server

This window is used to configure the filter DHCPv6 server state.

To view this window, click **Security > DHCP Server Screening > Filter DHCPv6 Server** as shown below:

The screenshot shows the 'Filter DHCPv6 Server' configuration window. It includes the following elements:

- Log State:** Radio buttons for 'Enabled' (selected) and 'Disabled'.
- Trap State:** Radio buttons for 'Enabled' and 'Disabled' (selected).
- Filter DHCPv6 Server State:** A text input for 'Ports (e.g.: 1-3, 5)', an 'All Ports' checkbox, and a 'State' dropdown menu set to 'Disabled'. An 'Apply' button is present.
- DHCPv6 Server Permit:** A text input for 'Source IP Address', a text input for 'Ports (e.g.: 1-3, 5)', and an 'All Ports' checkbox. 'Apply' and 'Delete' buttons are present.
- Total Entries:** A table with 1 entry:
 

Source IP Address	Ports
FF::11	1-26

 A 'Delete' button is next to the entry.

Figure 8-65 Filter DHCPv6 Server window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Log State</b>	Click to enable or disable the filter DHCPv6 server log state.
<b>Trap State</b>	Click to enable or disable the filter DHCPv6 server trap state.
<b>Ports</b>	Enter a range of ports to be configured. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to include all the ports on this switch for this configuration.
<b>State</b>	Select to enable or disable the filter DHCPv6 server state.
<b>Source IP Address</b>	Enter the source IPv6 address to the filter DHCPv6 server forward list.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

## Filter ICMPv6

This window is used to configure the filter ICMPv6 RA all nodes trap and log state, and filter ICMPv6 RA all nodes settings.

To view this window, click **Security > DHCP Server Screening > Filter ICMPv6** as shown below:

Figure 8-66 Filter ICMPv6 window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Trap State</b>	Click to enable or disable the filter ICMPv6 RA all nodes trap state.
<b>Log State</b>	Click to enable or disable the filter ICMPv6 RA all nodes log state.
<b>Ports</b>	Enter a range of ports to be configured. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to include all the ports on this switch for this configuration.
<b>State</b>	Select to enable or disable the filter ICMPv6 RA all nodes state.
<b>Source IP Address</b>	Enter the source IPv6 address to the filter ICMPv6 RA all nodes forward list.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

## Access Authentication Control

The TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS commands allow users to secure access to the Switch using the TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS protocols. When a user logs in to the Switch or tries to access the administrator level privilege, he or she is prompted for a password. If TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS authentication is enabled on the Switch, it will contact a TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS server to verify the user. If the user is verified, he or she is granted access to the Switch.

There are currently three versions of the TACACS security protocol, each a separate entity. The Switch's software supports the following versions of TACACS:

- **TACACS** (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System) - Provides password checking and authentication, and notification of user actions for security purposes utilizing via one or more centralized TACACS servers, utilizing the UDP protocol for packet transmission.
- **Extended TACACS (XTACACS)** - An extension of the TACACS protocol with the ability to provide more types of authentication requests and more types of response codes than TACACS. This protocol also uses UDP to transmit packets.
- **TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System plus)** - Provides detailed access control for authentication for network devices. TACACS+ is facilitated through Authentication commands via one or more centralized servers. The TACACS+ protocol encrypts all traffic between the Switch and the TACACS+ daemon, using the TCP protocol to ensure reliable delivery

In order for the TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS security function to work properly, a TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS server must be configured on a device other than the Switch, called an Authentication Server Host and it must include usernames and passwords for authentication. When the user is prompted by the Switch to enter usernames and passwords for authentication, the Switch contacts the TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS server to verify, and the server will respond with one of three messages:

The server verifies the username and password, and the user is granted normal user privileges on the Switch.

The server will not accept the username and password and the user is denied access to the Switch.

The server doesn't respond to the verification query. At this point, the Switch receives the timeout from the server and then moves to the next method of verification configured in the method list.

The Switch has four built-in Authentication Server Groups, one for each of the TACACS, XTACACS, TACACS+ and RADIUS protocols. These built-in Authentication Server Groups are used to authenticate users trying to access the Switch. The users will set Authentication Server Hosts in a preferable order in the built-in Authentication Server Groups and when a user tries to gain access to the Switch, the Switch will ask the first Authentication Server Hosts for authentication. If no authentication is made, the second server host in the list will be queried, and so on. The built-in Authentication Server Groups can only have hosts that are running the specified protocol. For example, the TACACS Authentication Server Groups can only have TACACS Authentication Server Hosts.

The administrator for the Switch may set up six different authentication techniques per user-defined method list (TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS / local / none) for authentication. These techniques will be listed in an order preferable, and defined by the user for normal user authentication on the Switch, and may contain up to eight authentication techniques. When a user attempts to access the Switch, the Switch will select the first technique listed for authentication. If the first technique goes through its Authentication Server Hosts and no authentication is returned, the Switch will then go to the next technique listed in the server group for authentication, until the authentication has been verified or denied, or the list is exhausted.

Users granted access to the Switch will be granted normal user privileges on the Switch. To gain access to administrator level privileges, the user must access the **Enable Admin** window and then enter a password, which was previously configured by the administrator of the Switch.



**NOTE:** TACACS, XTACACS and TACACS+ are separate entities and are not compatible. The Switch and the server must be configured exactly the same, using the same protocol. (For example, if the Switch is set up for TACACS authentication, so must be the host server.)

## Enable Admin

Users who have logged on to the Switch on the normal user level and wish to be promoted to the administrator level can use this window. After logging on to the Switch, users will have only user level privileges. To gain access to administrator level privileges, the user will open this window and will have to enter an authentication password. Possible authentication methods for this function include TACACS/XTACACS/TACACS+/RADIUS, user defined server groups, local enable (local account on the Switch), or no authentication (none). Because XTACACS and TACACS do not support the enable function, the user must create a special account on the server host, which has the username "enable", and a password configured by the administrator that will support the "enable" function. This function becomes inoperable when the authentication policy is disabled.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Enable Admin** as shown below:

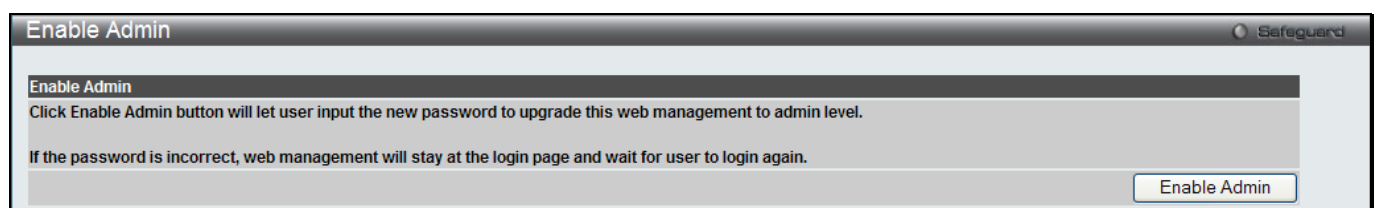


Figure 8-67 Enable Admin window

When this window appears, click the **Enable Admin** button revealing a window for the user to enter authentication (password, username), as shown below. A successful entry will promote the user to Administrator level privileges on the Switch.



Figure 8-68 Log-in Page

## Authentication Policy Settings

Users can enable an administrator-defined authentication policy for users trying to access the Switch. When enabled, the device will check the Login Method List and choose a technique for user authentication upon login. To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Authentication Policy Settings** as shown below:

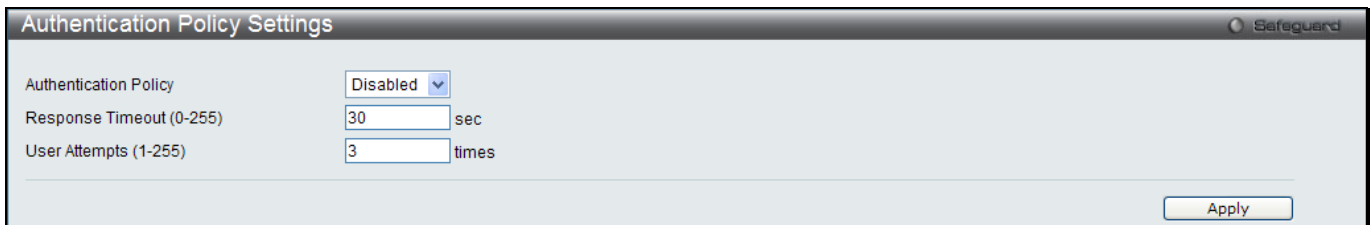


Figure 8-69 Authentication Policy Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Authentication Policy</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the Authentication Policy on the Switch.
<b>Response Timeout (0-255)</b>	This field will set the time the Switch will wait for a response of authentication from the user. The user may set a time between 0 and 255 seconds. The default setting is 30 seconds.
<b>User Attempts (1-255)</b>	This command will configure the maximum number of times the Switch will accept authentication attempts. Users failing to be authenticated after the set amount of attempts will be denied access to the Switch and will be locked out of further authentication attempts. Command line interface users will have to wait 60 seconds before another authentication attempt. Telnet and web users will be disconnected from the Switch. The user may set the number of attempts from 1 to 255. The default setting is 3.



Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Application Authentication Settings

Users can configure Switch configuration applications (Console, Telnet, SSH, HTTP) for login at the user level and at the administration level (Enable Admin) utilizing a previously configured method list.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Application Authentication Settings** as shown below:

Application	Login Method List	Enable Method List
Console	default	default
Telnet	default	default
SSH	default	default
HTTP	default	default

Apply

**Figure 8-70 Application Authentication Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Application</b>	Lists the configuration applications on the Switch. The user may configure the Login Method List and Enable Method List for authentication for users utilizing the Console (Command Line Interface) application, the Telnet application, SSH, and the Web (HTTP) application.
<b>Login Method List</b>	Using the drop-down menu, configure an application for normal login on the user level, utilizing a previously configured method list. The user may use the default Method List or other Method List configured by the user. See the Login Method Lists window, in this section, for more information.
<b>Enable Method List</b>	Using the drop-down menu, configure an application to promote user level to admin-level users utilizing a previously configured method list. The user may use the default Method List or other Method List configured by the user. See the Enable Method Lists window, in this section, for more information.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Authentication Server Group Settings

Users can set up Authentication Server Groups on the Switch. A server group is a technique used to group TACACS/XTACACS/TACACS+/RADIUS server hosts into user-defined categories for authentication using method lists. The user may define the type of server group by protocol or by previously defined server group. The Switch has four built-in Authentication Server Groups that cannot be removed but can be modified. Up to eight authentication server hosts may be added to any particular group.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Authentication Server Group Settings** as shown below:



Total Entries: 4		
Group Name	Edit	Delete
radius	Edit	Delete
tacacs	Edit	Delete
tacacs+	Edit	Delete
xtacacs	Edit	Delete

Figure 8-71 Authentication Server Group Settings – Server Group List window

This window displays the Authentication Server Groups on the Switch. The Switch has four built-in Authentication Server Groups that cannot be removed but can be modified. To add a new Server Group, enter a name in the **Group Name** field and then click the **Add** button. To modify a particular group, click the **Edit** button (or the **Edit Server Group** tab), which will then display the following **Edit Server Group** tab:

Host List	
IP Address	Protocol

Figure 8-72 Authentication Server Group Settings – Edit Server Group window

To add an Authentication Server Host to the list, enter its name in the **Group Name** field, IP address in the **IP Address** field, use the drop-down menu to choose the **Protocol** associated with the IP address of the Authentication Server Host, and then click **Add** to add this Authentication Server Host to the group. The entry should appear in the Host List at the bottom of this tab.



**NOTE:** The user must configure Authentication Server Hosts using the Authentication Server Settings window before adding hosts to the list. Authentication Server Hosts must be configured for their specific protocol on a remote centralized server before this function can work properly.



**NOTE:** The three built-in server groups can only have server hosts running the same TACACS daemon. TACACS/XTACACS/TACACS+ protocols are separate entities and are not compatible with each other.

## Authentication Server Settings

User-defined Authentication Server Hosts for the TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS security protocols can be set on the Switch. When a user attempts to access the Switch with Authentication Policy enabled, the Switch will send authentication packets to a remote TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS server host on a remote host. The TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS server host will then verify or deny the request and return the appropriate message to the Switch. More than one authentication protocol can be run on the same physical server host but, remember that TACACS / XTACACS / TACACS+ / RADIUS are separate entities and are not compatible with each other. The maximum supported number of server hosts is 16.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Authentication Server Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-73 Authentication Server Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IP Address</b>	The IP address of the remote server host to add.
<b>Protocol</b>	The protocol used by the server host. The user may choose one of the following: <i>TACACS</i> - Enter this parameter if the server host utilizes the TACACS protocol. <i>XTACACS</i> - Enter this parameter if the server host utilizes the XTACACS protocol. <i>RADIUS</i> - Enter this parameter if the server host utilizes the RADIUS protocol. <i>TACACS+</i> - Enter this parameter if the server host utilizes the TACACS+ protocol.
<b>Key</b>	Authentication key to be shared with a configured TACACS+ or RADIUS servers only. Specify an alphanumeric string up to 254 characters.
<b>Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter a number between 1 and 65535 to define the virtual port number of the authentication protocol on a server host. The default port number is 49 for TACACS, XTACACS or TACACS+ servers, and 1812 for RADIUS servers. However, the user may set a unique port number for higher security.
<b>Timeout (1-255)</b>	Enter the time in seconds the Switch will wait for the server host to reply to an authentication request. The default value is 5 seconds.
<b>Retransmit (1-20)</b>	Enter the value in the retransmit field to change how many times the device will resend an authentication request when the server does not respond. This value will not take effect when configuring to TACACS+. The default value is 2.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** More than one authentication protocol can be run on the same physical server host but, remember that TACACS/XTACACS/TACACS+ are separate entities and are not compatible with each other.

## Login Method Lists Settings

User-defined or default Login Method List of authentication techniques can be configured for users logging on to the Switch. The sequence of techniques implemented in this command will affect the authentication result. For example, if a user enters a sequence of techniques, for example TACACS - XTACACS- local, the Switch will send an authentication request to the first TACACS host in the server group. If no response comes from the server host, the Switch will send an authentication request to the second TACACS host in the server group and so on, until the list is exhausted. At that point, the Switch will restart the same sequence with the following protocol listed, XTACACS. If no authentication takes place using the XTACACS list, the local account database set in the Switch is used to authenticate the user. When the local method is used, the privilege level will be dependent on the local account privilege configured on the Switch.

Successful login using any of these techniques will give the user a "User" privilege only. If the user wishes to upgrade his or her status to the administrator level, the user must use the **Enable Admin** window, in which the user must enter a previously configured password, set by the administrator.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Login Method Lists Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-74 Login Method Lists Settings window

The Switch contains one Method List that is set and cannot be removed, yet can be modified. To delete a Login Method List defined by the user, click the **Delete** button corresponding to the entry desired to be deleted. To modify a Login Method List, click on its corresponding **Edit** button.

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Method List Name</b>	Enter a method list name defined by the user of up to 15 characters.
<b>Priority 1, 2, 3, 4</b>	<p>The user may add one, or a combination of up to four of the following authentication methods to this method list:</p> <p><i>none</i> - Adding this parameter will require no authentication needed to access the Switch.</p> <p><i>local</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the local user account database on the Switch.</p> <p><i>radius</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the RADIUS protocol from a remote RADIUS server.</p> <p><i>tacacs</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the TACACS protocol from a remote TACACS server.</p> <p><i>tacacs+</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the TACACS+ protocol from a remote TACACS+ server.</p> <p><i>xtacacs</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the XTACACS protocol from a remote XTACACS server.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## Enable Method Lists Settings

Users can set up Method Lists to promote users with user level privileges to Administrator (Admin) level privileges using authentication methods on the Switch. Once a user acquires normal user level privileges on the Switch, he or she must be authenticated by a method on the Switch to gain administrator privileges on the Switch, which is defined by the Administrator. A maximum of eight Enable Method Lists can be implemented on the Switch, one of which is a default Enable Method List. This default Enable Method List cannot be deleted but can be configured.

The sequence of methods implemented in this command will affect the authentication result. For example, if a user enters a sequence of methods like TACACS - XTACACS - Local Enable, the Switch will send an authentication request to the first TACACS host in the server group. If no verification is found, the Switch will send an authentication request to the second TACACS host in the server group and so on, until the list is exhausted. At that point, the Switch will restart the same sequence with the following protocol listed, XTACACS. If no authentication takes place using the XTACACS list, the Local Enable password set in the Switch is used to authenticate the user.

Successful authentication using any of these methods will give the user an "Admin" privilege.



**NOTE:** To set the Local Enable Password, see the next section, entitled Local Enable Password.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Enable method Lists Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-75 Enable method Lists Settings window

To delete an Enable Method List defined by the user, click the **Delete** button corresponding to the entry desired to be deleted. To modify an Enable Method List, click on its corresponding **Edit** button.

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Method List Name</b>	Enter a method list name defined by the user of up to 15 characters.
<b>Priority 1, 2, 3, 4</b>	<p>The user may add one, or a combination of up to four of the following authentication methods to this method list:</p> <p><i>tacacs</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the TACACS protocol from a remote TACACS server.</p> <p><i>xtacacs</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the XTACACS protocol from a remote XTACACS server.</p> <p><i>tacacs+</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the TACACS+ protocol from a remote TACACS+ server.</p> <p><i>radius</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the RADIUS protocol from a remote RADIUS server.</p> <p><i>local_enable</i> - Adding this parameter will require the user to be authenticated using the local enable password database on the Switch. The local enable password must be set by the user in the next section entitled Local Enable Password.</p>

	<i>none</i> - Adding this parameter will require no authentication needed to access the Switch.
--	---

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## Local Enable Password Settings

Users can configure the locally enabled password for Enable Admin. When a user chooses the "local\_enable" method to promote user level privileges to administrator privileges, he or she will be prompted to enter the password configured here that is locally set on the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Access Authentication Control > Local Enable Password Settings** as shown below:

**Figure 8-76 Local Enable Password Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Old Local Enable Password</b>	If a password was previously configured for this entry, enter it here in order to change it to a new password
<b>New Local Enable Password</b>	Enter the new password that you wish to set on the Switch to authenticate users attempting to access Administrator Level privileges on the Switch. The user may set a password of up to 15 characters.
<b>Confirm Local Enable Password</b>	Confirm the new password entered above. Entering a different password here from the one set in the New Local Enabled field will result in a fail message.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## SSL Settings

Secure Sockets Layer, or SSL, is a security feature that will provide a secure communication path between a host and client through the use of authentication, digital signatures and encryption. These security functions are implemented through the use of a cipher suite, which is a security string that determines the exact cryptographic parameters, specific encryption algorithms and key sizes to be used for an authentication session and consists of three levels:

1. **Key Exchange:** The first part of the Cipher suite string specifies the public key algorithm to be used. This switch utilizes the Rivest Shamir Adleman (RSA) public key algorithm and the Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA), specified here as the DHE DSS Diffie-Hellman (DHE) public key algorithm. This is the first authentication process between client and host as they "exchange keys" in looking for a match and therefore authentication to be accepted to negotiate encryptions on the following level.
2. **Encryption:** The second part of the cipher suite that includes the encryption used for encrypting the messages sent between client and host. The Switch supports two types of cryptology algorithms:  
Stream Ciphers – There are two types of stream ciphers on the Switch, *RC4 with 40-bit keys* and *RC4 with 128-bit keys*. These keys are used to encrypt messages and need to be consistent between client and host for optimal use.

CBC Block Ciphers – CBC refers to Cipher Block Chaining, which means that a portion of the previously encrypted block of encrypted text is used in the encryption of the current block. The Switch supports the *3DES EDE* encryption code defined by the Data Encryption Standard (DES) to create the encrypted text.

3. **Hash Algorithm:** This part of the cipher suite allows the user to choose a message digest function which will determine a Message Authentication Code. This Message Authentication Code will be encrypted with a sent message to provide integrity and prevent against replay attacks. The Switch supports two hash algorithms, MD5 (Message Digest 5) and SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm).

These three parameters are uniquely assembled in four choices on the Switch to create a three-layered encryption code for secure communication between the server and the host. The user may implement any one or combination of the cipher suites available, yet different cipher suites will affect the security level and the performance of the secured connection. The information included in the cipher suites is not included with the Switch and requires downloading from a third source in a file form called a *certificate*. This function of the Switch cannot be executed without the presence and implementation of the certificate file and can be downloaded to the Switch by utilizing a TFTP server. The Switch supports SSLv3. Other versions of SSL may not be compatible with this Switch and may cause problems upon authentication and transfer of messages from client to host.

The SSL Settings window located on the next page will allow the user to enable SSL on the Switch and implement any one or combination of listed cipher suites on the Switch. A cipher suite is a security string that determines the exact cryptographic parameters, specific encryption algorithms and key sizes to be used for an authentication session. The Switch possesses four possible cipher suites for the SSL function, which are all enabled by default. To utilize a particular cipher suite, disable the unwanted cipher suites, leaving the desired one for authentication.

When the SSL function has been enabled, the web will become disabled. To manage the Switch through the web based management while utilizing the SSL function, the web browser must support SSL encryption and the header of the URL must begin with `https://`. (Ex. `https://xx.xx.xx.xx`) Any other method will result in an error and no access can be authorized for the web-based management.

Users can download a certificate file for the SSL function on the Switch from a TFTP server. The certificate file is a data record used for authenticating devices on the network. It contains information on the owner, keys for authentication and digital signatures. Both the server and the client must have consistent certificate files for optimal use of the SSL function. Currently, the Switch comes with a certificate pre-loaded though the user may need to download more, depending on user circumstances.

To view this window, click **Security > SSL Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-77 SSL Settings window

To set up the SSL function on the Switch, configure the parameters in the SSL Settings section described.

The fields that can be configured are described below:



Parameter	Description
<b>SSL Status</b>	Use the radio buttons to enable or disable the SSL status on the Switch. The default is Disabled.
<b>Cache Timeout (60-86400)</b>	This field will set the time between a new key exchange between a client and a host using the SSL function. A new SSL session is established every time the client and host go through a key exchange. Specifying a longer timeout will allow the SSL session to reuse the master key on future connections with that particular host, therefore speeding up the negotiation process. The default setting is 600 seconds.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

To set up the **SSL cipher suite function** on the Switch, configure the parameters in the SSL Cipher suite Settings section described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RSA with RC4_128_MD5</b>	This cipher suite combines the RSA key exchange, stream cipher RC4 encryption with 128-bit keys and the MD5 Hash Algorithm. Use the radio buttons to enable or disable this cipher suite. This field is Enabled by default.
<b>RSA with 3DES EDE CBC SHA</b>	This cipher suite combines the RSA key exchange, CBC Block Cipher 3DES_EDE encryption and the SHA Hash Algorithm. Use the radio buttons to enable or disable this cipher suite. This field is Enabled by default.
<b>DHS DSS with 3DES EDE CBC SHA</b>	This cipher suite combines the DSA Diffie Hellman key exchange, CBC Block Cipher 3DES_EDE encryption and SHA Hash Algorithm. Use the radio buttons to enable or disable this cipher suite. This field is Enabled by default.
<b>RSA EXPORT with RC4 40 MD5</b>	This cipher suite combines the RSA Export key exchange and stream cipher RC4 encryption with 40-bit keys. Use the radio buttons to enable or disable this cipher suite. This field is Enabled by default.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

To download SSL certificates, configure the parameters in the SSL Certificate Download section described below.

Parameter	Description
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the IPv4 address of the TFTP server where the certificate files are located.
<b>Certificate File Name</b>	Enter the path and the filename of the certificate file to download.
<b>Key File Nam</b>	Enter the path and the filename of the key file to download.

Click the **Download** button to download the SSL certificate based on the information entered.



**NOTE:** Certain implementations concerning the function and configuration of SSL are not available on the web-based management of this Switch and need to be configured using the command line interface.



**NOTE:** Enabling the SSL command will disable the web-based switch management. To log on to the Switch again, the header of the URL must begin with https://. Entering anything else into the address field of the web browser will result in an error and no authentication will be granted.

## SSH

SSH is an abbreviation of Secure Shell, which is a program allowing secure remote login and secure network services over an insecure network. It allows a secure login to remote host computers, a safe method of executing commands on a remote end node, and will provide secure encrypted and authenticated communication between two non-trusted hosts. SSH, with its array of unmatched security features is an essential tool in today's networking environment. It is a powerful guardian against numerous existing security hazards that now threaten network communications.

The steps required to use the SSH protocol for secure communication between a remote PC (the SSH client) and the Switch (the SSH server) are as follows:

- Create a user account with admin-level access using the **User Accounts** window. This is identical to creating any other admin-level User Account on the Switch, including specifying a password. This password is used to logon to the Switch, once a secure communication path has been established using the SSH protocol.
- Configure the User Account to use a specified authorization method to identify users that are allowed to establish SSH connections with the Switch using the **SSH User Authentication List** window. There are three choices as to the method SSH will use to authorize the user, which are Host Based, Password, and Public Key.
- Configure the encryption algorithm that SSH will use to encrypt and decrypt messages sent between the SSH client and the SSH server, using the SSH Authentication Method and Algorithm Settings window.
- Finally, enable SSH on the Switch using the SSH Settings window.

After completing the preceding steps, a SSH Client on a remote PC can be configured to manage the Switch using a secure, in band connection.

## SSH Settings

Users can configure and view settings for the SSH server.

To view this window, click **Security > SSH > SSH Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-78 SSH Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>SSH Server State</b>	Use the radio buttons to enable or disable SSH on the Switch. The default is Disabled.
<b>Max. Session (1-8)</b>	Enter a value between 1 and 8 to set the number of users that may simultaneously access the Switch. The default setting is 8.
<b>Connection Timeout (120-600)</b>	Allows the user to set the connection timeout. The user may set a time between 120 and 600 seconds. The default setting is 120 seconds.
<b>Authfail Attempts (2-20)</b>	Allows the Administrator to set the maximum number of attempts that a user may try to log on to the SSH Server utilizing the SSH authentication. After the maximum number of attempts has been exceeded, the Switch will be disconnected and the user must reconnect to the Switch to attempt another login. The number of maximum attempts may be set between 2 and 20. The default setting is 2.
<b>Rekey Timeout</b>	This field is used to set the time period that the Switch will change the security shell encryptions by using the drop-down menu. The available options are <i>Never</i> , <i>10 min</i> , <i>30 min</i> , and <i>60 min</i> . The default setting is <i>Never</i> .
<b>TCP Port Number (1-65535)</b>	Enter the TCP Port Number used for SSH. The default value is 22.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



## SSH Authentication Method and Algorithm Settings

Users can configure the desired types of SSH algorithms used for authentication encryption. There are three categories of algorithms listed and specific algorithms of each may be enabled or disabled by ticking their corresponding check boxes. All algorithms are enabled by default.

To view this window, click **Security > SSH > SSH Authentication method and Algorithm Settings** as shown below:

The screenshot shows the following settings:

- SSH Authentication Method Settings:** Password, Public Key, and Host-based are all checked. An 'Apply' button is on the right.
- Encryption Algorithm:** 3DES-CBC, AES128-CBC, AES192-CBC, AES256-CBC, Cast128-CBC, ARC4, Blow-fish-CBC, Twofish128, Twofish192, and Twofish256 are all checked. An 'Apply' button is on the right.
- Data Integrity Algorithm:** HMAC-MD5 and HMAC-SHA1 are both checked. An 'Apply' button is on the right.
- Public Key Algorithm:** HMAC-RSA and HMAC-DSA are both checked. An 'Apply' button is on the right.

Figure 8-79 SSH Authentication Method and Algorithm Settings window

The fields that can be configured for **SSH Authentication Mode** are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Password</b>	This may be enabled or disabled to choose if the administrator wishes to use a locally configured password for authentication on the Switch. This parameter is enabled by default.
<b>Public Key</b>	This may be enabled or disabled to choose if the administrator wishes to use a public key configuration set on a SSH server, for authentication. This parameter is enabled by default.
<b>Host-based</b>	This may be enabled or disabled to choose if the administrator wishes to use a host computer for authentication. This parameter is intended for Linux users requiring SSH authentication techniques and the host computer is running the Linux operating system with a SSH program previously installed. This parameter is enabled by default.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

The fields that can be configured for the **Encryption Algorithm** are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>3DES-CBC</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Triple Data Encryption Standard encryption algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining. The default is enabled.
<b>AES128-CBC</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Advanced Encryption Standard AES128 encryption algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining. The default is enabled.
<b>AES192-CBC</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Advanced Encryption Standard AES192 encryption algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining. The default is enabled.
<b>AES256-CBC</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Advanced Encryption Standard AES256 encryption algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining. The default is enabled.
<b>Cast128-CBC</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Cast128 encryption algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining. The default is enabled.
<b>ARC4</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Arcfour encryption algorithm. The default is enabled.

<b>Blow-fish CBC</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the Blowfish encryption algorithm with Cipher Block Chaining. The default is enabled.
<b>Twofish128</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the twofish128 encryption algorithm. The default is enabled.
<b>Twofish192</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the twofish192 encryption algorithm. The default is enabled.
<b>Twofish256</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the twofish256 encryption algorithm. The default is enabled.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

The fields that can be configured for the **Data Integrity Algorithm** are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>HMAC-MD5</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the HMAC (Hash for Message Authentication Code) mechanism utilizing the MD5 Message Digest encryption algorithm. The default is enabled.
<b>HMAC-SHA1</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the HMAC (Hash for Message Authentication Code) mechanism utilizing the Secure Hash algorithm. The default is enabled.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

The fields that can be configured for the **Public Key Algorithm** are described below:

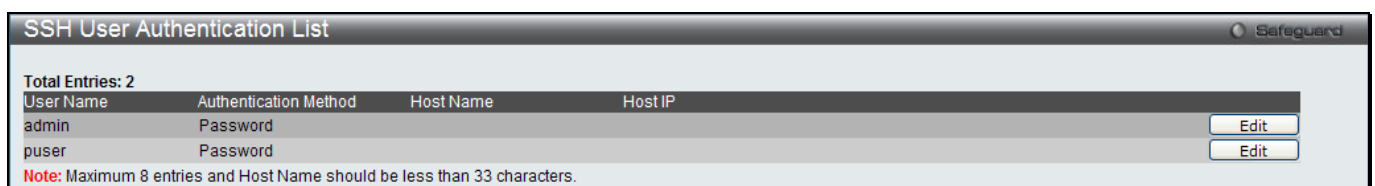
Parameter	Description
<b>HMAC-RSA</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the HMAC (Hash for Message Authentication Code) mechanism utilizing the RSA encryption algorithm. The default is enabled.
<b>HMAC-DSA</b>	Use the check box to enable or disable the HMAC (Hash for Message Authentication Code) mechanism utilizing the Digital Signature Algorithm (DSA) encryption. The default is enabled.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## SSH User Authentication List

Users can configure parameters for users attempting to access the Switch through SSH. In the window above, the User Account "username" has been previously set using the **User Accounts** window in the **System Configuration** folder. A User Account **MUST** be set in order to set the parameters for the SSH user.

To view this window, click **Security > SSH > SSH User Authentication List** as shown below:



User Name	Authentication Method	Host Name	Host IP
admin	Password		
puser	Password		

**Note:** Maximum 8 entries and Host Name should be less than 33 characters.

Figure 8-80 SSH User Authentication List window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>User Name</b>	A name of no more than 15 characters to identify the SSH user. This User Name must be a previously configured user account on the Switch.
<b>Authentication Method</b>	The administrator may choose one of the following to set the authorization for users attempting to access the Switch.

	<p><i>Host Name</i> – This parameter should be chosen if the administrator wishes to use a remote host name for authentication purposes. Choosing this parameter requires the user to input the following information to identify the SSH user.</p> <p><i>Password</i> – This parameter should be chosen if the administrator wishes to use an administrator-defined password for authentication. Upon entry of this parameter, the Switch will prompt the administrator for a password, and then to re-type the password for confirmation.</p> <p><i>Public Key</i> – This parameter should be chosen if the administrator wishes to use the public key on a SSH server for authentication.</p>
<b>Host Name</b>	Enter an alphanumeric string of no more than 32 characters to identify the remote SSH user. This parameter is only used in conjunction with the <i>Host Based</i> choice in the Auth. Mode field.
<b>Host IP</b>	Enter the corresponding IP address of the SSH user. This parameter is only used in conjunction with the <b>Host Based</b> choice in the <b>Authentication Method</b> field.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

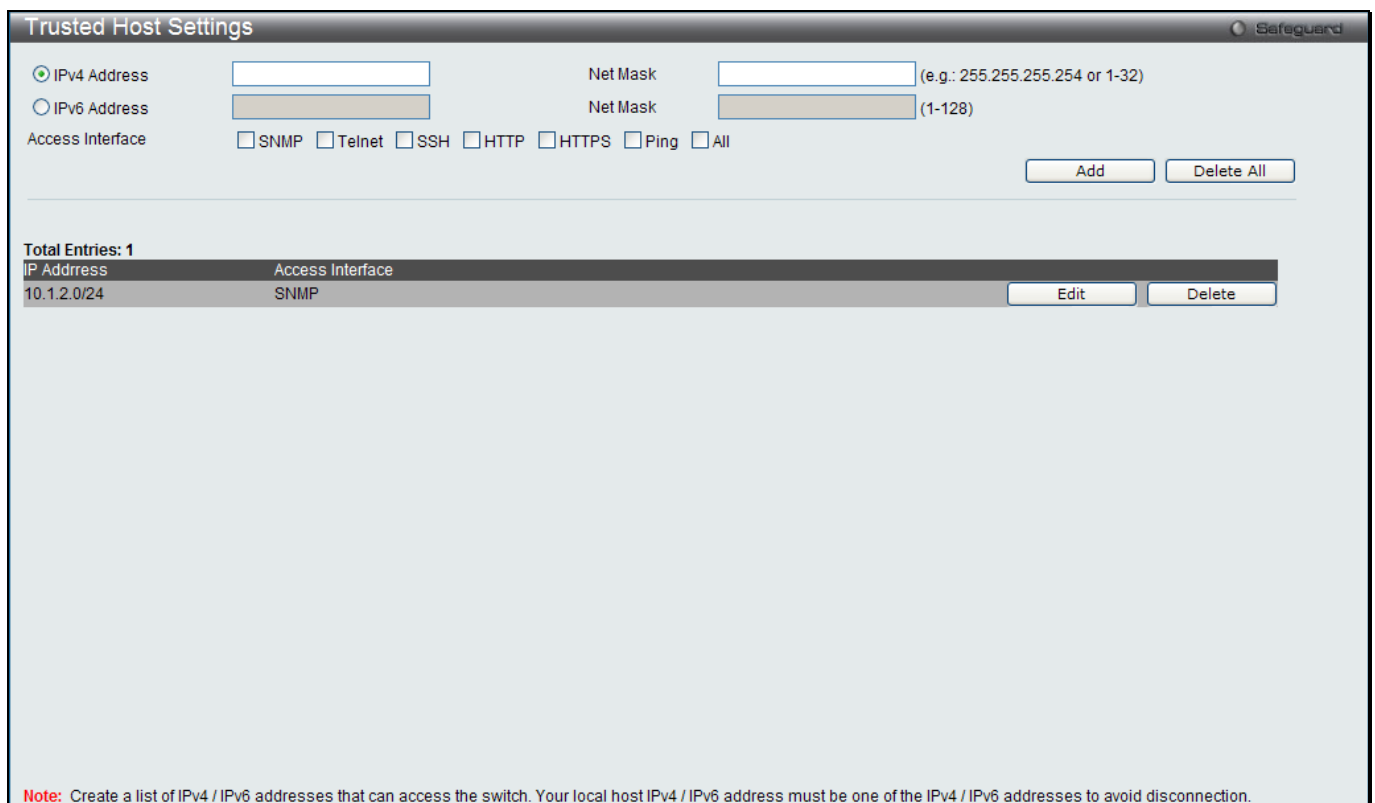


**NOTE:** To set the SSH User Authentication Mode parameters on the Switch, a User Account must be previously configured.

## Trusted Host Settings

Up to ten trusted host secure IPv4/IPv6 addresses may be configured and used for remote Switch management. It should be noted that if one or more trusted hosts are enabled, the Switch will immediately accept remote instructions from only the specified IPv4/IPv6 addresses. If you enable this feature, be sure to first enter the IPv4/IPv6 address of the station you are currently using.

To view this window, click **Security > Trusted Host Settings** as shown below:



**Trusted Host Settings** Safeguard

IPv4 Address      Net Mask  (e.g.: 255.255.255.254 or 1-32)  
 IPv6 Address      Net Mask  (1-128)

Access Interface     SNMP    Telnet    SSH    HTTP    HTTPS    Ping    All

---

Total Entries: 1

IP Address	Access Interface
10.1.2.0/24	SNMP

**Note:** Create a list of IPv4 / IPv6 addresses that can access the switch. Your local host IPv4 / IPv6 address must be one of the IPv4 / IPv6 addresses to avoid disconnection.

**Figure 8-81 Trusted Host window**

When the user clicks the **Edit** button, one will be able to edit the service allowed to the selected host. The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter an IPv4 address to add to the trusted host list.
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter an IPv6 address to add to the trusted host list.
<b>Net Mask</b>	Enter a Net Mask address to add to the trusted host list.
<b>Access Interface</b>	Tick the check boxes to select services that will be allowed to the trusted host.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove an entry.

## Safeguard Engine Settings

Periodically, malicious hosts on the network will attack the Switch by utilizing packet flooding (ARP Storm) or other methods. These attacks may increase the switch load beyond its capability. To alleviate this problem, the Safeguard Engine function was added to the Switch's software.

The Safeguard Engine can help the overall operability of the Switch by minimizing the workload of the Switch while the attack is ongoing, thus making it capable to forward essential packets over its network in a limited bandwidth. The Safeguard Engine has two operating modes that can be configured by the user, *Strict* and *Fuzzy*. In the *Strict* mode, when the CPU utilization of the Switch is over the Rising Threshold, it will enter the Exhausted mode. When in this mode, the Switch will stop all IP broadcast packets, packets from un-trusted IP address, and mostly ARP request packets to the Switch for a calculated time interval. Every five seconds, the Safeguard Engine checks the CPU utilization of the Switch. If the threshold has been crossed, the Switch will initially enter the Exhausted mode for five seconds. After another five-second checking interval arrives, the Switch will again check the CPU utilization. If the CPU utilization is lower than Falling Threshold, the Switch will again begin accepting all packets. Yet, if the checking shows that the Switch is too busy, it will fall into the Exhausted mode for double the time of the previous stop period. This doubling of time for stopping these packets will continue until the maximum time has been reached, which is 320 seconds and every stop from this point until a return to normal ingress flow would be 320 seconds. For a better understanding, please examine the following example of the Safeguard Engine.

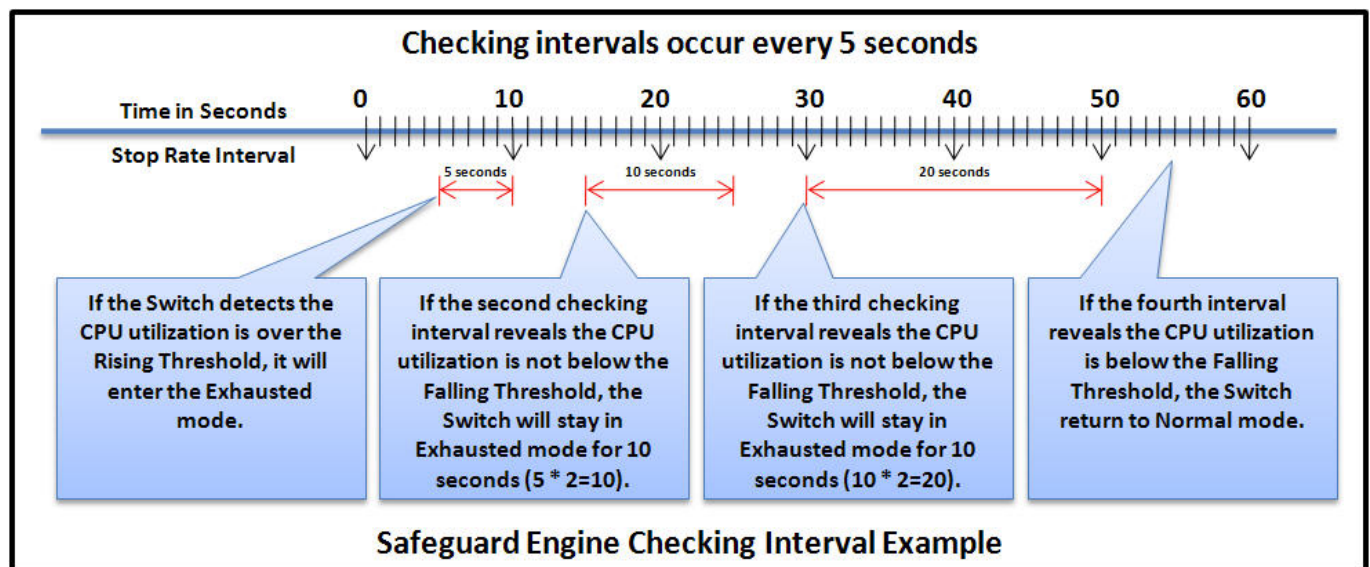


Figure 8-82 Safeguard Engine Checking Interval Example

For every consecutive checking interval that reveals the high CPU utilization issue, the Switch will double the time to enter the Exhausted mode to limit the specified traffic to the Switch. In the example above, the Switch doubled the time in the Exhausted mode when consecutive high CPU utilization issues were detected at 5-second intervals.

(First stop = 5 seconds, second stop = 10 seconds, third stop = 20 seconds) Once the CPU utilization is below the Falling Threshold, the wait period for the Exhausted mode will return to 5 seconds and the process will resume.

In *Fuzzy* mode, once the Safeguard Engine has entered the Exhausted mode, the Safeguard Engine will decrease the packet flow to the Switch by half. After returning to Normal mode, the packet flow will be increased by 25%. The switch will then return to its interval checking and dynamically adjust the packet flow to avoid overload of the Switch.

Users can enable the Safeguard Engine or configure advanced Safeguard Engine settings for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Security > Safeguard Engine Settings** as shown below:

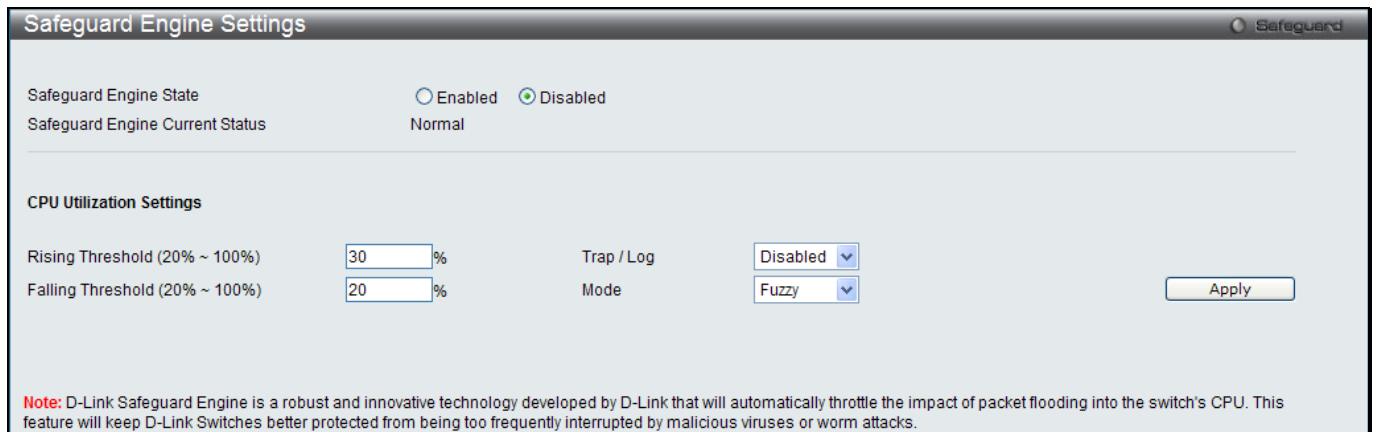


Figure 8-83 Safeguard Engine Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Safeguard Engine State</b>	Use the radio button to globally enable or disable Safeguard Engine settings for the Switch.
<b>Rising Threshold (20% - 100%)</b>	Used to configure the acceptable level of CPU utilization before the Safeguard Engine mechanism is enabled. Once the CPU utilization reaches this percentage level, the Switch will move into Exhausted mode, based on the parameters provided in this window.
<b>Falling Threshold (20% - 100%)</b>	Used to configure the acceptable level of CPU utilization as a percentage, where the Switch leaves the Safeguard Engine state and returns to normal mode.
<b>Trap / Log</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the sending of messages to the device's SNMP agent and switch log once the Safeguard Engine has been activated by a high CPU utilization rate.
<b>Mode</b>	Used to select the type of Safeguard Engine to be activated by the Switch when the CPU utilization reaches a high rate. The user may select: <i>Fuzzy</i> – If selected, the Switch will adjust the bandwidth dynamically depend on some reasonable algorithm. <i>Strict</i> – If selected, the Switch will stop receiving all 'IP broadcast' packets, packets from un-trusted IP address and reduce the bandwidth of 'ARP not to me' packets (the protocol address of target in ARP packet is the Switch itself) to the Switch. That means no matter what reasons cause the high CPU utilization (may not caused by ARP storm), the Switch reluctantly processes the specified traffic mentioned in previous in the Exhausted mode. The default setting is <i>Fuzzy</i> mode.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DoS Attack Prevention Settings

This window is used to configure the Denial-of-Service (DoS) attack prevention settings.

To view this window, click **Security > DoS Attack Prevention Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-84 DoS Attack Prevention Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Land Attack</b>	Tick to check whether the source address is equal to destination address of a received IP packet.
<b>Blat Attack</b>	Tick check whether the source port is equal to destination port of a received TCP packet.
<b>TCP Tiny Frag Attack</b>	Tick to check whether the packets are TCP tiny fragment packets.
<b>TCP Null Scan</b>	Tick to check whether a received TCP packet contains a sequence number of 0 and no flags
<b>TCP Xmascan</b>	Tick to check whether a received TCP packet contains URG, Push and FIN flags.
<b>TCP SYNFIN</b>	Tick to check whether a received TCP packet contains FIN and SYN flags.
<b>TCP SYN Src Port Less 1024</b>	Tick to check whether the TCP packets source ports are less than 1024 packets.
<b>Ping Death Attack</b>	Tick to detect whether received packets are fragmented ICMP packets.
<b>All</b>	Tick to select all DoS attack types.
<b>State</b>	Select to enable or disable DoS attack prevention.
<b>Action</b>	Select the action to be taken when detecting the attack.
<b>DoS Trap State</b>	Select to enable or disable DoS prevention trap state.
<b>DoS Log State</b>	Select to enable or disable DoS prevention log state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the [View Detail](#) link to view more information regarding the specific entry.

After clicking the [View Detail](#) link, the following page will appear:

Figure 8-85 DoS Attack Prevention Detail - View Detail window



## IGMP Access Control Settings

Users can set IGMP authentication, otherwise known as IGMP access control, on individual ports on the Switch. When the **Authentication State** is **Enabled**, and the Switch receives an IGMP join request, the Switch will send the access request to the RADIUS server to do the authentication.

IGMP authentication processes IGMP reports as follows: When a host sends a join message for the interested multicast group, the Switch has to do authentication before learning the multicast group/port. The Switch sends an Access-Request to an authentication server and the information including host MAC, switch port number, switch IP, and multicast group IP. When the Access-Accept is answered from the authentication server, the Switch learns the multicast group/port. When the Access-Reject is answered from the authentication server, the Switch won't learn the multicast group/port and won't process the packet further. The entry (host MAC, switch port number, and multicast group IP) is put in the "authentication failed list." When there is no answer from the authentication server after T1 time, the Switch resends the Access-Request to the server. If the Switch doesn't receive a response after N1 times, the result is denied and the entry (host MAC, switch port number, multicast group IP) is put in the "authentication failed list." In general case, when the multicast group/port is already learned by the switch, it won't do the authentication again. It only processes the packet as standard.

IGMP authentication processes IGMP leaves as follows: When the host sends leave message for the specific multicast group, the Switch follows the standard procedure for leaving a group and then sends an Accounting-Request to the accounting server for notification. If there is no answer from the accounting server after T2 time, the Switch resends the Accounting-Request to the server. The maximum number of retry times is N2.

To view this window, click **Security > IGMP Access Control Settings** as shown below:

Port	Authentication State
1	Disabled
2	Disabled
3	Disabled
4	Disabled
5	Disabled
6	Disabled
7	Disabled
8	Disabled
9	Disabled
10	Disabled
11	Disabled
12	Disabled
13	Disabled
14	Disabled
15	Disabled
16	Disabled
17	Disabled
18	Disabled
19	Disabled
20	Disabled
21	Disabled
22	Disabled
23	Disabled
24	Disabled
25	Disabled
26	Disabled

Figure 8-86 IGMP Access Control Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be enabled as compound authentication ports.
<b>Authentication State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the authentication state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## ND Spoofing Prevention Settings

This window is used to configure the spoofing prevention entry to prevent spoofing of MAC for the protected gateway. When an entry is created, those ND packets whose sender IPv6 matches the gateway IPv6 of an entry, but its source MAC field does not match the gateway MAC of the entry will be dropped by the system.

To view this window, click **Security > ND Spoofing Prevention Settings** as shown below:

Figure 8-87 ND Spoofing Prevention Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Gateway IP Address</b>	Enter a gateway IPv6 address.
<b>Gateway MAC Address</b>	Enter a gateway MAC address.
<b>Ports</b>	Enter a range of ports to be configured. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to select all ports.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the corresponding entry.



# Chapter 9 Network Application

**DHCP**  
**DNS Resolver**  
**PPPoE Circuit ID Insertion Settings**  
**RCP Server Settings**  
**SMTP Settings**  
**SNTP**  
**Flash File System Settings**

## DHCP

### DHCP Relay

#### DHCP Relay Global Settings

This window is used to enable and configure DHCP Relay Global Settings. The relay hops count limit allows the maximum number of hops (routers) that the DHCP messages can be relayed through to be set. If a packet's hop count is more than the hop count limit, the packet is dropped. The range is between 1 and 16 hops, with a default value of 4. The relay time threshold sets the minimum time (in seconds) that the Switch will wait before forwarding a DHCPREQUEST packet. If the value in the seconds' field of the packet is less than the relay time threshold, the packet will be dropped. The range is between 0 and 65,535 seconds, with a default value of 0 seconds.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-1 DHCP Relay Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCP Relay State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the DHCP Relay service on the Switch. The default is <i>Disabled</i> .
<b>DHCP Relay Hops Count Limit (1-16)</b>	Enter an entry between 1 and 16 to define the maximum number of router hops DHCP messages can be forwarded. The default hop count is 4.
<b>DHCP Relay Time Threshold (0-65535)</b>	Enter an entry between 0 and 65535 seconds, and defines the maximum time limit for routing a DHCP packet. If a value of 0 is entered, the Switch will not process the value in the seconds' field of the DHCP packet. If a non-zero value is entered, the Switch will use that value, along with the hop count to determine whether to forward a given DHCP packet.

<b>DHCP Relay Option 82 State</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 on the Switch. The default is <i>Disabled</i>.</p> <p><i>Enabled</i> –When this field is toggled to <i>Enabled</i>, the relay agent will insert and remove DHCP relay information (option 82 field) in messages between DHCP servers and clients. When the relay agent receives the DHCP request, it adds the option 82 information, and the IP address of the relay agent (if the relay agent is configured), to the packet. Once the option 82 information has been added to the packet it is sent on to the DHCP server. When the DHCP server receives the packet, if the server is capable of option 82, it can implement policies like restricting the number of IP addresses that can be assigned to a single remote ID or circuit ID. Then the DHCP server echoes the option 82 field in the DHCP reply. The DHCP server unicasts the reply back to the relay agent if the request was relayed to the server by the relay agent. The switch verifies that it originally inserted the option 82 data. Finally, the relay agent removes the option 82 field and forwards the packet to the switch port that connects to the DHCP client that sent the DHCP request.</p> <p><i>Disabled</i>- When the field is toggled to <i>Disabled</i>, the relay agent will not insert and remove DHCP relay information (option 82 field) in messages between DHCP servers and clients, and the check and policy settings will have no effect.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Check</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the Switches ability to check the validity of the packet's option 82 field.</p> <p><i>Enabled</i> – When the field is toggled to <i>Enabled</i>, the relay agent will check the validity of the packet's option 82 field. If the switch receives a packet that contains the option 82 field from a DHCP client, the switch drops the packet because it is invalid. In packets received from DHCP servers, the relay agent will drop invalid messages.</p> <p><i>Disabled</i> – When the field is toggled to <i>Disabled</i>, the relay agent will not check the validity of the packet's option 82 field.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Policy</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to set the Switches policy for handling packets when the DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Check is set to <i>Disabled</i>. The default is <i>Replace</i>.</p> <p><i>Replace</i> – The option 82 field will be replaced if the option 82 field already exists in the packet received from the DHCP client.</p> <p><i>Drop</i> – The packet will be dropped if the option 82 field already exists in the packet received from the DHCP client.</p> <p><i>Keep</i> – The option 82 field will be retained if the option 82 field already exists in the packet received from the DHCP client.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Remote ID</b>	<p>Enter the DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Remote ID.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Circuit ID</b>	<p>Enter the DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82 Circuit ID.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Option 60 State</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the use of the DHCP Relay Option 60 State feature. If the packet does not have option 60 enabled, then the relay servers cannot be determined based on the option 60. In this case the relay servers will be determined based on either option 61 or per IPIF configured servers. If the relay servers are determined based on option 60, option 61 or option 125, then per IPIF configured servers will be ignored. If the relay servers are not determined either by option 60, option 61 or option 125, then per IPIF configured servers will be used to determine the relay servers.</p> <p><i>Enabled</i> – Select this option to enable the DHCP Relay Option 60 state, in order to relay DHCP packets.</p> <p><i>Disabled</i> - Select this option to disable the DHCP Relay Option 60 state.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Option 61 State</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the use of the DHCP Relay Option 61 State feature. When option 61 is enabled, if the packet does not have option 61, then the relay servers cannot be determined based on option 61. If the relay servers are determined based on option 60, option 61 or option 125, then per IPIF</p>

	<p>configured servers will be ignored. If the relay servers are not determined either by option 60, option 61 or option 125, then per IPIF configured servers will be used to determine the relay servers.</p> <p><i>Enabled</i> – Select this option to enable the DHCP Relay Option 61 state, in order to relay DHCP packets.</p> <p><i>Disabled</i> - Select this option to disable the DHCP Relay Option 61 state.</p>
<b>DHCP Relay Option 125 State</b>	<p>Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the use of the DHCP Relay Option 125 State feature. When option 125 is enabled, if the packet does not have option 125, then the relay servers cannot be determined based on option 125. If the relay servers are determined based on option 60, option 61 or option 125, then per IPIF configured servers will be ignored. If the relay servers are not determined either by option 60, option 61 or option 125, then per IPIF configured servers will be used to determine the relay servers.</p> <p><i>Enabled</i> – Select this option to enable the DHCP Relay Option 125 state, in order to relay DHCP packets.</p> <p><i>Disabled</i> - Select this option to disable the DHCP Relay Option 125 state.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.



**NOTE:** If the Switch receives a packet that contains the option 82 field from a DHCP client and the information-checking feature is enabled, the Switch drops the packet because it is invalid. However, in some instances, users may configure a client with the option 82 field. In this situation, disable the information check feature so that the Switch does not remove the option 82 field from the packet. Users may configure the action that the Switch takes when it receives a packet with existing option 82 information by configuring the DHCP Agent Information Option 82 Policy.

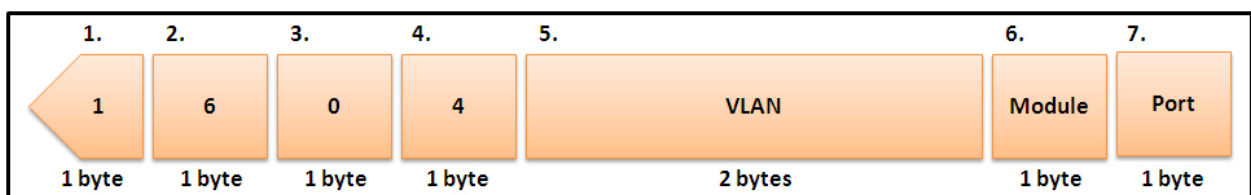
### **The Implementation of DHCP Relay Agent Information Option 82**

The **DHCP Relay Option 82** command configures the DHCP relay agent information option 82 setting of the Switch. The formats for the circuit ID sub-option and the remote ID sub-option are as follows:



**NOTE:** For the circuit ID sub-option of a standalone switch, the module field is always zero.

#### **Circuit ID sub-option format:**



**Figure 9-2 Circuit ID Sub-option Format**

- Sub-option type
- Length
- Circuit ID type
- Length
- VLAN: The incoming VLAN ID of DHCP client packet.
- Module: For a standalone switch, the Module is always 0; for a stackable switch, the Module is the Unit ID.
- Port: The incoming port number of the DHCP client packet, the port number starts from 1.

#### **Remote ID sub-option format:**

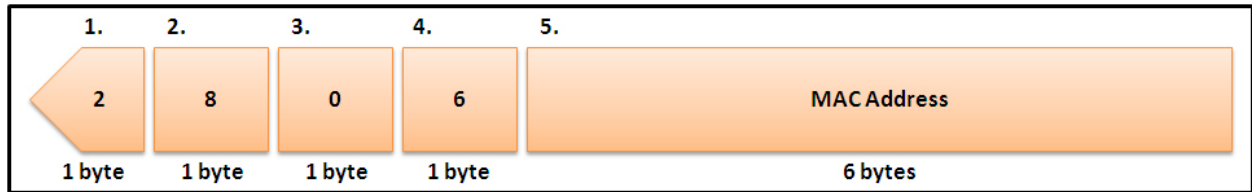


Figure 9-3 Remote ID Sub-option Format

- Sub-option type
- Length
- Remote ID type
- Length
- MAC address: The Switch's system MAC address.

## DHCP Relay Interface Settings

This window is used to set up a server, by IP address, for relaying DHCP information to the Switch. The user may enter a previously configured IP interface on the Switch that will be connected directly to the DHCP server using this window. Properly configured settings will be displayed in the DHCP Relay Interface Table at the bottom of the window, once the user clicks the **Apply** button. The user may add up to four server IPs per IP interface on the Switch. Entries may be deleted by clicking the corresponding **Delete** button.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Interface Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-4 DHCP Relay Interface Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	The IP interface on the Switch that will be connected directly to the Client.
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the IP address of the DHCP server. Up to four server IPs can be configured per IP Interface.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DHCP Relay VLAN Settings

This window is used to configure an IP address as a destination to forward (relay) DHCP/BOOTP packets. If there is an IP interface in the VLAN and it has configured a DHCP server at the interface level, then the configuration at the interface level has higher priority. In this case, the DHCP server configured on the VLAN will not be used to forward the DHCP packets.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay VLAN Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-5 DHCP Relay VLAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>VID List</b>	Enter the VLAN ID list used for this configuration here.
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the DHCP/BOOTP server IP address used here.

Click the **Add** button to add an entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove an entry.

## DHCP Relay Option 60 Server Settings

This window is used to configure the DHCP relay option 60 server parameters.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Option 60 Server Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-6 DHCP Relay Option 60 Server Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the DHCP Relay Option 60 Server Relay IP Address.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the DHCP Relay Option 60 Server mode.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.



**NOTE:** When there is no matching server found for the packet based on option 60, the relay servers will be determined by the default relay server setting.

## DHCP Relay Option 60 Settings

This option decides whether the DHCP Relay will process the DHCP option 60 or not.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Option 60 Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-7 DHCP Relay Option 60 Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>String</b>	Enter the DHCP Relay Option 60 String value. Different strings can be specified for the same relay server, and the same string can be specified with multiple relay servers. The system will relay the packet to all the matching servers.
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the DHCP Relay Option 60 Server IP address.
<b>Match Type</b>	Enter the DHCP Relay Option 60 Match Type value. <i>Exact Match</i> – The option 60 string in the packet must full match with the specified string. <i>Partial Match</i> – The option 60 string in the packet only need partial match with the specified string.
<b>IP Address / String</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select <i>IP Address</i> or <i>String</i> , and then enter either the DHCP Relay Option 60 IP address or DHCP Relay Option 60 string value in the field next to it.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Show All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the corresponding entry.

## DHCP Relay Option 61 Settings

This window is used to configure, add and delete DHCP relay option 61 parameters.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Option 61 Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-8 DHCP Relay Option 61 Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCP Relay Option 61 Default</b>	Here the user can select the DHCP Relay Option 61 default action. <i>Relay</i> – Specify to relay the packet to an IP address. Enter the IP Address of the default relay server. When there is no matching server found for the packet based on option 61, the relay servers will be determined by this default relay server setting. <i>Drop</i> – Specify to drop the packet.
<b>Client ID</b>	<i>MAC Address</i> – The client's client-ID which is the hardware address of client. <i>String</i> – The client's client-ID, which is specified by administrator.
<b>Relay Rule</b>	<i>Relay</i> – Specify to relay the packet to an IP address. <i>Drop</i> – Specify to drop the packet.
<b>Client ID</b>	<i>MAC Address</i> – The client's client-ID which is the hardware address of client. <i>String</i> – The client's client-ID, which is specified by administrator.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

## DHCP Relay Option 125 Server Settings

This window is used to configure the DHCP relay option 125 server parameters.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Option 125 Server Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-9 DHCP Relay Option 125 Server Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the DHCP Relay Option 125 Server Relay IP Address.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the DHCP Relay Option 125 Server mode. <i>Drop</i> – Specify to drop the packet that matches option 125 rule set. <i>Relay</i> – Specify to relay the packet according to the relay rules.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

## DHCP Relay Option 125 Settings

This option decides whether the DHCP Relay will process the DHCP option 125 or not.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Relay > DHCP Relay Option 125 Settings** as shown below:



Figure 9-10 DHCP Relay Option 125 Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Enterprise Number</b>	Enter the enterprise number.
<b>Data Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the data type. Options to choose from are <i>Hex</i> and <i>String</i> . <i>Hex</i> – Specify that the matched data will be in the hexadecimal format. <i>String</i> – Specify that the matched data will be in the string format.
<b>Match Data</b>	Enter the matched data variable. After selecting <b>Hex</b> in the <b>Data Type</b> drop-down menu, this parameter must be in the hexadecimal format. If the matched data variable, in the hexadecimal format, has an odd number of digits, a zero will be added to the end of the match data variable. For example, if 012 is entered, the variable will be modified to 0120. After selecting <b>String</b> in the <b>Data Type</b> drop-down menu, this parameter must be in the string format.
<b>Match Type</b>	Here the user can enter the DHCP Relay Option 125 Match Type value. <i>Exact Match</i> – The option 125 string in the packet must full match with the specified string. <i>Partial Match</i> – The option 125 string in the packet only need partial match with the specified string.
<b>Server IP Address</b>	Enter the DHCP Relay Option 125 Server IP address.
<b>Enterprise Number / String / Hex / IP Address</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select <i>Enterprise Number</i> , <i>String</i> , <i>Hex</i> , or <i>IP Address</i> , and then enter corresponding value in the field next to it.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Show All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the corresponding entry.

## DHCP Server

DHCP, or Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, allows the switch to delegate IP addresses, subnet masks, default gateways and other IP parameters to devices that request this information. This occurs when a DHCP enabled device is booted on or attached to the locally attached network. This device is known as the DHCP client and when enabled, it will emit query messages on the network before any IP parameters are set. When the DHCP server receives this request, it returns a response to the client, containing the previously mentioned IP information that the DHCP client then utilizes and sets on its local configurations.



The user can configure many DHCP related parameters that it will utilize on its locally attached network, to control and limit the IP settings of clients desiring an automatic IP configuration, such as the lease time of the allotted IP address, the range of IP addresses that will be allowed in its DHCP pool, the ability to exclude various IP addresses within the pool so as not to make identical entries on its network, or to assign the IP address of an important device (such as a DNS server or the IP address of the default route) to another device on the network.

Users also have the ability to bind IP addresses within the DHCP pool to specific MAC addresses in order to keep consistent the IP addresses of devices that may be important to the upkeep of the network that require a static IP address.

## DHCP Server Global Settings

This window is used to configure the DHCP server global parameters.



**NOTE:** The DHCP server's global state must be disabled and re-enabled for any modifications done to take effect.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-11 DHCP Server Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCP Server State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the DHCP Server State.
<b>Ping Packets (0-10)</b>	Enter the numbers of ping packet that the Switch will send out on the network containing the IP address to be allotted. If the ping request is not returned, the IP address is considered unique to the local network and then allotted to the requesting client. 0 means there is no ping test. The default value is 2.
<b>Ping Timeout (10-2000)</b>	Enter the amount of time the DHCP server must waits before timing out a ping packet. The default value is 100.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## DHCP Server Exclude Address Settings

The DHCP server assumes that all IP addresses in a DHCP pool subnet are available for assigning to DHCP clients. You must use this page to specify the IP address that the DHCP server should not assign to clients. This command can be used multiple times in order to define multiple groups of excluded addresses.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Exclude Address Settings** as shown below:

Index	Begin Address	End Address
1	10.90.90.100	10.90.90.120

Figure 9-12 DHCP Server Exclude Address Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Begin Address</b>	Enter the starting IP Address.
<b>End Address</b>	Enter the ending IP Address.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## DHCP Server Pool Settings

This window is used to add and delete the DHCP server pool.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Pool Settings** as shown below:

Pool Name	Pool
Pool	

Figure 9-13 DHCP Server Pool Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Pool Name</b>	Enter the DHCP Server Pool name.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the **Edit Class** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 9-14 DHCP Server Pool Class Settings - Edit Class window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Class Name</b>	Enter a DHCP's class name. The DHCP's class name can be configured in DHCP Server Class Settings window.
<b>Begin Address</b>	Enter the beginning IP address of the range.
<b>End Address</b>	Enter the end IP address of the range.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete by Name** button to remove the entries with the same class name.

Click the **Delete Address** button to remove the Begin Address and End Address of the specific entry.

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

Figure 9-15 DHCP Server Pool Settings - Edit window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IP Address</b>	Enter the network address of the pool.
<b>Netmask</b>	Enter the Netmask for the network address.
<b>NetBIOS Node Type</b>	NetBIOS node type for a Microsoft DHCP client.

<b>Domain Name</b>	Domain name of client. The domain name configured here will be used as the default domain name by the client.
<b>Boot File</b>	File name of boot image. The boot file is used to store the boot image for the client. The boot image is generally the operating system the client uses to load. If this option is input twice for the same pool, the second command will overwrite the first command. If the boot file is not specified, the boot file information will not be provided to the client.
<b>Next Server</b>	Enter the next server IP address.
<b>DNS Server Address</b>	Specify the IP address of a DNS server that is available to a DHCP client. Up to three IP addresses can be specified in one command line.
<b>NetBIOS Name Server</b>	IP address of WINS server. Windows Internet Naming Service (WINS) is a name resolution service that Microsoft DHCP clients use to correlate host names to IP addresses within a general grouping of networks. Up to three IP addresses can be specified in one command line.
<b>Default Router</b>	Specify the IP address of the default router for a DHCP client. Up to three IP addresses can be specified in one command line.
<b>Pool Lease</b>	By default, each IP address assigned by a DHCP server comes with a one-day lease, which is the amount of time that the address is valid. Tick the <b>Infinite</b> check box to have infinite lease. <i>Days</i> – Days of lease. <i>Hours</i> – Hours of lease. <i>Minutes</i> – Minutes of lease
<b>Option 43</b>	This option is used to add or delete DHCP Option 43. The DHCP server may contain this option in the DHCP reply according to Option 55 in the client's request packet. Enter the DHCP Option 43 string used here.
<b>Action</b>	Select the Option profile action that will be taken. Options to choose from are <b>Add</b> and <b>Delete</b> .
<b>Option Profile</b>	Select the Option profile that will be associated with this DHCP server pool.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## DHCP Server Class Settings

This window is used to configure DHCP server class settings.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Class Settings** as shown below:

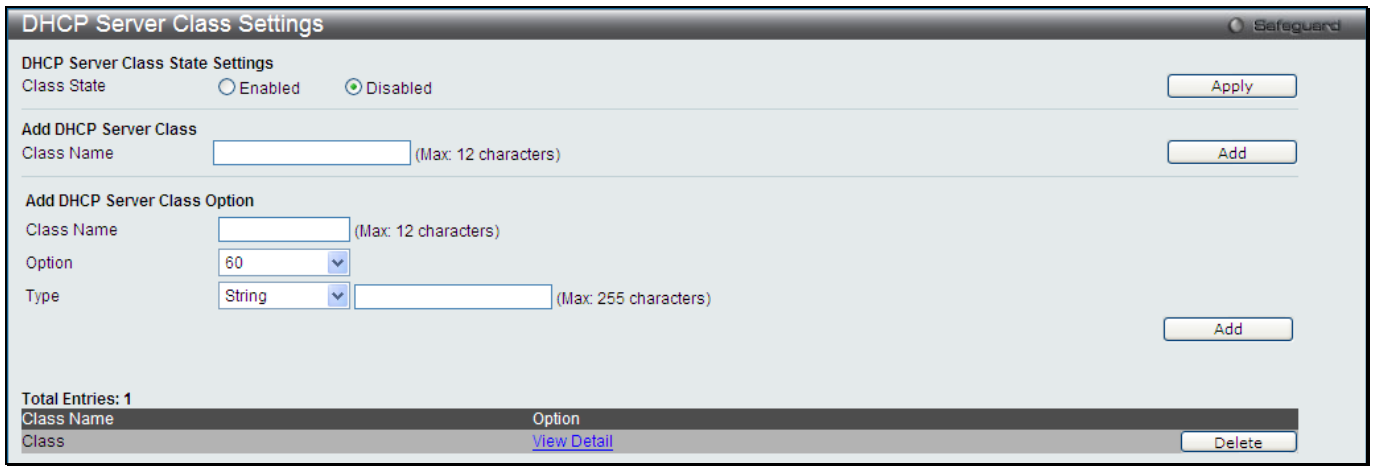


Figure 9-16 DHCP Server Class Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Class State</b>	Click to enable or disable the DHCP server class state.
<b>Class Name</b>	Enter the DHCP server's class name.
<b>Option</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the DHCP class option.
<b>Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the options type and enter the value of the type.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the [View Detail](#) link to view more information regarding the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the [View Detail](#) link, the following page will appear:



Figure 9-17 DHCP Server Class Settings - View Detail window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Type</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the option type. Options to choose from are <i>Hex</i> and <i>String</i> .
<b>Value</b>	Enter the value of the type.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## DHCP Server Option Profile Settings

Here user can create and configure custom DHCP server option profiles.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Option Profile Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-18 DHCP Server Option Profile Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Option Profile Name</b>	Enter the new DHCP server Option profile name used here.
<b>Profile Name</b>	After creating a new DHCP server Option profile (above), the available profiles will be listed here for selection.
<b>Option</b>	Enter the custom DHCP server Option value used here.
<b>Value Type</b>	Select the value type used here. Options to choose from are <b>String</b> and <b>Hex</b> .
<b>Value</b>	Enter the option value here.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the [View Detail](#) link to view more details regarding the specific entry.

After clicking the [View Detail](#) link, the following window will appear:

Figure 9-19 DHCP Server Option Profile Settings - View Detail window

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## DHCP Server Manual Binding

An address binding is a mapping between the IP address and MAC address of a client. The IP address of a client can be assigned manually by an administrator or assigned automatically from a pool by a DHCP server. The dynamic binding entry will be created when an IP address is assigned to the client from the pool network's address.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Manual Binding** as shown below:

**Add DHCP Server Manual Binding**

Pool Name  (Max: 12 characters) IP Address  (e.g.: 1.1.1.1)  
 Hardware Address  (e.g.: 00-00-00-00-00-01) Type

Pool Name

Total Entries: 1

Pool Name	IP Address	Hardware Address	Type
Pool	10.90.90.10	00-00-00-00-00-01	Ethernet

Figure 9-20 DHCP Server Manual Binding window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Pool Name</b>	Enter the DHCP Server Pool name.
<b>IP Address</b>	IP address which will be assigned to specified client.
<b>Hardware Address</b>	Enter the hardware address.
<b>Type</b>	Either <i>Ethernet</i> or <i>IEEE802</i> can be specified.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## DHCP Server Dynamic Binding

This window is used to delete the DHCP server dynamic binding table.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Server Dynamic Binding** as shown below:

**DHCP Server Dynamic Binding**

Pool Name  (Max: 12 characters)

Total Entries: 0

Pool Name	IP Address	Hardware Address	Type	Status	Lifetime (sec)
-----------	------------	------------------	------	--------	----------------

Figure 9-21 DHCP Server Dynamic Binding window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Pool Name</b>	Enter the DHCP Server Pool name.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all the entries listed in the table.

## DHCP Conflict IP

The DHCP server will use PING packet to determine whether an IP address is conflict with other host before binding this IP. The IP address which has been identified conflict will be moved to the conflict IP database. The system will not attempt to bind the IP address in the conflict IP database unless the user clears it from the conflict IP database.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Server > DHCP Conflict IP** as shown below:



Figure 9-22 DHCP Conflict IP window

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all the entries listed in the table.

## DHCPv6 Server

### DHCPv6 Server Global Settings

This command is used to enable the DHCPv6 server function on the Switch.



**NOTE:** The DHCPv6 server's global state must be disabled and re-enabled for any modifications done to take effect.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Server > DHCPv6 Server Global Settings** as shown below:

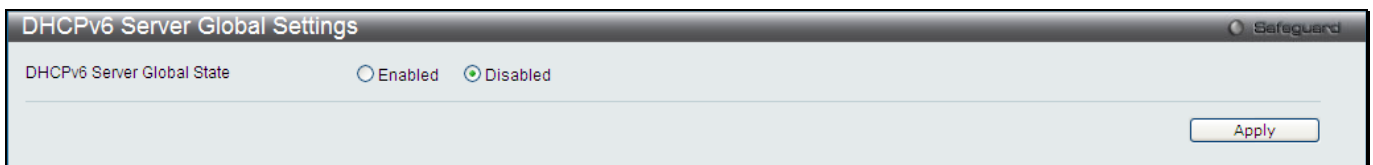


Figure 9-23 DHCPv6 Server Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCPv6 Server Global State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the DHCPv6 Server State.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

### DHCPv6 Server Pool Settings

This window is used to create and configure a DHCPv6 pool.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Server > DHCPv6 Server Pool Settings** as shown below:

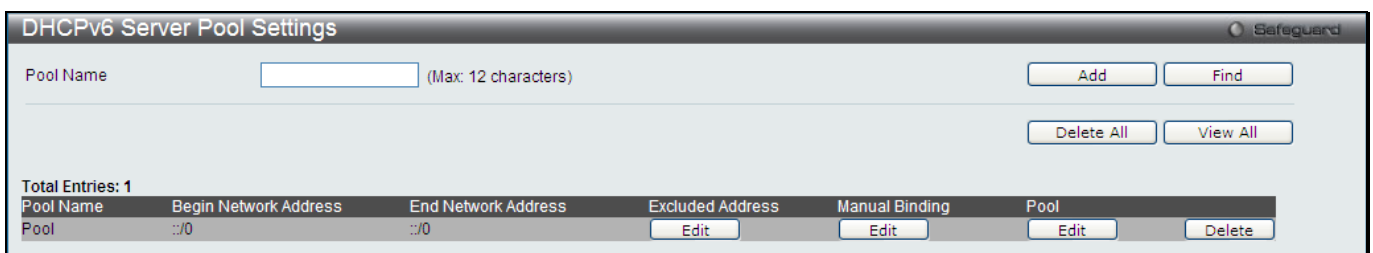


Figure 9-24 DHCPv6 Server Pool Settings window



The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Pool Name</b>	Enter the DHCPv6 Server Pool name.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Edit** button under various columns to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Edit** button under **Excluded Address** to see the following window.

Figure 9-25 DHCPv6 Server Excluded Address Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Begin Address</b>	Enter the beginning IPv6 address of the range of IPv6 addresses to be excluded from the DHCPv6 pool.
<b>End Address</b>	Enter the ending IPv6 address of the range of IPv6 addresses to be excluded from the DHCPv6 pool.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous window.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Edit** button under **Manual Binding** to see the following window.

Figure 9-26 DHCPv6 Server Manual Binding Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the IPv6 address to be statically bound to a device.
<b>Network Address</b>	Enter the IPv6 networks address that will be statically bound to a device here.

<b>Client DUID</b>	Enter the DUID of the device to be statically bound to the IPv6 address entered in the previous field.
--------------------	--

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous window.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Edit** button under **Pool** to see the following window.

Figure 9-27 DHCPv6 Server Pool Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Begin Network Address</b>	Enter the beginning IPv6 network address of the DHCPv6 pool.
<b>End Network Address</b>	Enter the ending IPv6 network address of the DHCPv6 pool.
<b>Domain Name</b>	The domain name is used by client when resolving hostnames with DNS.
<b>DNS Server</b>	Enter the DNS server IPv6 address for this pool. Users may specify up to two DNS server addresses.
<b>Preferred Lifetime (60-4294967295)</b>	The amount of time (in seconds) that the IPv6 address, based on the specified pool, remains in preferred state.
<b>Valid Lifetime (60-4294967295)</b>	The amount of time (in seconds) that the IPv6 address, based on the specified pool, remains in valid state.

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous window.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DHCPv6 Server Dynamic Binding

This window is used to show the DHCPv6 dynamic binding information.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Server > DHCPv6 Server Dynamic Binding** as shown below:

Figure 9-28 DHCPv6 Server Dynamic Binding Table window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Pool Name</b>	Enter the name of the DHCPv6 pool for which to view dynamic binding information.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear All** button to remove all the entries listed in the table.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

## DHCPv6 Server Interface Settings

This window is used to display and configure the DHCPv6 Server state per interface

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Server > DHCPv6 Server Interface Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-29 DHCPv6 Server Interface Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the name of the IP interface.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

## DHCPv6 Relay

### DHCPv6 Relay Global Settings

This window is used to configure the DHCPv6 relay function on the Switch.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Relay > DHCPv6 Relay Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-30 DHCPv6 Relay Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

<b>DHCPv6 Relay State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the DHCPv6 relay function.
<b>DHCPv6 Relay Hops Count (1-32)</b>	Enter the number of relay agents that have to be relayed in this message. The default value is 4.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## DHCPv6 Relay Settings

This window is used to configure the DHCPv6 relay state of one or all of the specified interfaces, and add or display a destination IPv6 address to or from the switch's DHCPv6 relay table.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Relay > DHCPv6 Relay Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-31 DHCPv6 Relay Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Interface Name</b>	Enter the name of the IPv6 interface. Tick the <b>All</b> check box to select all IPv6 interfaces.
<b>DHCPv6 Relay State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the DHCPv6 relay state of the interface.
<b>DHCPv6 Server Address</b>	Enter the DHCPv6 server IPv6 address.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **View All** button to display all the existing entries.

Click the [View Detail](#) link to view more information regarding the specific entry.

After clicking the [View Detail](#) link, the following page will appear:

Figure 9-32 DHCPv6 Relay Settings - View Detail window

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous window.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## DHCPv6 Relay Option 37 Settings

This window is used to configure the processing of Option 37 for the DHCPv6 relay function. When the DHCPv6 relay Option 37 is enabled, the DHCP packet will be inserted with the Option 37 field before being relayed to server. The DHCP packet will be processed based on the behavior defined in the check and remote ID type setting. When the state is disabled, the DHCP packet will be relayed directly to server without further checks and inserted with the Option 37.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Relay > DHCPv6 Relay Option 37 Settings** as shown below:

The screenshot shows a web interface window titled "DHCPv6 Relay Option 37 Settings". It contains three dropdown menus: "State" (set to "Disabled"), "Check" (set to "Disabled"), and "Remote ID" (set to "Default"). To the right of the "Remote ID" dropdown is a text input field with the placeholder "(Max: 128 characters)". An "Apply" button is located in the bottom right corner of the window.

Figure 9-33 DHCPv6 Relay Option 37 Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Select the DHCPv6 relay Option 37 state. <i>Enabled</i> - When the state is enabled, the DHCP packet will be inserted with the Option 37 field before being relayed to server. <i>Disabled</i> - When the state is disabled, the DHCP packet will be relayed directly to server without further checks and inserted with the Option 37.
<b>Check</b>	Select the check state. This specifies that packets coming from client side should or should not have the Option 37 field. If client originating packets have the Option 37 field set, they will be dropped. <i>Enabled</i> - Specify that the check option is enabled. <i>Disabled</i> - Specify that the check option is disabled.
<b>Remote ID</b>	Select the remote ID state. This specifies the content in the Remote ID. <i>Default</i> - Specify that the remote ID will contain the VLAN ID, Module, Port, and System MAC address of the device. <i>CID With User Define</i> - Specify that the remote ID will contain the VLAN ID, Module, Port, and a user defined string. After selecting this option, enter the CID user defined string in the space provided. This can be up to 128 characters long. <i>User Define</i> - Specify that the remote ID will be a user defined string. After selecting this option, enter the user defined string in the space provided. This can be up to 128 characters long. <i>Vendor1</i> - Specify that the remote ID will be System MAC address of the device.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DHCPv6 Relay Option 18 Settings

This window is used to configure the DHCPv6 relay agent information for processing Option 18 within the Switch.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Relay > DHCPv6 Relay Option 18 Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-34 DHCPv6 Relay Option 18 Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	When enabled, the DHCP packet will be inserted with the Option 18 field before being relayed to the server. When the state is disabled, the DHCP packet will be relayed directly to server without further checks and inserted with the Option 18.
<b>Check</b>	When enabled, packets coming from the client side should not have the Option 18 field. If the client originating packets have the Option 18 field set they will be dropped.
<b>Interface ID</b>	Specify the content in the interface ID. <i>Default</i> - The interface ID will include the VLAN ID, Module, Port, and System MAC address of the device. <i>CID</i> - The interface ID will include the VLAN ID, Module, Port, and user defined string. <i>Vendor1</i> - The interface ID will be System MAC address of the device.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DHCP Local Relay Settings

The DHCP local relay settings allows the user to add option 82 into DHCP request packets when the DHCP client gets an IP address from the same VLAN. If the DHCP local relay settings are not configured, the Switch will flood the packets to the VLAN. In order to add option 82 into the DHCP request packets, the DHCP local relay settings and the state of the Global VLAN need to be enabled.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Local Relay Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-35 DHCP Local Relay Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCP Local Relay State</b>	Enable or disable the DHCP Local Relay Global State. The default is Disabled.
<b>DHCP Local Relay Agent Information Option 82 Remote ID</b>	Enter a user-defined remote ID, or tick the <b>Default</b> check box to use the Switch's system MAC address as the remote ID.
<b>DHCP Local Relay Agent Information Option 82 Circuit ID</b>	Select the DHCP Local Relay Agent Information Option 82 Circuit ID. <i>Default</i> - The circuit ID will include the VLAN ID, Module, Port, and System MAC address of the device. <i>Vendor1</i> - The circuit ID will be System MAC address of the device.

	<i>Vendor6</i> - Select to use the format of Vendor6.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Enter the VLAN name that applies to the DHCP local relay operation. There are up to 48 VLANs that can apply to the DHCP local relay operation.
<b>State</b>	Enable or disable the configure DHCP Local Relay for VLAN state.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## DHCP Local Relay Option 82 Settings

This window is used to configure DHCP local relay each port processing option 82 policy.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCP Local Relay Option 82 Settings** as shown below:

Port	Option 82 Policy
1	Keep
2	Keep
3	Keep
4	Keep
5	Keep
6	Keep
7	Keep
8	Keep
9	Keep
10	Keep
11	Keep
12	Keep
13	Keep
14	Keep
15	Keep
16	Keep
17	Keep
18	Keep
19	Keep
20	Keep
21	Keep
22	Keep
23	Keep
24	Keep
25	Keep
26	Keep

Figure 9-36 DHCP Local Relay Option 82 Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to use.
<b>Policy</b>	Select how to process the packets coming from the client side that have the option 82 field. <i>Replace</i> – Replace the existing option 82 field in the packet. <i>Drop</i> – Discard if the packet has option 82 field. <i>Keep</i> – Retain the existing option 82 field in the packet.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DHCPv6 Local Relay Settings

This window is used to configure DHCPv6 local relay settings. There are up to 48 VLANs that can apply to the DHCPv6 local relay operation.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DHCP > DHCPv6 Local Relay Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-37 DHCPv6 Local Relay Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DHCPv6 Local Relay State</b>	Click to enable or disable the DHCPv6 local relay global state.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the name of VLAN.
<b>VLAN ID</b>	Click the radio button and enter the VLAN ID. There are up to 48 VLANs that can apply to the DHCPv6 local relay operation.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the DHCPv6 local relay state of the specified VLAN.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## DNS Resolver

### DNS Resolver Global Settings

This window is used to configure the DNS Resolver global state of the switch.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DNS Resolver > DNS Resolver Global Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-38 DNS Resolver Global Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>DNS Resolver State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the DNS resolver state.
<b>Name Server Timeout (1-60)</b>	The maximum time waiting for a response from a specified name server.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

### DNS Resolver Static Name Server Settings

The window is used to create the DNS Resolver name server of the switch. When adding a name server, if one primary name server exists in the static name server table and a new primary name server is added, the existing primary name server will be changed to a normal name server. If the added primary name server's IP address is the same as an existing normal name server's IP address, the existing normal name server will be changed to a



primary name server, but won't add new name server. When no primary name server is specified, the first configured name server will automatically change to become the primary name server. If the deleted name server's IP address is the same as one of the existing name servers' IP addresses, regardless of whether a normal name server or primary name server, the name server will be deleted.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DNS Resolver > DNS Resolver Static Name Server Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-39 DNS Resolver Static Name Server Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Server IP Address	Enter a DNS Resolver name server's IPv4 address here. Tick the <b>Primary</b> check box to set the name server as a primary name server.
Server IPv6 Address	Enter a DNS Resolver name server's IPv6 address here. Tick the <b>Primary</b> check box to set the name server as a primary name server.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## DNS Resolver Dynamic Name Server Table

This window displays the current DNS Resolver name servers.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DNS Resolver > DNS Resolver Dynamic Name Server Table** as shown below:

Figure 9-40 DNS Resolver Dynamic Name Server Table window

## DNS Resolver Static Host Name Settings

The window is used to create the static host name entry of the switch.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DNS Resolver > DNS Resolver Static Host Name Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-41 DNS Resolver Static Host Name Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Host Name	Enter the name of the host.
IP Address	Click the radio button and enter the IPv4 address of the host here.
IPv6 Address	Click the radio button and enter the IPv6 address of the host here.

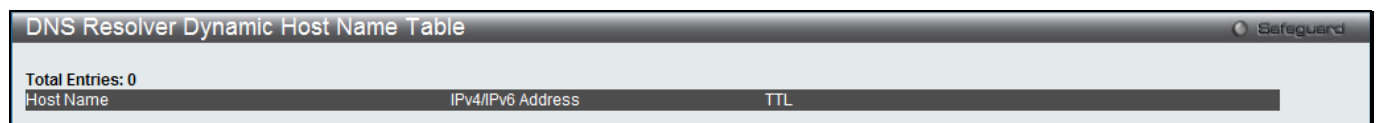
Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## DNS Resolver Dynamic Host Name Table

This window displays the current host name entries.

To view this window, click **Network Application > DNS Resolver > DNS Resolver Dynamic Host Name Table** as shown below:



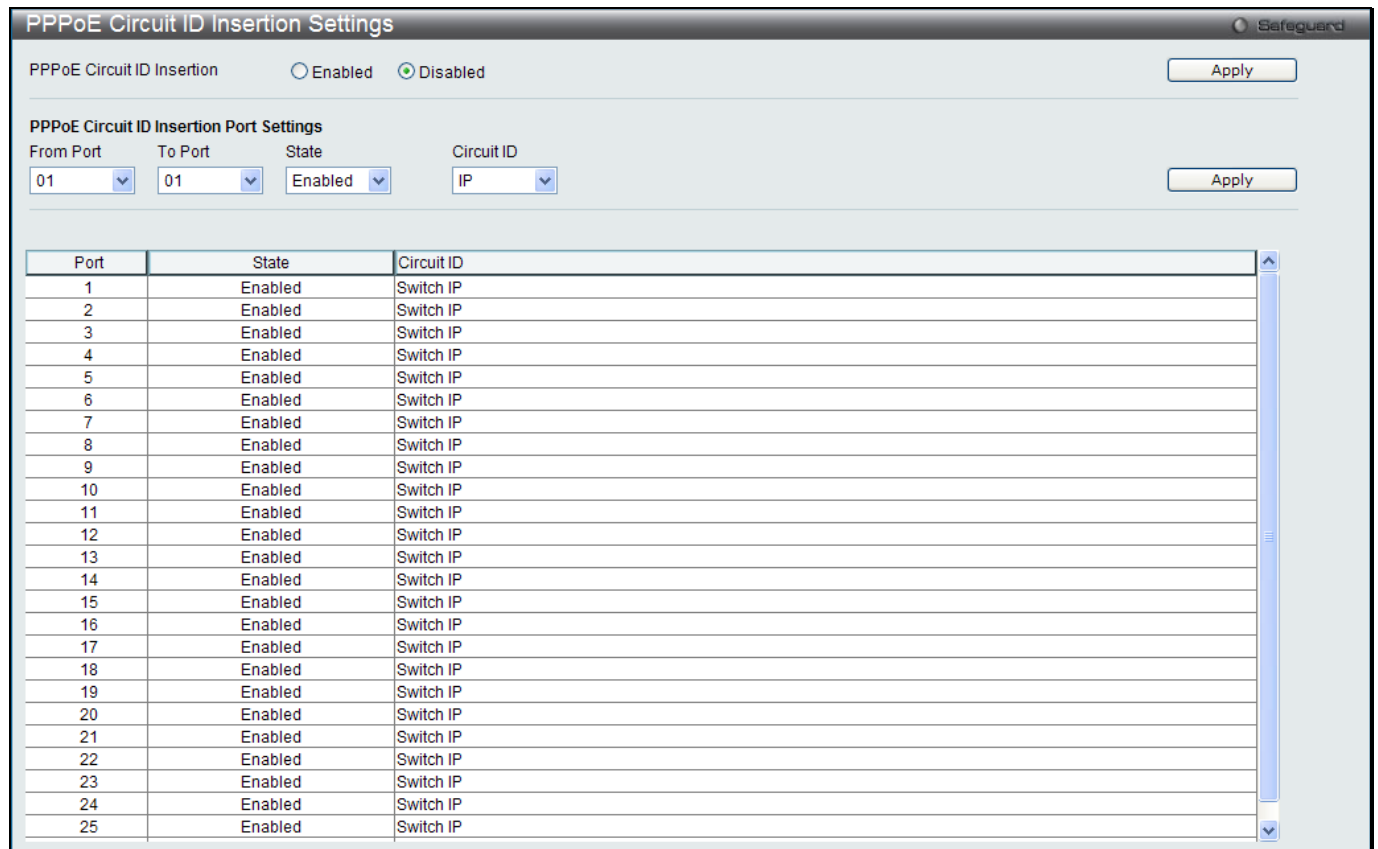
DNS Resolver Dynamic Host Name Table		
Host Name	IPv4/IPv6 Address	TTL
Total Entries: 0		

Figure 9-42 DNS Resolver Dynamic Host Name Table window

## PPPoE Circuit ID Insertion Settings

This window is used to configure the PPPoE circuit ID insertion function.

To view this window, click **Network Application > PPPoE Circuit ID Insertion Settings** as shown below:



Port	State	Circuit ID
1	Enabled	Switch IP
2	Enabled	Switch IP
3	Enabled	Switch IP
4	Enabled	Switch IP
5	Enabled	Switch IP
6	Enabled	Switch IP
7	Enabled	Switch IP
8	Enabled	Switch IP
9	Enabled	Switch IP
10	Enabled	Switch IP
11	Enabled	Switch IP
12	Enabled	Switch IP
13	Enabled	Switch IP
14	Enabled	Switch IP
15	Enabled	Switch IP
16	Enabled	Switch IP
17	Enabled	Switch IP
18	Enabled	Switch IP
19	Enabled	Switch IP
20	Enabled	Switch IP
21	Enabled	Switch IP
22	Enabled	Switch IP
23	Enabled	Switch IP
24	Enabled	Switch IP
25	Enabled	Switch IP

Figure 9-43 PPPoE Circuit ID Insertion Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>PPPoE Circuit ID Insertion</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the PPPoE circuit ID insertion on the Switch.
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be configured.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable port's PPPoE circuit ID insertion function.
<b>Circuit ID</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the device ID part for encoding of the circuit ID option.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## RCP Server Settings

This window is used to configure global RCP server information. This global RCP Server setting can be used when the Server or remote user name is not specified. Only **ONE** RCP server can be configured per system. If user does not specify the RCP Server in the CLI command, and global RCP Server was not configured, the Switch will ask user to input the Server IP address or remote user name while executing the RCP commands.

To view the following window, click **Network Application > RCP Server Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 9-44 RCP Server Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IP Address</b>	The IP address of global RCP Server. By default, the server is unspecified.
<b>User Name</b>	The remote user name for logon into global RCP Server. By default, global server's remote user name is unspecified.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

## SMTP Settings

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is a function of the Switch that will send switch events to mail recipients based on e-mail addresses entered in the window below. The Switch is to be configured as a client of SMTP while the server is a remote device that will receive messages from the Switch, place the appropriate information into an e-mail and deliver it to recipients configured on the Switch. This can benefit the Switch administrator by simplifying the management of small workgroups or wiring closets, increasing the speed of handling emergency Switch events, and enhancing security by recording questionable events occurring on the Switch.

Users can set up the SMTP server for the Switch, along with setting e-mail addresses to which switch log files can be sent when a problem arises on the Switch.

To view this window, click **Network Application > SMTP Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-45 SMTP Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>SMTP State</b>	Use the radio button to enable or disable the SMTP service on this device.
<b>SMTP Server Address</b>	Enter the IP address of the SMTP server on a remote device. This will be the device that sends out the mail for you.
<b>SMTP Server Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter the virtual port number that the Switch will connect with on the SMTP server. The common port number for SMTP is 25, yet a value between 1 and 65535 can be chosen.
<b>SMTP Server IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the IPv6 address of the SMTP server on a remote device. This will be the device that sends out the mail for you.
<b>Interface</b>	Enter the interface name when configuring the IPv6 address of the SMTP server with link-local address.
<b>SMTP Server IPv6 Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter the virtual port number that the Switch will connect with on the SMTP server. The common port number for SMTP is 25, yet a value between 1 and 65535 can be chosen.
<b>Self Mail Address</b>	Enter the e-mail address from which mail messages will be sent. This address will be the “from” address on the e-mail message sent to a recipient. Only one self-mail address can be configured for this Switch. This string can be no more than 64 alphanumeric characters.
<b>Add A Mail Receiver</b>	Enter an e-mail address and click the <b>Add</b> button. Up to eight e-mail addresses can be added per Switch. To delete these addresses from the Switch, click the corresponding <b>Delete</b> button in the SMTP Mail Receiver Address table at the bottom of the window.
<b>Subject</b>	Enter the title of the testing mail.
<b>Content</b>	Enter the content of the testing mail.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Add** button to add an entry.

## SNTP

The Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is a protocol for synchronizing computer clocks through the Internet. It provides comprehensive mechanisms to access national time and frequency dissemination services, organize the SNTP subnet of servers and clients, and adjust the system clock in each participant.

## SNTP Settings

Users can configure the time settings for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Network Application > SNTP > SNTP Settings** as shown below:

Figure 9-46 SNTP Settings window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>SNTP State</b>	Use this radio button to enable or disable SNTP.
<b>Current Time</b>	Displays the Current Time.
<b>Time Source</b>	Displays the time source for the system.
<b>IPv4 SNTP Primary Server</b>	The IP address of the primary server from which the SNTP information will be taken.
<b>IPv4 SNTP Secondary Server</b>	The IP address of the secondary server from which the SNTP information will be taken.
<b>IPv6 SNTP Primary Server</b>	The IPv6 address of the primary server from which the SNTP information will be taken.
<b>IPv6 SNTP Secondary Server</b>	The IPv6 address of the secondary server from which the SNTP information will be taken.
<b>SNTP Poll Interval In Seconds (30-99999)</b>	The interval, in seconds, between requests for updated SNTP information.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Time Zone Settings

Users can configure time zones and Daylight Savings Time settings for SNTP.

To view this window, click **Network Application > SNTP > Time Zone Settings** as shown below:

**Time Zone Settings**
Safeguard

Daylight Saving Time State Disabled

Daylight Saving Time Offset in Minutes 60

Time Zone Offset: From GMT in +/-HH:MM + 00 00

---

**DST Repeating Settings**

From: Which Week of the Month First

From: Day of the Week Sun

From: Month Apr

From: Time in HH MM 00 00

To: Which Week of the Month Last

To: Day of the Week Sun

To: Month Oct

To: Time in HH MM 00 00

---

**DST Annual Settings**

From: Month Apr

From: Day 29

From: Time in HH MM 00 00

To: Month Oct

To: Day 12

To: Time in HH MM 00 00

Figure 9-47 Time Zone Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Daylight Saving Time State</b>	Use this drop-down menu to enable or disable the DST Settings.
<b>Daylight Saving Time Offset In Minutes</b>	Use this drop-down menu to specify the amount of time that will constitute your local DST offset – 30, 60, 90, or 120 minutes.
<b>Time Zone Offset From GMT In +/- HH:MM</b>	Use these drop-down menus to specify your local time zone's offset from Greenwich Mean Time (GMT.)

Parameter	Description
<b>DST Repeating Settings</b>	Using repeating mode will enable DST seasonal time adjustment. Repeating mode requires that the DST beginning and ending date be specified using a formula. For example, specify to begin DST on Saturday during the second week of April and end DST on Sunday during the last week of October.
<b>From: Which Week Of The Month</b>	Enter the week of the month that DST will start.
<b>From: Day Of Week</b>	Enter the day of the week that DST will start on.
<b>From: Month</b>	Enter the month DST will start on.
<b>From: Time In HH:MM</b>	Enter the time of day that DST will start on.
<b>To: Which Week Of The Month</b>	Enter the week of the month the DST will end.
<b>To: Day Of Week</b>	Enter the day of the week that DST will end.
<b>To: Month</b>	Enter the month that DST will end.
<b>To: Time In HH:MM</b>	Enter the time DST will end.

Parameter	Description
<b>DST Annual Settings</b>	Using annual mode will enable DST seasonal time adjustment. Annual mode requires that the DST beginning and ending date be specified concisely. For example, specify to begin DST on April 3 and end DST on October 14.
<b>From: Month</b>	Enter the month DST will start on, each year.
<b>From: Day</b>	Enter the day of the month DST will start on, each year.
<b>From: Time In HH:MM</b>	Enter the time of day DST will start on, each year.
<b>To: Month</b>	Enter the month DST will end on, each year.
<b>To: Day</b>	Enter the day of the month DST will end on, each year.
<b>To: Time In HH:MM</b>	Enter the time of day that DST will end on, each year.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Flash File System Settings

### Why use flash file system:

In old switch system, the firmware, configuration and log information are saved in a flash with fixed addresses and size. This means that the maximum configuration file can only be 2Mb, and even if the current configuration is only 40Kb, it will still take up 2Mb of flash storage space. The configuration file number and firmware numbers are also fixed. A compatible issue will occur in the event that the configuration file or firmware size exceeds the originally designed size.

### Flash File System in our system:

The Flash File System is used to provide the user with flexible file operation on the Flash. All the firmware, configuration information and system log information are stored in the Flash as files. This means that the Flash space taken up by all the files are not fixed, it is the real file size. If the Flash space is enough, the user could download more configuration files or firmware files and use commands to display Flash file information, rename file names, and delete it. Furthermore, the user can also configure the **boot up runtime image** or the **running configuration file** if needed.

In case the file system gets corrupted, Z-modem can be used to download the backup files directly to the system. To view this window, click **Network Application > Flash File System Settings** as shown below:

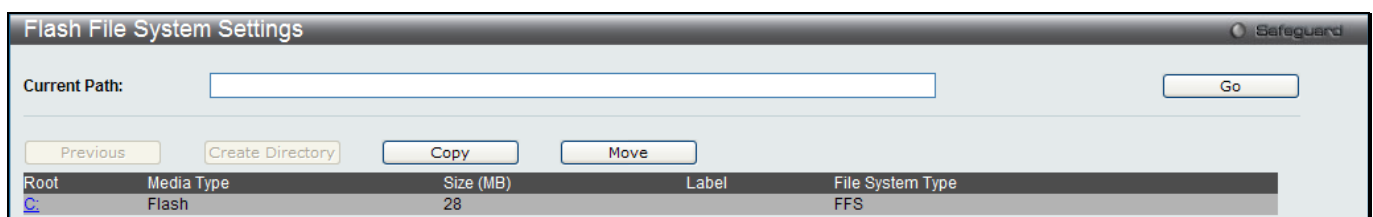


Figure 9-48 Flash File System Settings window

Enter the **Current Path** string and click the **Go** button to navigate to the path entered.

Click the [C:](#) link to navigate the C: drive

After clicking the [C:](#) link button, the following page will appear:

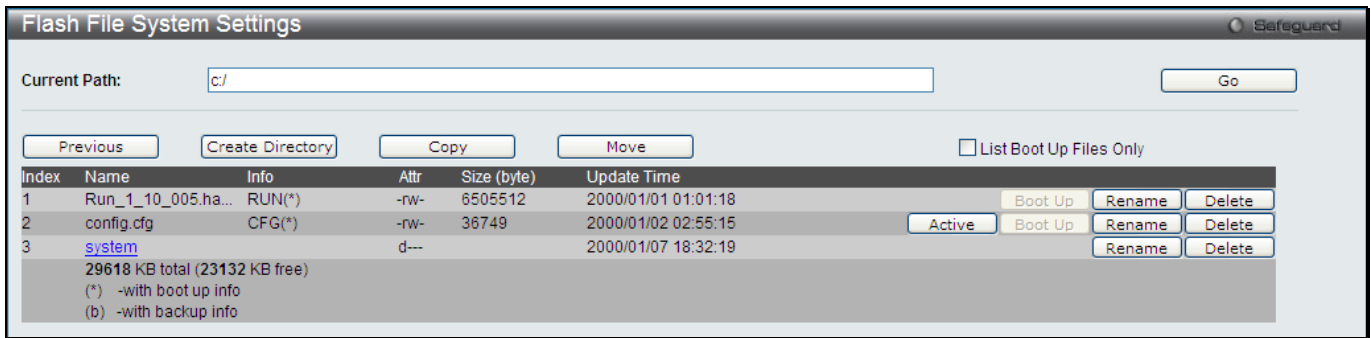


Figure 9-49 Flash File System Setting – Search for Drive window

Click the **Previous** button to return to the previous page.

Click the **Create Directory** to create a new directory within the file system of the switch.

Click the **Copy** button to copy a specific file to the switch.

Click the **Move** button to move a specific file within the switch.

Tick the **List Boot Up Files Only** option to display only the boot up files.

Click the **Active** button to set a specific config file as the active runtime configuration.

Click the **Boot Up** button to set a specific runtime image as the boot up image.

Click the **Rename** button to rename a specific file's name.

Click the **Delete** button to remove a specific file from the file system.

After clicking the **Copy** button, the following page will appear:

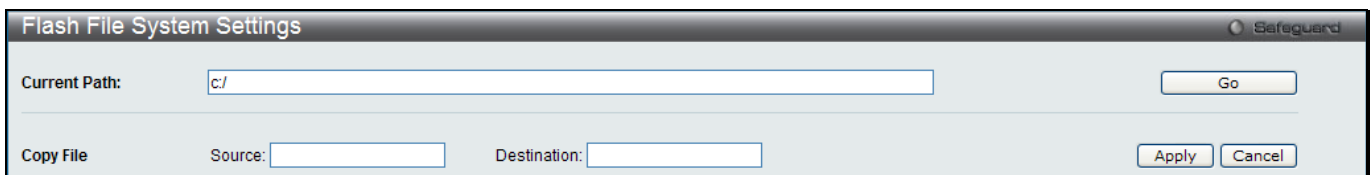


Figure 9-50 Flash File System Settings – Copy window

When copying a file to the file system of this switch, the user must enter the **Source** and **Destination** path.

Click the **Apply** button to initiate the copy.

Click the **Cancel** button the discard the process.

After clicking the **Move** button, the following page will appear:

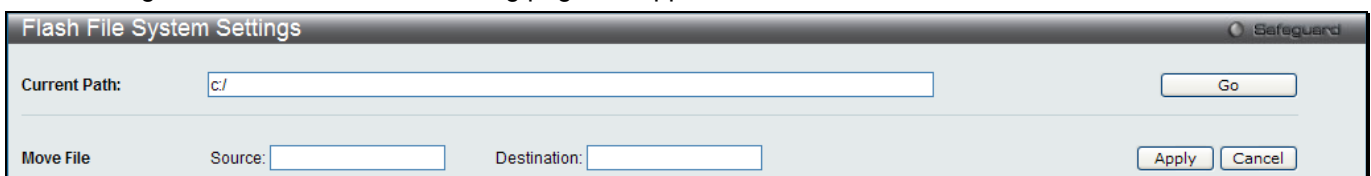


Figure 9-51 Flash File System Settings – Move window

When moving a file to another place, the user must enter the **Source** and **Destination** path.

Click the **Apply** button to initiate the copy.

Click the **Cancel** button the discard the process.



# Chapter 10 OAM

**CFM**  
**Ethernet OAM**  
**DULD Settings**  
**Cable Diagnostics**

## CFM

### CFM Settings

This window is used to configure the CFM parameters.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM Settings**, as shown below:

Figure 10-1 CFM Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>CFM State</b>	Click to enable or disable the CFM feature.
<b>All MPs Reply LTRs</b>	Click to enable or disable all MPs to reply LTRs.
<b>MD</b>	Enter the maintenance domain name.
<b>MD Index</b>	Specify the maintenance domain index used.
<b>Level</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the maintenance domain level.
<b>MIP</b>	<p>This is the control creations of MIPs.</p> <p><i>None</i> – Don't create MIPs. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>Auto</i> – MIPs can always be created on any ports in this MD, if that port is not configured with a MEP of this MD. For the intermediate switch in a MA, the setting must be auto in order for the MIPs to be created on this device.</p> <p><i>Explicit</i> – MIPs can be created on any ports in this MD, only if the next existent lower level has a MEP configured on that port, and that port is not configured with a MEP of this MD.</p>
<b>SenderID TLV</b>	<p>This is the control transmission of the SenderID TLV.</p> <p><i>None</i> – Don't transmit sender ID TLV. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>Chassis</i> – Transmit sender ID TLV with chassis ID information.</p> <p><i>Manage</i> – Transmit sender ID TLV with managed address information.</p> <p><i>Chassis Manage</i> – Transmit sender ID TLV with chassis ID information and manage</p>

	address information.
--	----------------------

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Add MA** button to add a maintenance association (MA).



**NOTE:** The MD Name value should be less than 22 characters.

After clicking the **Add MA** button, the following page will appear:

**Figure 10-2 CFM MA Settings Window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MA</b>	Enter the maintenance association name.
<b>MA Index</b>	Enter the maintenance association index.
<b>VID</b>	VLAN Identifier. Different MA must be associated with different VLANs.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **MIP Port Table** button to view the CFM MIP Table.

Click the **Edit** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

Click the **Add MEP** button to add a Maintenance End Point entry.

After clicking the **MIP Port Table** button, the following page will appear:

**Figure 10-3 CFM MIP Port Table Window**

Click the **<<Back** button to return to the previous page.

After click the **Edit** button the following window appears:

CFM MA Settings

MD MD

MD Index 1

MA (Max: 22 characters)

MA Index

VID (1-4094)

Add

<<Back

Total Entries: 1

MA Index	MA	VID	MIP	SenderID	CCM	MEP ID(s)
1	MA	1	Defer	Defer	10sec	<input type="text"/>

MIP Port Table Apply Delete Add MEP

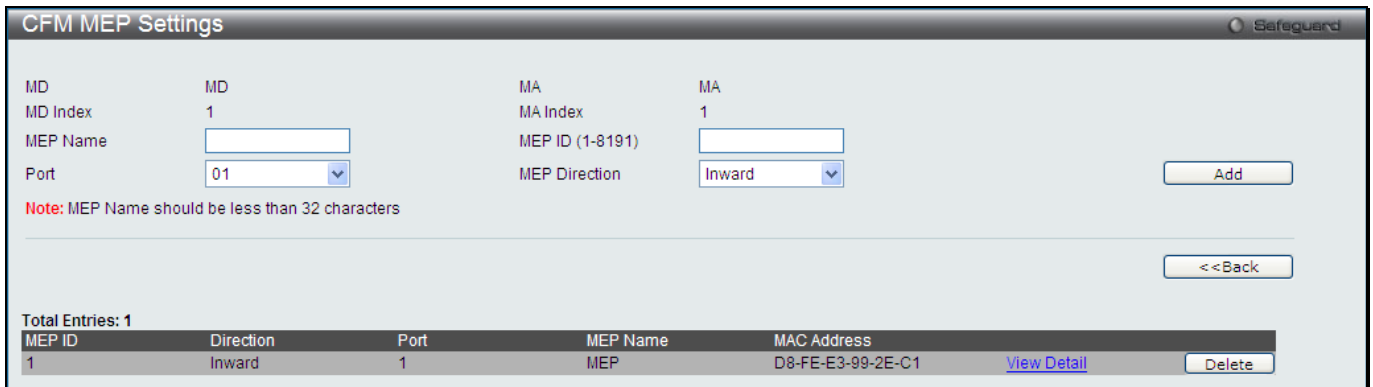
Figure 10-4 CFM MA Settings - Edit Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MIP</b>	<p>This is the control creation of MIPs.</p> <p><i>None</i> - Don't create MIPs.</p> <p><i>Defer</i> - Inherit the setting configured for the maintenance domain that this MA is associated with. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>Auto</i> - MIPs can always be created on any ports in this MA, if that port is not configured with a MEP of that MA.</p> <p><i>Explicit</i> - MIP can be created on any ports in this MA, only if the next existent lower level has a MEP configured on that port, and that port is not configured with a MEP of this MA.</p>
<b>SenderID</b>	<p>This is the control transmission of the sender ID TLV.</p> <p><i>None</i> - Don't transmit sender ID TLV. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>Chassis</i> - Transmit sender ID TLV with chassis ID information.</p> <p><i>Manage</i> - Transmit sender ID TLV with manage address information.</p> <p><i>Chassis Manage</i> - Transmit sender ID TLV with chassis ID information and manage address information.</p> <p><i>Defer</i> - Inherit the setting configured for the maintenance domain that this MA is associated with. This is the default value.</p>
<b>CCM</b>	<p>This is the CCM interval.</p> <p><i>10ms</i> - 10 milliseconds. Not recommended.</p> <p><i>100ms</i> - 100 milliseconds. Not recommended.</p> <p><i>1sec</i> - One second.</p> <p><i>10sec</i> - Ten seconds. This is the default value.</p> <p><i>1min</i> - One minute.</p> <p><i>10min</i> - Ten minutes.</p>
<b>MEP ID(s)</b>	<p>This is to specify the MEP IDs contained in the maintenance association. The range of the MEP ID is 1-8191.</p> <p>By default, there is no MEP ID in a newly created maintenance association.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

After clicking the **Add MEP** button, the following page will appear:



The screenshot shows the 'CFM MEP Settings' window. It has a title bar with 'Safeguard' on the right. The main area contains two columns of fields: 'MD' and 'MA'. Under 'MD', there are fields for 'MD Index' (value 1), 'MEP Name' (empty), and 'Port' (value 01). Under 'MA', there are fields for 'MA Index' (value 1), 'MEP ID (1-8191)' (empty), and 'MEP Direction' (value Inward). An 'Add' button is on the right. Below the fields is a red note: 'Note: MEP Name should be less than 32 characters'. At the bottom right is a '<<Back' button. Below the settings is a table with the following data:

MEP ID	Direction	Port	MEP Name	MAC Address	
1	Inward	1	MEP	D8-FE-E3-99-2E-C1	<a href="#">View Detail</a> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

Figure 10-5 CFM MEP Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MEP Name</b>	MEP name. It is unique among all MEPs configured on the device.
<b>MEP ID (1-8191)</b>	MEP MEPID. It should be configured in the MA's MEP ID list.
<b>Port</b>	Port number. This port should be a member of the MA's associated VLAN.
<b>MEP Direction</b>	This is the MEP direction. <i>Inward</i> - Inward facing (up) MEP. <i>Outward</i> - Outward facing (down) MEP.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

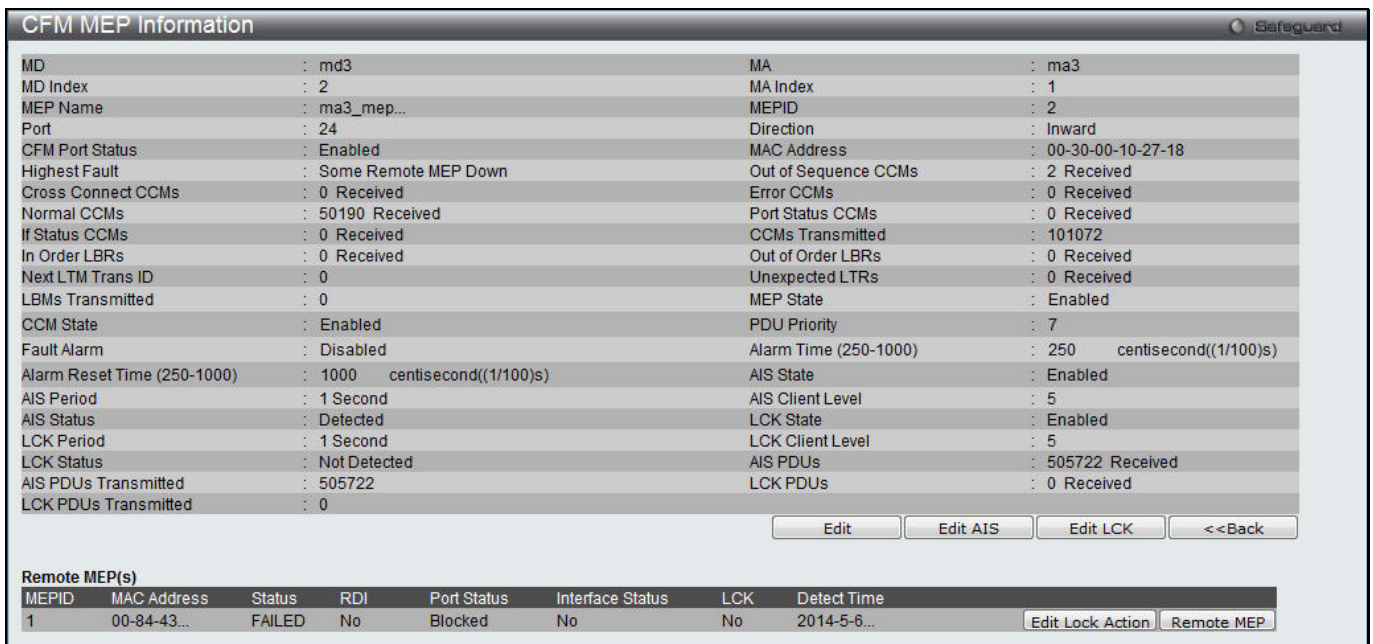
Click the [View Detail](#) link to view more information regarding the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.



**NOTE:** The MEP Name value should be less than 32 characters.

After clicking the [View Detail](#) link, the following page will appear:



The screenshot shows the 'CFM MEP Information' window. It has a title bar with 'Safeguard' on the right. The main area displays a list of parameters and their values in two columns. Below the list are buttons for 'Edit', 'Edit AIS', 'Edit LCK', and '<<Back'. At the bottom is a table with the following data:

Remote MEP(s)							
MEPID	MAC Address	Status	RDI	Port Status	Interface Status	LCK	Detect Time
1	00-84-43...	FAILED	No	Blocked	No	No	2014-5-6...

Figure 10-6 CFM MEP Information Window

After clicking the **Edit** button, the following page will appear:

CFM MEP Information Safeguard

MD : md3	MA : ma3
MD Index : 2	MA Index : 1
MEP Name : ma3_mep...	MEPID : 2
Port : 24	Direction : Inward
CFM Port Status : Enabled	MAC Address : 00-30-00-10-27-18
Highest Fault : Some Remote MEP Down	Out of Sequence CCMs : 2 Received
Cross Connect CCMs : 0 Received	Error CCMs : 0 Received
Normal CCMs : 50190 Received	Port Status CCMs : 0 Received
If Status CCMs : 0 Received	CCMs Transmitted : 101091
In Order LBRs : 0 Received	Out of Order LBRs : 0 Received
Next LTM Trans ID : 0	Unexpected LTRs : 0 Received
LBM Transmitted : 0	MEP State : Enabled ▾
CCM State : Enabled ▾	PDU Priority : 7 ▾
Fault Alarm : All ▾	Alarm Time (250-1000) : 250 centisecond((1/100)s)
Alarm Reset Time (250-1000) : 1000 centisecond((1/100)s)	AIS State : Enabled
AIS Period : 1 Second	AIS Client Level : 5
AIS Status : Detected	LCK State : Enabled
LCK Period : 1 Second	LCK Client Level : 5
LCK Status : Not Detected	AIS PDUs : 505904 Received
AIS PDUs Transmitted : 505904	LCK PDUs : 0 Received
LCK PDUs Transmitted : 0	

Remote MEP(s)							
MEPID	MAC Address	Status	RDI	Port Status	Interface Status	LCK	Detect Time
1	00-84-43...	FAILED	No	Blocked	No	No	2014-5-6...

Figure 10-7 CFM MEP Information - Edit Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MEP State</b>	This is the MEP administrative state. <i>Enable</i> - MEP is enabled. <i>Disable</i> - MEP is disabled. This is the default value.
<b>CCM State</b>	This is the CCM transmission state. <i>Enable</i> - CCM transmission enabled. <i>Disable</i> - CCM transmission disabled. This is the default value.
<b>PDU Priority</b>	The 802.1p priority is set in the CCMs and the LTMs messages transmitted by the MEP. The default value is 7.
<b>Fault Alarm</b>	This is the control types of the fault alarms sent by the MEP. <i>All</i> - All types of fault alarms will be sent. <i>MAC Status</i> - Only the fault alarms whose priority is equal to or higher than "Some Remote MEP MAC Status Error" are sent. <i>Remote CCM</i> - Only the fault alarms whose priority is equal to or higher than "Some Remote MEP Down" are sent. <i>Errors CCM</i> - Only the fault alarms whose priority is equal to or higher than "Error CCM Received" are sent. <i>Xcon CCM</i> - Only the fault alarms whose priority is equal to or higher than "Cross-connect CCM Received" are sent. <i>None</i> - No fault alarm is sent. This is the default value.
<b>Alarm Time (250-1000)</b>	This is the time that a defect must exceed before the fault alarm can be sent. The unit is in centiseconds, the range is 250-1000. The default value is 250.
<b>Alarm Reset Time (250-1000)</b>	This is the dormant duration time before a defect is triggered before the fault can be re-alarmed. The unit is in centiseconds, the range is 250-1000. The default value is 1000

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Edit AIS** button to configure the AIS settings.

Click the **Edit LCK** button to configure the LCK settings.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

Click the **Edit Lock Action** button to configure the CFM management lock.

Click the **Remote MEP** button to view the remote MEP information.

After clicking the **Edit AIS** button, the following window will appear:

**Figure 10-8 CFM Extension AIS Window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Tick the check box and use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the AIS function.
<b>Period</b>	The transmitting interval of AIS PDU. The default period is 1 second. Options to choose from are: <i>1sec</i> - Specify that the transmitting interval will be set to 1 second. <i>1min</i> - Specify that the transmitting interval will be set to 1 minute.
<b>Level</b>	The client level ID to which the MEP sends AIS PDU. The default client MD level is MD level at which the most immediate client layer MIPs and MEPs exist. Options to choose from are values between 0-7.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After click the **Edit LCK** button, the following window will appear:

**Figure 10-9 CFM Extension LCK Settings Window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Tick the check box and use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the LCK function.
<b>Period</b>	The transmitting interval of LCK PDU. The default period is 1 second. Options to choose from are: <i>1sec</i> - Specify that the transmitting interval will be set to 1 second. <i>1min</i> - Specify that the transmitting interval will be set to 1 minute.
<b>Level</b>	The client level ID to which the MEP sends LCK PDU. The default client MD level is MD level at which the most immediate client layer MIPs and MEPs exist. Options to choose from are values between 0-7.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Edit Lock Action** button, the following window will appear:

MD Name	md3
MD Index	2
MA Name	ma3
MA Index	1
MEP ID	2
Remote MEP ID	1
State	Start

**Figure 10-10 CFM Extension Lock Settings window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Select to start or stop the management lock action

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

After clicking the **Remote MEP** button, the following window will appear:

MEP Name	ma3_mep2
Remote MEPID	1
MAC Address	00-84-43-06-01-18
Status	FAILED
RDI	No
Port State	Blocked
Interface Status	No
Last CCM Serial Number	70481
Sender Chassis ID	None
Sender Management Address	None
Detect Time	2014-5-6 5:47:54

**Figure 10-11 CFM Remote MEP window**

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## CFM Port Settings

This window is used to enable or disable the CFM function on a per-port basis.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM Port Settings**, as shown below:



CFM Port Settings

From Port: 01 To Port: 01 State: Disabled

Apply

Port	State
1	Disabled
2	Disabled
3	Disabled
4	Disabled
5	Disabled
6	Disabled
7	Disabled
8	Disabled
9	Disabled
10	Disabled
11	Disabled
12	Disabled
13	Disabled
14	Disabled
15	Disabled
16	Disabled
17	Disabled
18	Disabled
19	Disabled
20	Disabled
21	Disabled
22	Disabled
23	Disabled
24	Disabled
25	Disabled
26	Disabled

Figure 10-12 CFM Port Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Use the drop-down menus to select a range of ports to be configuration.
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the state of specific port regarding the CFM configuration.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## CFM MIPCCM Table

This window is used to show the MIP CCM database entries.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM MIPCCM Table**, as shown below:

CFM MIPCCM Table

Total Entries: 0

MA	VID	MAC Address	Port
----	-----	-------------	------

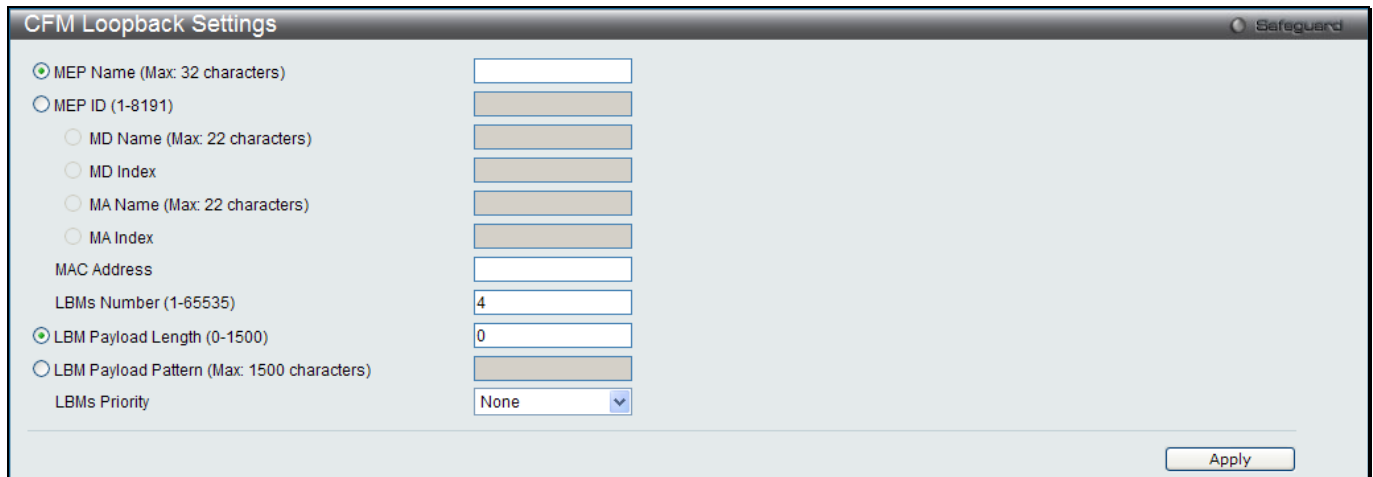
Figure 10-13 CFM MIPCCM Table Window

## CFM Loopback Settings

This window is used to start a CFM loopback test.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM Loopback Settings**, as shown below:





The image shows a web UI window titled "CFM Loopback Settings" with a "Safeguard" icon in the top right. The window contains several configuration options, each with a radio button and a corresponding input field:

- MEP Name (Max: 32 characters) [Input field]
- MEP ID (1-8191) [Input field]
- MD Name (Max: 22 characters) [Input field]
- MD Index [Input field]
- MA Name (Max: 22 characters) [Input field]
- MA Index [Input field]
- MAC Address [Input field]
- LBM's Number (1-65535) [Input field with value 4]
- LBM Payload Length (0-1500) [Input field with value 0]
- LBM Payload Pattern (Max: 1500 characters) [Input field]
- LBM's Priority [Dropdown menu with "None" selected]

An "Apply" button is located in the bottom right corner of the window.

Figure 10-14 CFM Loopback Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

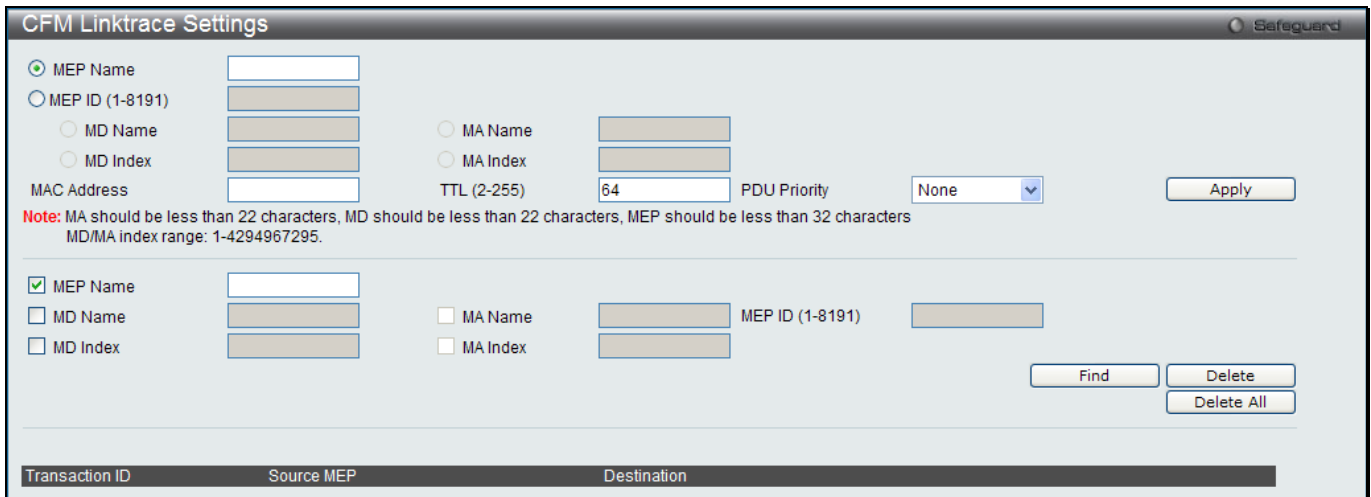
Parameter	Description
<b>MEP Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance End Point name used.
<b>MEP ID (1-8191)</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance End Point ID used.
<b>MD Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Domain name used.
<b>MD Index</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Domain index used.
<b>MA Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Association name used.
<b>MA Index</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Association index used.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the destination MAC address used here.
<b>LBM's Number (1-65535)</b>	Number of LBMs to be sent. The default value is 4.
<b>LBM Payload Length (0-1500)</b>	Click the radio button and enter the payload length of LBM to be sent. The default is 0.
<b>LBM Payload Pattern</b>	Click the radio button and enter an arbitrary amount of data to be included in a Data TLV, along with an indication whether the Data TLV is to be included.
<b>LBM's Priority</b>	The 802.1p priority to be set in the transmitted LBMs. If not specified, it uses the same priority as CCMs and LTMs sent by the MA.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## CFM Linktrace Settings

This window is used to issue a CFM link track message, display or delete the link trace responses.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM Linktrace Settings**, as shown below:



The screenshot shows the 'CFM Linktrace Settings' window. It features a 'Safeguard' icon in the top right. The main configuration area includes radio buttons for 'MEP Name', 'MEP ID (1-8191)', 'MD Name', and 'MD Index'. There are also radio buttons for 'MA Name' and 'MA Index'. A 'MAC Address' field is present, along with a 'TTL (2-255)' field set to '64' and a 'PDU Priority' dropdown menu set to 'None'. An 'Apply' button is located at the bottom right of this section. A red note states: 'Note: MA should be less than 22 characters, MD should be less than 22 characters, MEP should be less than 32 characters MD/MA index range: 1-4294967295.' Below this is a search section with checkboxes for 'MEP Name', 'MD Name', and 'MD Index', and corresponding input fields for 'MA Name', 'MA Index', and 'MEP ID (1-8191)'. 'Find', 'Delete', and 'Delete All' buttons are provided. At the bottom, a table header shows 'Transaction ID', 'Source MEP', and 'Destination'.

Figure 10-15 CFM Linktrace Settings Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MEP Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance End Point name used.
<b>MEP ID (1-8191)</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance End Point ID used.
<b>MD Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Domain name used.
<b>MD Index</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Domain index used.
<b>MA Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Association name used.
<b>MA Index</b>	Click the radio button and enter the Maintenance Association index used.
<b>MAC Address</b>	Enter the destination MAC address.
<b>TTL (2-255)</b>	Link-trace message TTL value. The default value is 64.
<b>PDU Priority</b>	The 802.1p priority to be set in the transmitted LTM. If not specified, it uses the same priority as CCMs sent by the MA.
<b>MEP Name</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance End Point name used.
<b>MD Name</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Domain name used.
<b>MD Index</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Domain index used.
<b>MEP ID (1-8191)</b>	Enter the Maintenance End Point ID used.
<b>MA Name</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Association name used.
<b>MA Index</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Association index used.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Delete All** button to remove all the entries listed.

## CFM Packet Counter

This window is used to show the CFM packet's RX/TX counters.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM Packet Counter**, as shown below:

CFM Packet Counter						
Port List (e.g.: 1, 5-10) <input type="text"/>		<input type="checkbox"/> All Ports	Type <b>Transmit</b> ▼		<input type="button" value="Find"/>	<input type="button" value="Clear"/>
<b>CFM Transmit Statistics:</b>						
Port	All Packets	CCM	LBR	LBM	LTR	LTM
All	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0
9	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0
11	0	0	0	0	0	0
12	0	0	0	0	0	0
13	0	0	0	0	0	0
14	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	0	0	0	0	0	0
16	0	0	0	0	0	0
17	0	0	0	0	0	0
18	0	0	0	0	0	0
19	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	0	0	0	0	0	0
21	0	0	0	0	0	0
22	0	0	0	0	0	0
23	0	0	0	0	0	0
24	0	0	0	0	0	0
25	0	0	0	0	0	0
26	0	0	0	0	0	0

Figure 10-16 CFM Packet Counter Window

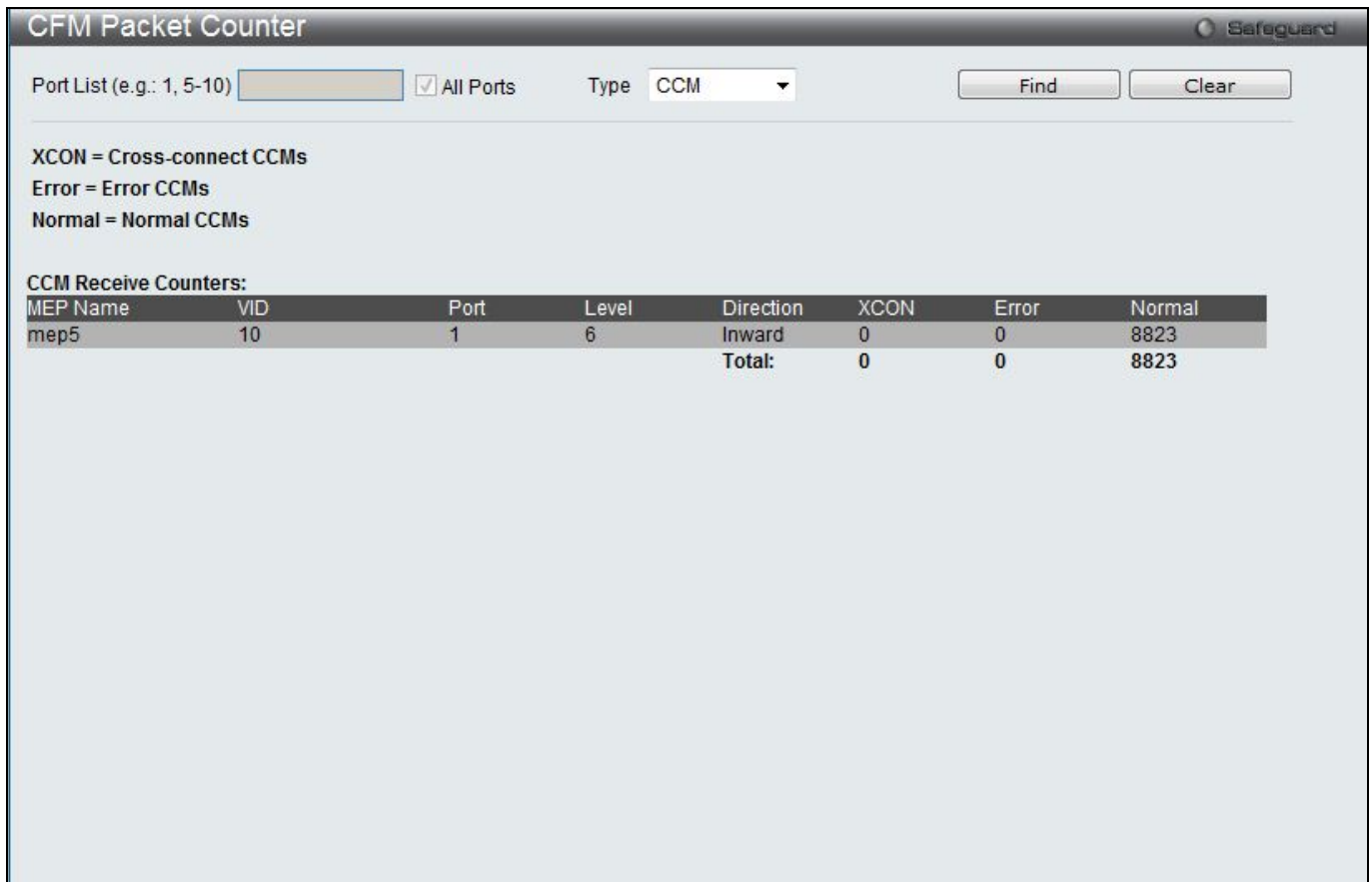
The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port List</b>	Enter a list of ports to be displayed. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to display all ports.
<b>Type</b>	<i>Transmit</i> – Selecting this option will display all the CFM packets transmitted. <i>Receive</i> – Selecting this option will display all the CFM packets received. <i>CCM</i> – Selecting this option will display all the CCM packets transmitted and received.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

After selecting *CCM* as the **Type**, the following window will appear:



CFM Packet Counter Safeguard

Port List (e.g.: 1, 5-10)   All Ports    Type

XCON = Cross-connect CCMs  
Error = Error CCMs  
Normal = Normal CCMs

CCM Receive Counters:

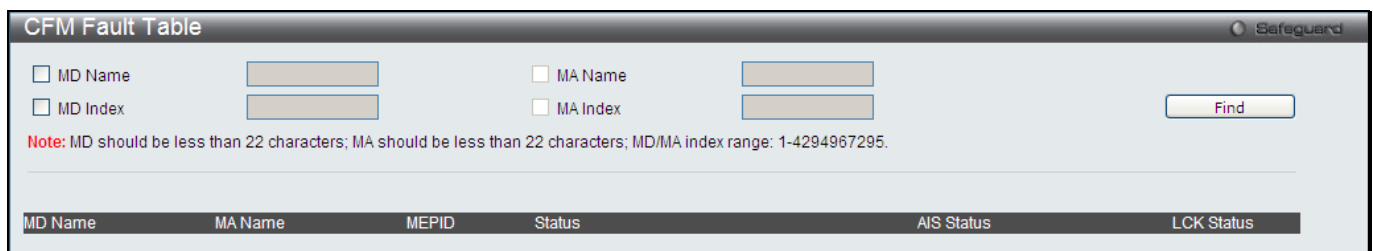
MEP Name	VID	Port	Level	Direction	XCON	Error	Normal
mep5	10	1	6	Inward	0	0	8823
<b>Total:</b>					<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>8823</b>

Figure 10-17 CFM Packet Counter Window

## CFM Fault Table

This window is used to show the MEPs that have faults.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM Fault Table**, as shown below:



CFM Fault Table Safeguard

MD Name      MA Name   
 MD Index      MA Index

**Note:** MD should be less than 22 characters; MA should be less than 22 characters; MD/MA index range: 1-4294967295.

MD Name	MA Name	MEPID	Status	AIS Status	LCK Status
---------	---------	-------	--------	------------	------------

Figure 10-18 CFM Fault Table Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>MD Name</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Domain name used.
<b>MD Index</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Domain index used.
<b>MA Name</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Association name used.
<b>MA Index</b>	Select and enter the Maintenance Association index used.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

## CFM MP Table

This window is used to display CFM MP table.

To view this window, click **OAM > CFM > CFM MP Table**, as shown below:

The screenshot shows a web interface window titled "CFM MP Table" with a "Safeguard" icon in the top right corner. The search criteria are: Port (01), Level (0-7) (empty), Direction (Any), and VID (1-4094) (empty). A "Find" button is located to the right of the VID field. Below the search criteria is a table header for "MAC Address:" with columns: MD Name, MA Name, MEPID, Level, Direction, and VID.

Figure 10-19 CFM MP Table Window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port number to view.
<b>Level (0-7)</b>	Enter the level to view.
<b>Direction</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the direction to view. <i>Inward</i> - Inward facing (up) MP. <i>Outward</i> - Outward facing (down) MP.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Enter the VID to view.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

## Ethernet OAM

### Ethernet OAM Settings

This window is used to configure the Ethernet OAM settings.

To view this window, click **OAM > Ethernet OAM > Ethernet OAM Settings**, as shown below:

**Ethernet OAM Settings**

From Port: 01 To Port: 01 Mode: Active State: Disabled Remote Loopback: None Received Remote Loopback: Ignore

**Ethernet OAM Table**

**Port 1**

Local Client	
OAM	Disabled
Mode	Active
Max OAMPDU	1518 Bytes
Remote Loopback	Supported
Unidirection	Not Supported
Link Monitoring	Supported
Variable Request	Not Supported
PDU Revision	0
Operation Status	Disable
Loopback Status	No Loopback

**Port 2**

Local Client	
OAM	Disabled
Mode	Active
Max OAMPDU	1518 Bytes
Remote Loopback	Supported
Unidirection	Not Supported
Link Monitoring	Supported
Variable Request	Not Supported
PDU Revision	0
Operation Status	Disable
Loopback Status	No Loopback

**Port 3**

Local Client	
OAM	Disabled
Mode	Active
Max OAMPDU	1518 Bytes
Remote Loopback	Supported
Unidirection	Not Supported
Link Monitoring	Supported
Variable Request	Not Supported
PDU Revision	0
Operation Status	Disable
Loopback Status	No Loopback

Figure 10-20 Ethernet OAM Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports you wish to configure.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select to operate in either <i>Active</i> or <i>Passive</i> . The default mode is <i>Active</i> .
<b>State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the OAM function.
<b>Remote Loopback</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select Ethernet OAM remote loopback. <i>None</i> – Select to disable the remote loopback. <i>Start</i> – Select to request the peer to change to the remote loopback mode. <i>Stop</i> – Select to request the peer to change to the normal operation mode.
<b>Received Remote Loopback</b>	Use the drop-down menu to configure the client to process or to ignore the received Ethernet OAM remote loopback command. <i>Process</i> – Select to process the received Ethernet OAM remote loopback command. <i>Ignore</i> – Select to ignore the received Ethernet OAM remote loopback command.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Ethernet OAM Configuration Settings

This window is used to configure Ethernet OAM configuration settings.

To view this window, click **OAM > Ethernet OAM > Ethernet OAM Configuration Settings**, as shown below:

**Ethernet OAM Configuration Settings**

Ethernet OAM Configuration Settings

From Port: 01 To Port: 01 Link Event: Link Monitor Link Monitor: Error Symbol Threshold (0-4294967295): 1 Window (1000-60000): 1000 ms

Notify: Enabled

**Ethernet OAM Configuration Table**

Port 1	
OAM	Disabled
Mode	Active
Dying Gasp	Enabled
Critical Event	Enabled
Remote Loopback OAMPDU	Not Processed
Symbol Error	
Notify State	Enabled
Window	1000 Milliseconds
Threshold	1 Error Symbol
Frame Error	
Notify State	Enabled
Window	1000 Milliseconds
Threshold	1 Error Frame
Frame Period Error	
Notify State	Enabled
Window	1488100 Frames
Threshold	1 Error Frame
Frame Seconds Error	
Notify State	Enabled
Window	60000 Milliseconds
Threshold	1 Error Seconds
Port 2	
OAM	Disabled
Mode	Active
Dying Gasp	Enabled
Critical Event	Enabled
Remote Loopback OAMPDU	Not Processed

Figure 10-21 Ethernet OAM Configuration Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports you wish to configure.
<b>Link Event</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the link events, <i>Link Monitor</i> or <i>Critical Link Event</i> .
<b>Link Monitor</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select link monitor. Available options are <i>Error Symbol</i> , <i>Error Frame</i> , <i>Error Frame Period</i> , and <i>Error Frame Seconds</i> .
<b>Critical Link Event</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select between <i>Dying Gasp</i> and <i>Critical Event</i> .
<b>Threshold</b>	Enter the number of error frame or symbol in the period is required to be equal to or greater than in order for the event to be generated. The available value changes based on the selected <b>Link Monitor</b> .
<b>Window</b>	Enter the period of error frame or symbol in milliseconds summary event. The available value changes based on the selected <b>Link Monitor</b> .
<b>Notify</b>	Specify to enable or disable the event notification. The default state is <i>Enabled</i> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Ethernet OAM Event Log

The window is used to show ports Ethernet OAM event log information.

To view this window, click **OAM > Ethernet OAM > Ethernet OAM Event Log**, as shown below:

**Ethernet OAM Event Log** Safeguard

Port: 01 Find

Port List (e.g.: 1, 4-6)  All Ports Clear

**Local Event Statistics**

Error Symbol Event	0
Error Frame Event	0
Error Frame Period Event	0
Error Frame Seconds Event	0
Dying Gasp	0
Critical Event	0

**Remote Event Statistics**

Error Symbol Event	0
Error Frame Event	0
Error Frame Period Event	0
Error Frame Seconds Event	0
Dying Gasp	0
Critical Event	0

Total Entries: 0

Index	Type	Location	Time Stamp	Value	Window	Threshold	Accumulated errors
-------	------	----------	------------	-------	--------	-----------	--------------------

Figure 10-22 Ethernet OAM Event Log window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the port number to view.
<b>Port List</b>	Enter a list of ports. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to select all ports.

Click the **Find** button to locate a specific entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

## Ethernet OAM Statistics

The window is used to show ports Ethernet OAM statistics information.

To view this window, click **OAM > Ethernet OAM > Ethernet OAM Statistics**, as shown below:



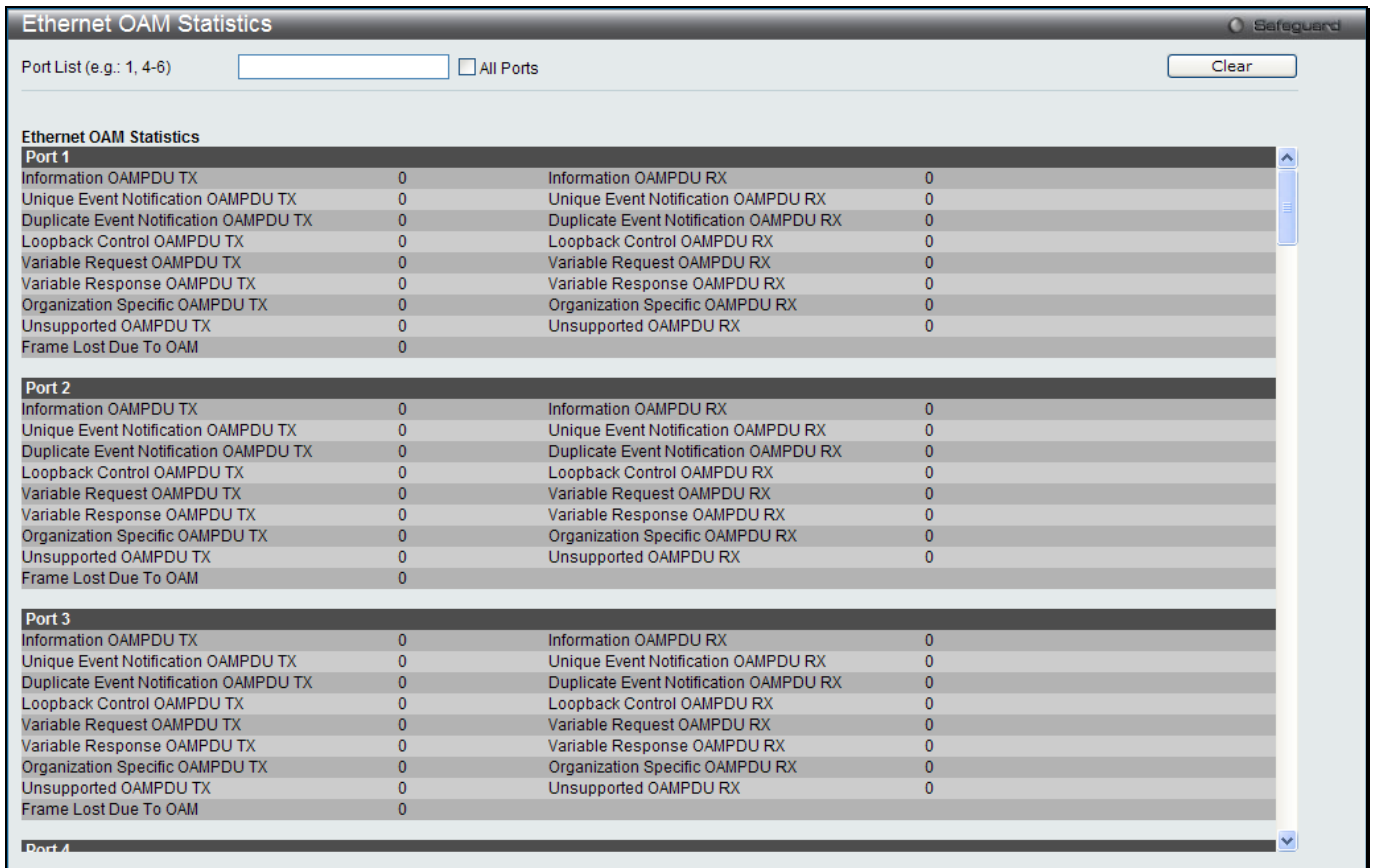


Figure 10-23 Ethernet OAM Statistics window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Port List	Enter a list of ports. Tick the <b>All Ports</b> check box to select all ports.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all the information entered in the fields.

## DULD Settings

This window is used to configure and display the unidirectional link detection on port.

To view this window, click **OAM > DULD Settings** as shown below:

DULD Settings
Safeguard

From Port  
01

To Port  
01

Admin State  
Disabled

Mode  
Normal

Discovery Time (5-65535)  
5 sec

Apply

Port	Admin State	Oper Status	Mode	Link Status	Discovery Time (sec)
1	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
2	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
3	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
4	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
5	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
6	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
7	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
8	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
9	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
10	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
11	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
12	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
13	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
14	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
15	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
16	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
17	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
18	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
19	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
20	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
21	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
22	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
23	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
24	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
25	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5
26	Disabled	Disabled	Normal	Unknown	5

Figure 10-24 DULD Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>From Port / To Port</b>	Select a range of ports you wish to configure.
<b>Admin State</b>	Use the drop-down menu to enable or disable the selected ports unidirectional link detection status.
<b>Mode</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select Mode between <i>Shutdown</i> and <i>Normal</i> . <i>Shutdown</i> – If any unidirectional link is detected, disable the port and log an event. <i>Normal</i> - Only log an event when a unidirectional link is detected.
<b>Discovery Time (5-65535)</b>	Enter these ports neighbor discovery time. If the discovery is timeout, the unidirectional link detection will start.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

## Cable Diagnostics

The cable diagnostics feature is designed primarily for administrators or customer service representatives to verify and test copper cables; it can rapidly determine the quality of the cables and the types of error.

To view this window, click **OAM > Cable Diagnostics** as shown below:

**Cable Diagnostics**
Safeguard

Port  Test

Port	Type	Link Status	Test Result	Cable Length (M)
<p>The cable diagnostics feature is designed primarily for administrators or customer service representatives to verify and test copper cables; it can rapidly determine the quality of the cables and the types of error.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If cable length is displayed as "NA" it means the cable length is "Not Available". This is due to the port being unable to obtain cable length/either because its link partner is powered-off, or the cables used are broken and/or bad in quality.</li> <li>2. The maximum cable length is limited to 120 meters.</li> <li>3. The accuracy is +/-5 meters, therefore "No Cable" may be displayed under "Test Result", when the length of cable is less than 5 meters.</li> <li>4. It also measures cable fault and identifies the fault in length according to the distance from this switch.</li> </ol>				

Figure 10-25 Cable Diagnostics window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Select a port you wish to display.

Click the **Test** button to view the cable diagnostics for a particular port.



**NOTE:** Cable diagnostic function limitations. Cable length detection is only supported on GE ports if the port or the link partner is powered off. Ports must be linked up and running at 1000M speed. Cross-talk errors detection is not supported on FE ports.

#### Test Result messages:

1. **Open** - The cable in the error pair does not have a connection at the specified position.
2. **Short** - The cable in the error pair has a short problem at the specified position.
3. **Crosstalk** - The cable in the error pair has a crosstalk problem at the specified position.
4. **Shutdown** - The remote partner is powered off.
5. **Unknown** - The diagnosis does not obtain the cable status. Please try again.
6. **OK** - The pair or cable has no error.
7. **No cable** - The port does not have any cable connected to the remote partner.

# Chapter 11 Monitoring

**Utilization**  
**Statistics**  
**Mirror**  
**Ping Test**  
**Trace Route**  
**Peripheral**

## Utilization

### CPU Utilization

Users can display the percentage of the CPU being used, expressed as an integer percentage and calculated as a simple average by time interval.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Utilization > CPU Utilization** as shown below:

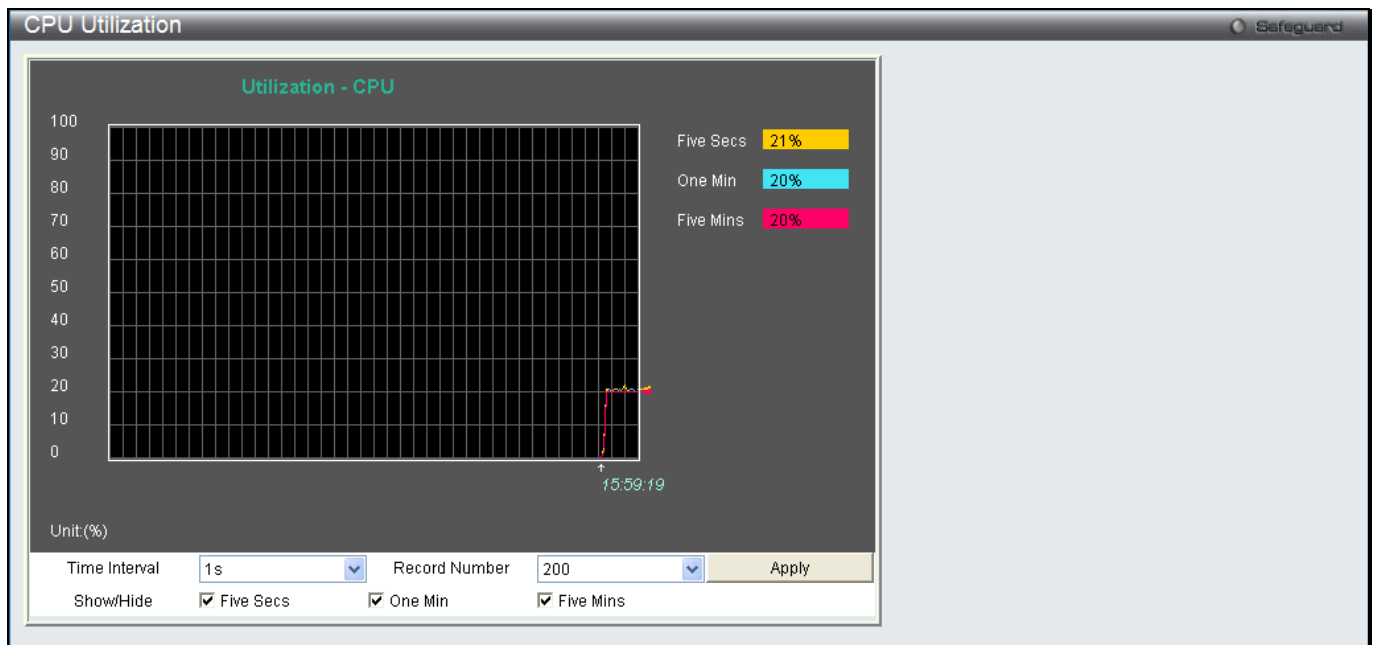


Figure 11-1 CPU Utilization window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between <i>1s</i> and <i>60s</i> , where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is <i>1s</i> .
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between <i>20</i> and <i>200</i> . The default value is <i>200</i> .
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display <b>Five Secs</b> , <b>One Min</b> , and <b>Five Mins</b> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

### DRAM & Flash Utilization

On this page the user can view information regarding the DRAM and Flash utilization.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Utilization > DRAM & Flash Utilization** as shown below:

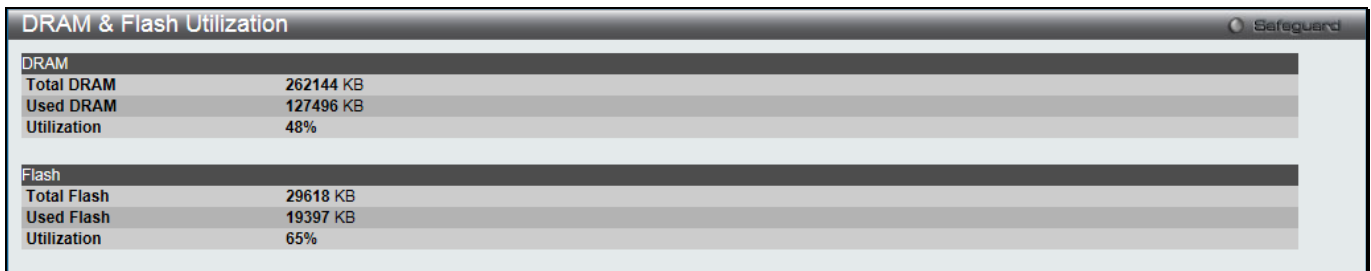


Figure 11-2 DRAM &amp; Flash Utilization window

## Port Utilization

Users can display the percentage of the total available bandwidth being used on the port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Utilization > Port Utilization** as shown below:

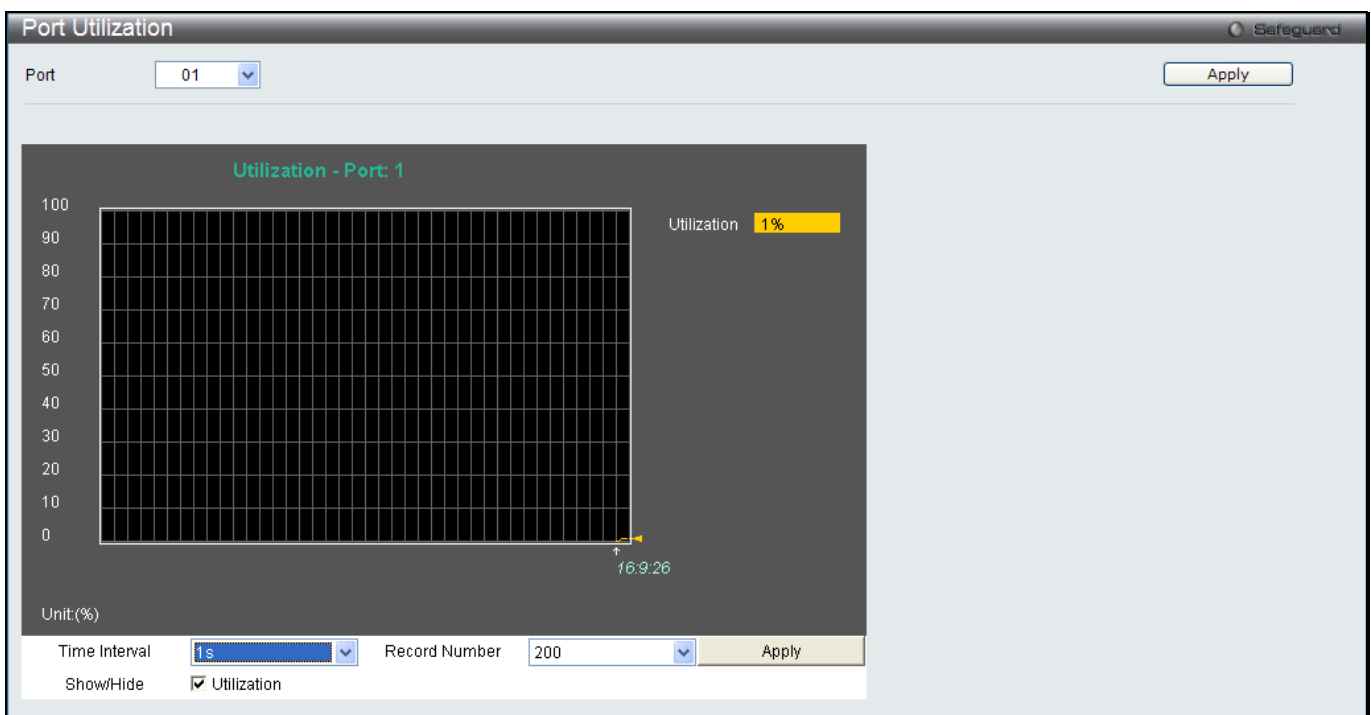


Figure 11-3 Port Utilization window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between 1s and 60s, where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between 20 and 200. The default value is 200.
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display <b>Utilization</b> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

## Statistics

## Port Statistics

### Packets

The Web manager allows various packet statistics to be viewed as either a line graph or a table. Six windows are offered.

### Received (RX)

To select a port to view these statistics for, select the port by using the Port drop-down menu. The user may also use the real-time graphic of the Switch at the top of the web page by simply clicking on a port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Port Statistics > Packets > Received (RX)** as shown below:

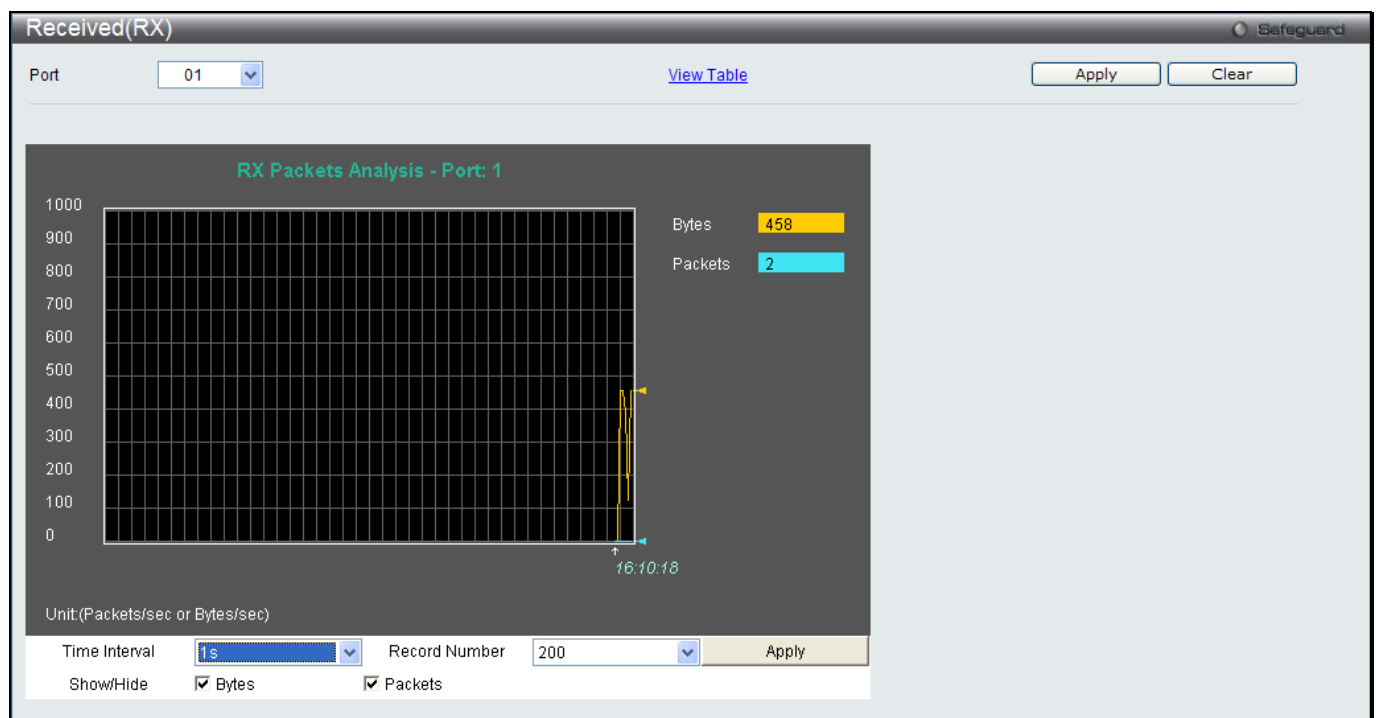


Figure 11-4 Received (RX) window (for Bytes and Packets)

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

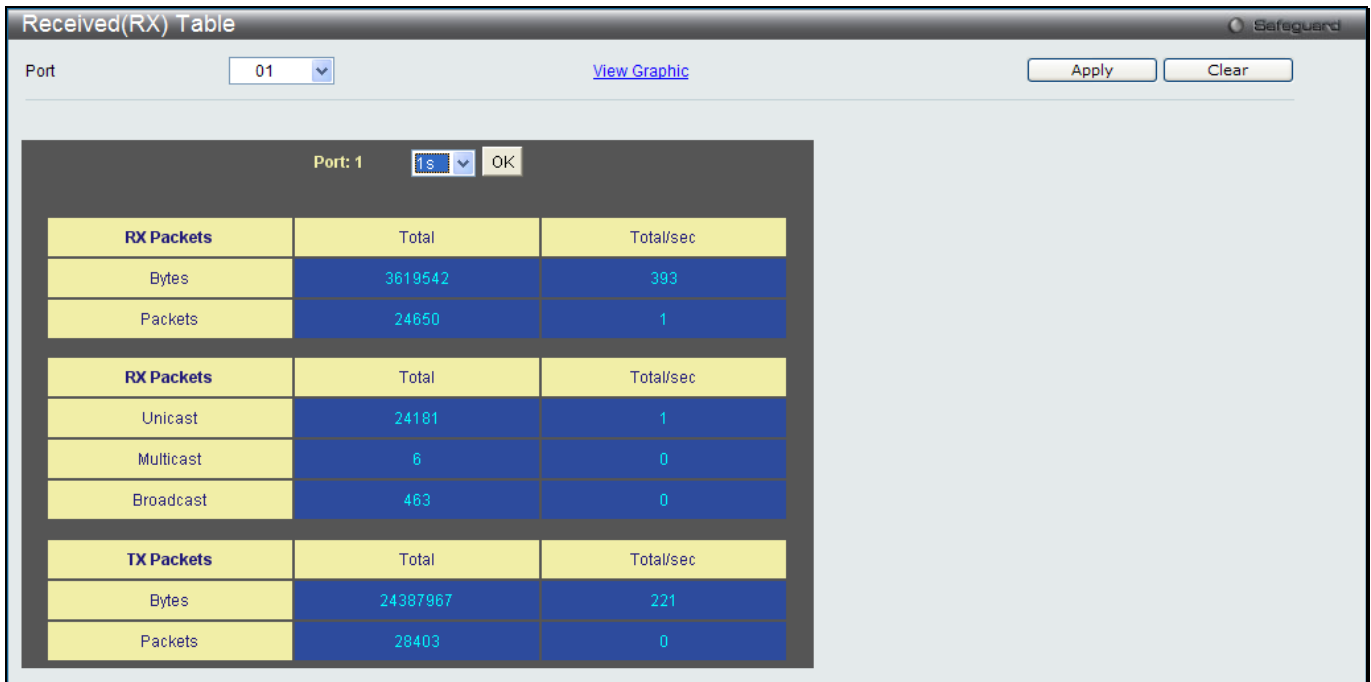


Figure 11-5 RX Packets Analysis Table window

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between 1s and 60s, where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between 20 and 200. The default value is 200.
<b>Bytes</b>	Counts the number of bytes received on the port.
<b>Packets</b>	Counts the number of packets received on the port.
<b>Unicast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were received by a unicast address.
<b>Multicast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were received by a multicast address.
<b>Broadcast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were received by a broadcast address.
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether to display <b>Bytes</b> and <b>Packets</b> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all statistics counters on this window.

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

Click the [View Graphic](#) link to display the information in a line graph rather than a table.

## UMB\_Cast (RX)

To select a port to view these statistics for, select the port by using the Port drop-down menu. The user may also use the real-time graphic of the Switch at the top of the web page by simply clicking on a port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Port Statistics > Packets > UMB\_Cast (RX)** as shown below:

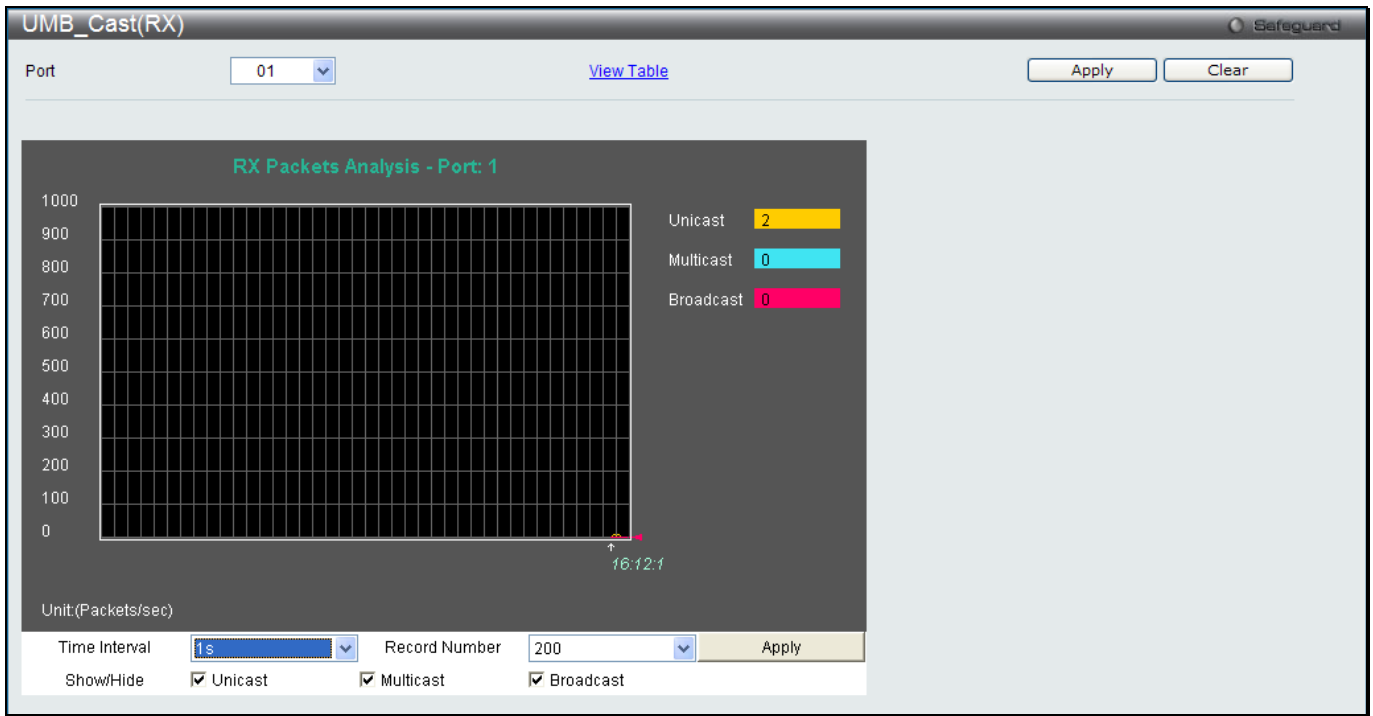


Figure 11-6 UMB\_cast (RX) window (for Unicast, Multicast, and Broadcast Packets)

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

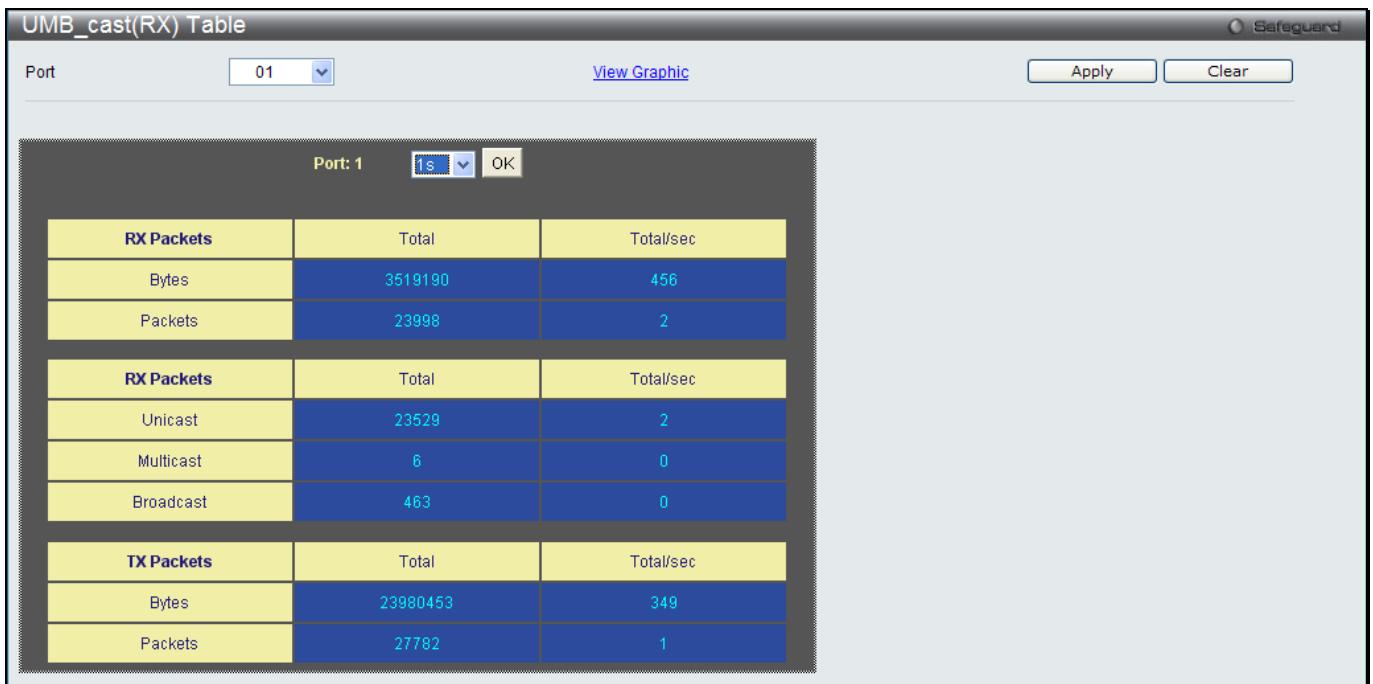


Figure 11-7 RX Packets Analysis window (table for Unicast, Multicast, and Broadcast Packets)

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between 1s and 60s, where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between 20 and 200. The default value is 200.
<b>Unicast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were received by a unicast address.



<b>Multicast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were received by a multicast address.
<b>Broadcast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were received by a broadcast address.
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display Multicast, Broadcast, and Unicast Packets.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all statistics counters on this window.

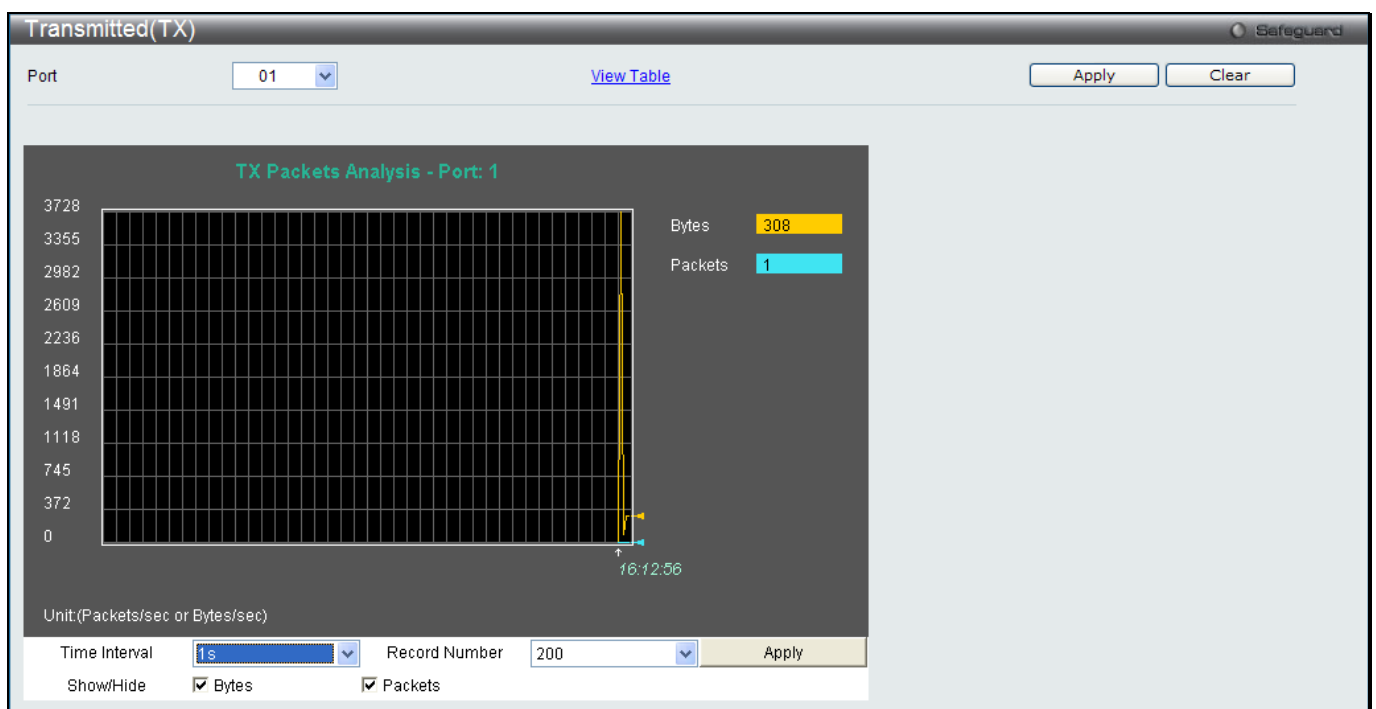
Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

Click the [View Graphic](#) link to display the information in a line graph rather than a table.

## Transmitted (TX)

To select a port to view these statistics for, select the port by using the Port drop-down menu. The user may also use the real-time graphic of the Switch at the top of the web page by simply clicking on a port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Port Statistics > Packets > Transmitted (TX)** as shown below:



**Figure 11-8 Transmitted (TX) window (for Bytes and Packets)**

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

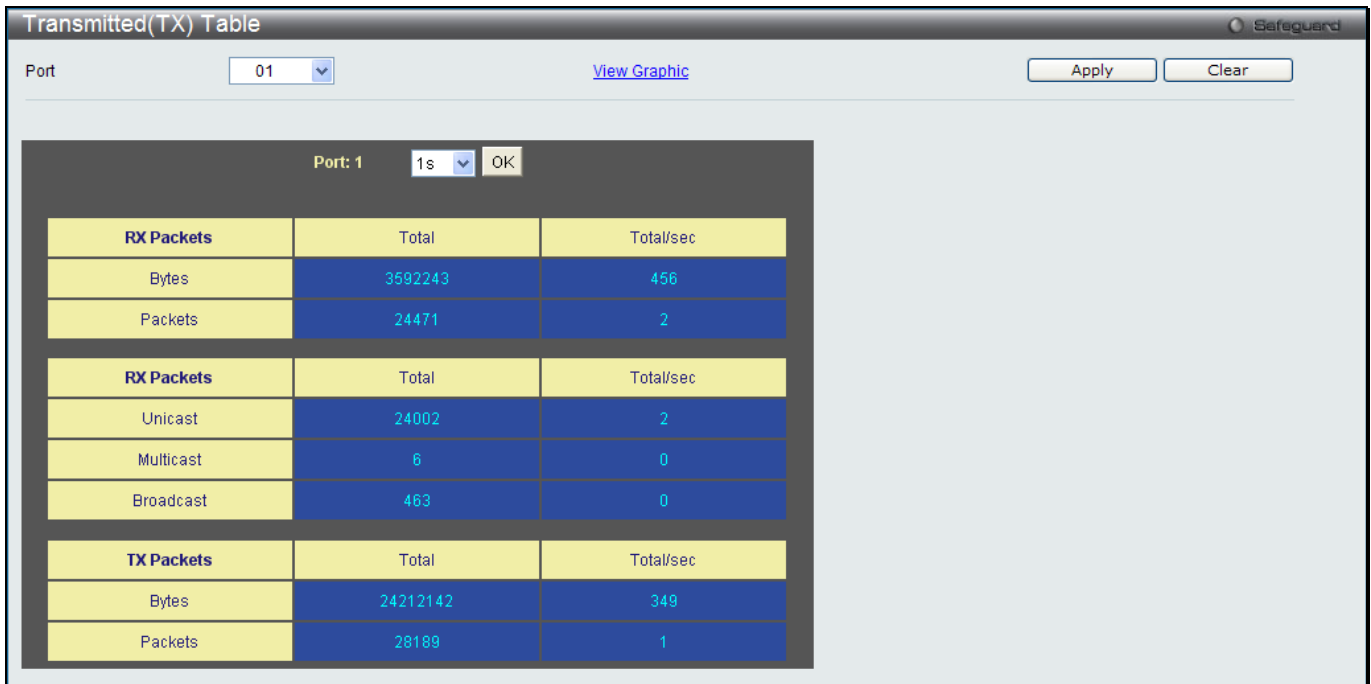


Figure 11-9 TX Packets Analysis window (table for Bytes and Packets)

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between <i>1s</i> and <i>60s</i> , where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between <i>20</i> and <i>200</i> . The default value is <i>200</i> .
<b>Bytes</b>	Counts the number of bytes successfully sent on the port.
<b>Packets</b>	Counts the number of packets successfully sent on the port.
<b>Unicast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were transmitted by a unicast address.
<b>Multicast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were transmitted by a multicast address.
<b>Broadcast</b>	Counts the total number of good packets that were transmitted by a broadcast address.
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display <b>Bytes</b> and <b>Packets</b> .

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all statistics counters on this window.

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

Click the [View Graphic](#) link to display the information in a line graph rather than a table.

## Errors

The Web manager allows port error statistics compiled by the Switch's management agent to be viewed as either a line graph or a table. Four windows are offered.

### Received (RX)

To select a port to view these statistics for, select the port by using the Port drop-down menu. The user may also use the real-time graphic of the Switch at the top of the web page by simply clicking on a port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Port Statistics > Errors > Received (RX)** as shown below:

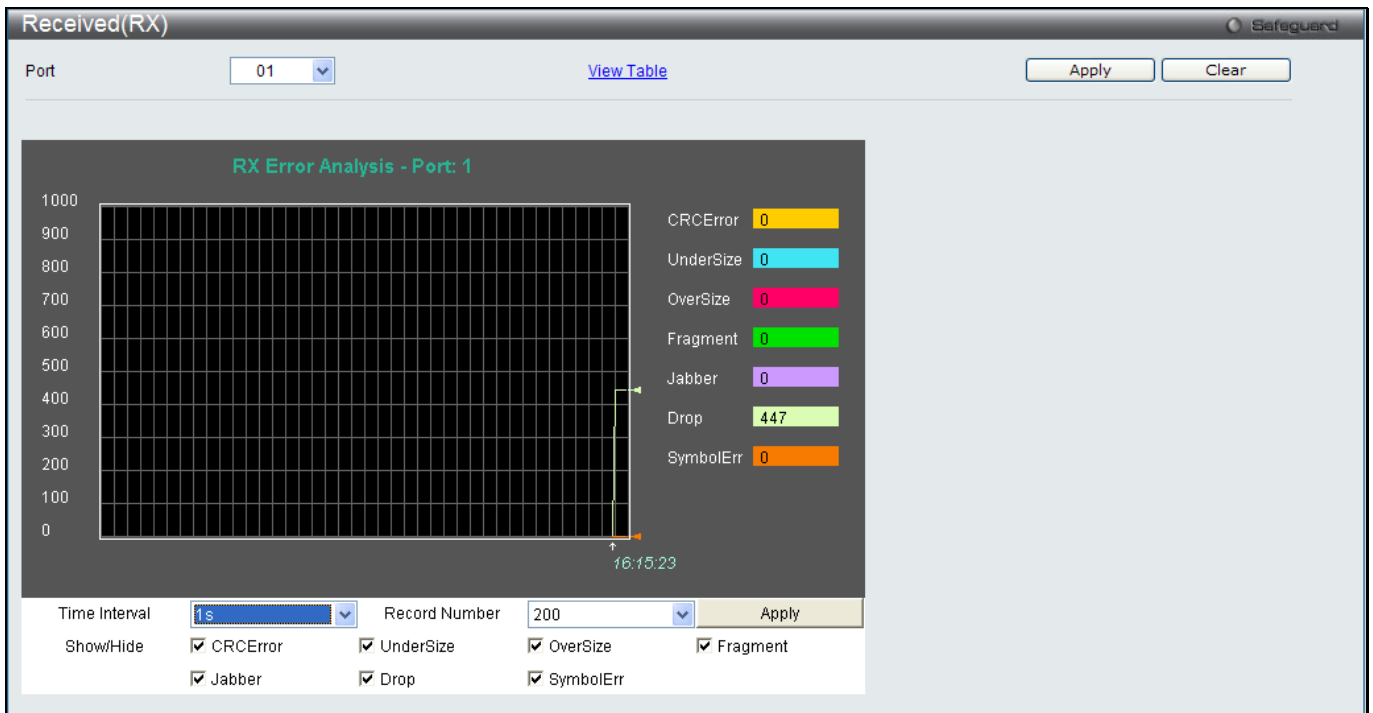


Figure 11-10 Received (RX) window (for errors)

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.



Figure 11-11 RX Error Analysis window (table)

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between 1s and 60s, where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between 20 and 200. The default value is 200.
<b>CRCError</b>	Counts otherwise valid packets that did not end on a byte (octet) boundary.
<b>UnderSize</b>	The number of packets detected that are less than the minimum permitted packets size

	of 64 bytes and have a good CRC. Undersize packets usually indicate collision fragments, a normal network occurrence.
<b>OverSize</b>	Counts valid packets received that were longer than 1518 octets and less than the MAX_PKT_LEN. Internally, MAX_PKT_LEN is equal to 1536.
<b>Fragment</b>	The number of packets less than 64 bytes with either bad framing or an invalid CRC. These are normally the result of collisions.
<b>Jabber</b>	Counts invalid packets received that were longer than 1518 octets and less than the MAX_PKT_LEN with a CRCError. Internally, MAX_PKT_LEN is equal to 1536.
<b>Drop</b>	The number of packets that are dropped by this port since the last Switch reboot.
<b>Symbol</b>	Counts the number of packets received that have errors received in the symbol on the physical labor.
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display CRCError, UnderSize, OverSize, Fragment, Jabber, Drop, and SymbolErr errors.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all statistics counters on this window.

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

Click the [View Graphic](#) link to display the information in a line graph rather than a table.

## Transmitted (TX)

To select a port to view these statistics for, select the port by using the Port drop-down menu. The user may also use the real-time graphic of the Switch at the top of the web page by simply clicking on a port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Port Statistics > Errors > Transmitted (TX)** as shown below:

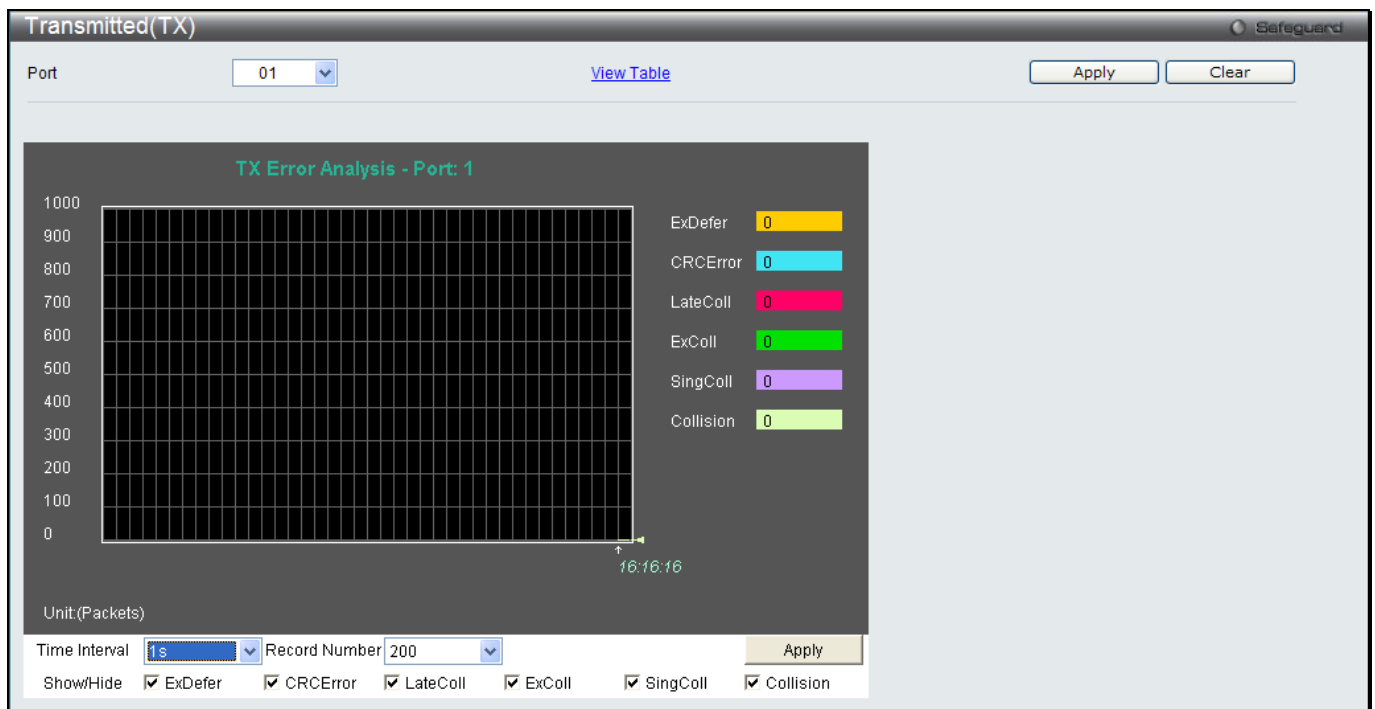


Figure 11-12 Transmitted (TX) window (for errors)

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.



Figure 11-13 TX Error Analysis window (table)

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between 1s and 60s, where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between 20 and 200. The default value is 200.
<b>ExDefer</b>	Counts the number of packets for which the first transmission attempt on a particular interface was delayed because the medium was busy.
<b>CRC Error</b>	Counts otherwise valid packets that did not end on a byte (octet) boundary.
<b>LateColl</b>	Counts the number of times that a collision is detected later than 512 bit-times into the transmission of a packet.
<b>ExColl</b>	Excessive Collisions. The number of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions.
<b>SingColl</b>	Single Collision Frames. The number of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by more than one collision.
<b>Collision</b>	An estimate of the total number of collisions on this network segment.
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display ExDefer, CRCError, LateColl, ExColl, SingColl, and Collision errors.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all statistics counters on this window.

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

Click the [View Graphic](#) link to display the information in a line graph rather than a table.

## Packet Size

Users can display packets received by the Switch, arranged in six groups and classed by size, as either a line graph or a table. Two windows are offered. To select a port to view these statistics for, select the port by using the Port drop-down menu. The user may also use the real-time graphic of the Switch at the top of the web page by simply clicking on a port.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Packet Size** as shown below:

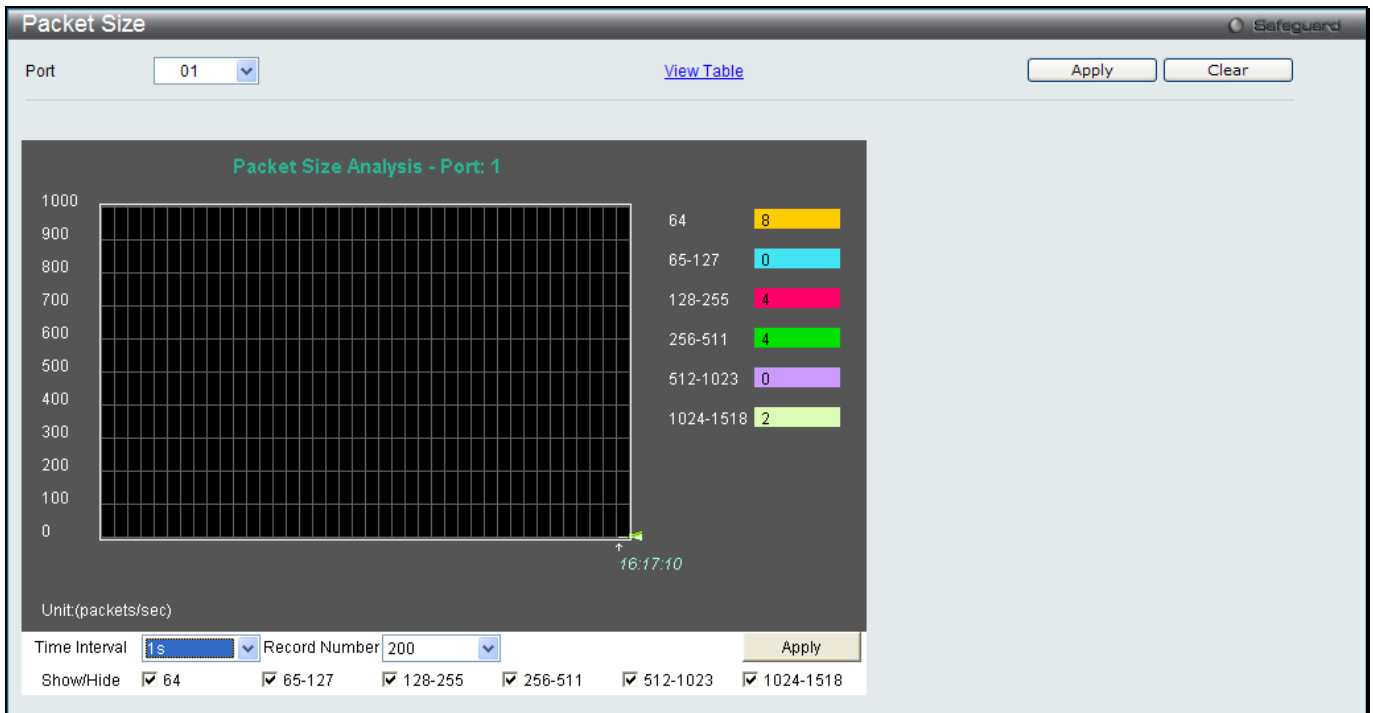


Figure 11-14 Packet Size window

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.



Figure 11-15 RX Size Analysis window (table)

The fields that can be configured or displayed are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Time Interval</b>	Select the desired setting between 1s and 60s, where "s" stands for seconds. The default value is one second.
<b>Record Number</b>	Select number of times the Switch will be polled between 20 and 200. The default value is 200.
<b>64</b>	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
<b>65-127</b>	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65

	and 127 octets in length inclusive (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
<b>128-255</b>	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length inclusive (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
<b>256-511</b>	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length inclusive (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
<b>512-1023</b>	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length inclusive (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
<b>1024-1518</b>	The total number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length inclusive (excluding framing bits but including FCS octets).
<b>Show/Hide</b>	Check whether or not to display 64, 65-127, 128-255, 256-511, 512-1023, and 1024-1518 packets received.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made for each individual section.

Click the **Clear** button to clear all statistics counters on this window.

Click the [View Table](#) link to display the information in a table rather than a line graph.

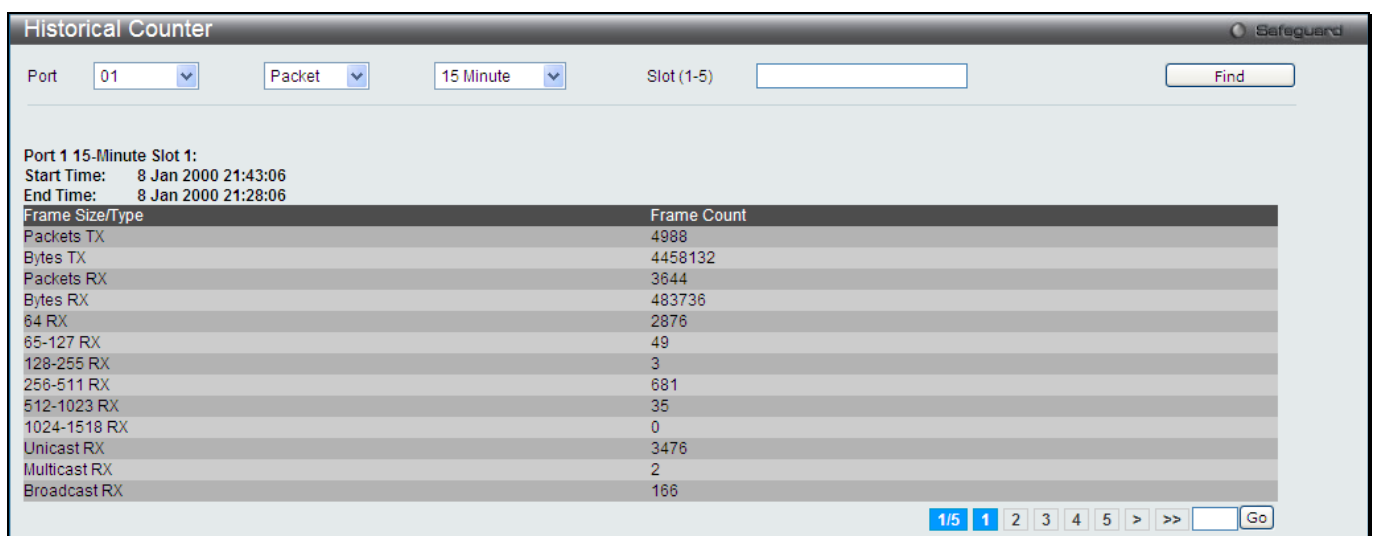
Click the [View Graphic](#) link to display the information in a line graph rather than a table.

## Historical Counter & Utilization

### Historical Counter

This window is used to show the statistics for the packets sent and received by the Switch.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Historical Counter & Utilization > Historical Counter** as shown below:



**Figure 11-16 Historical Counter window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to choose the port that will display statistics.
<b>Packet / Error</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either valid packets or error packets to be displayed.
<b>15 Minute / 1 Day</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either 15-minute or 1-day time slot.
<b>Slot</b>	Select the slot number to be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to display the information.

## Historical Utilization

This window is used to display the historical utilization of CPU or memory.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Statistics > Historical Counter & Utilization > Historical Utilization** as shown below:

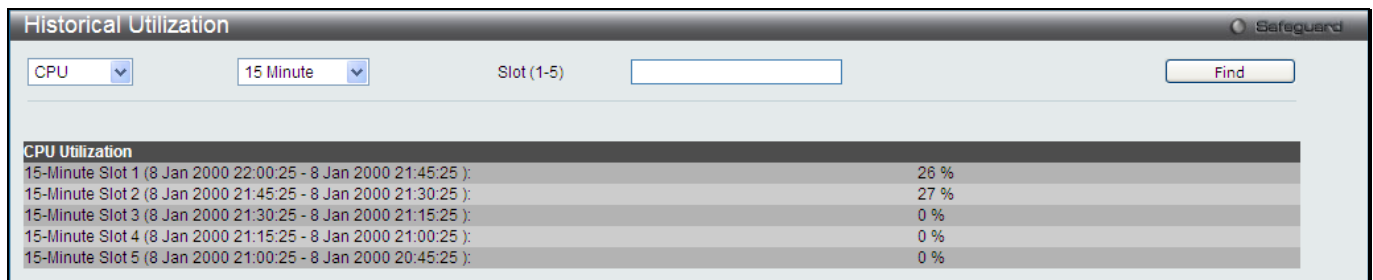


Figure 11-17 Historical Utilization window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>CPU / Memory</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either CPU or Memory to be displayed.
<b>15 Minute / 1 Day</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select either 15-minute or 1-day time slot.
<b>Slot</b>	Select the slot number to be displayed.

Click the **Find** button to display the information.

## Mirror

The Switch allows you to copy frames transmitted and received on a port and redirect the copies to another port. You can attach a monitoring device to the mirrored port, such as a sniffer or an RMON probe, to view details about the packets passing through the first port. This is useful for network monitoring and troubleshooting purposes.

## Port Mirror Settings

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Mirror > Port Mirror Settings** as shown below:

Sniffer Mode	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
TX	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
TX Forwarding	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
RX	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Both	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
None	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
TX																										
TX Forwarding																										
RX																										

Figure 11-18 Port Mirror Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:



Parameter	Description
<b>State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the Port Mirroring feature.
<b>Target Port</b>	Use the drop-down menu to select the Target Port used for Port Mirroring.
<b>TX (Egress)</b>	Click the radio buttons to select whether the port should include outgoing traffic.
<b>TX Forwarding</b>	Click the radio buttons to add the ports to hardware egress mirroring port bitmap only when the port states of all the STGs are forwarding.
<b>RX (Ingress)</b>	Click the radio buttons to select whether the port should include incoming traffic.
<b>Both</b>	Click the radio buttons to select whether the port should include both incoming and outgoing traffic.
<b>None</b>	Click the radio buttons to select whether the port should not include any traffic.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.



**NOTE:** You cannot mirror a fast port onto a slower port. For example, if you try to mirror the traffic from a 100 Mbps port onto a 10 Mbps port, this can cause throughput problems. The port you are copying frames from should always support an equal or lower speed than the port to which you are sending the copies. Please note a target port and a source port cannot be the same port.

## RSPAN Settings

This window controls the RSPAN function. The purpose of the RSPAN function is to mirror packets to a remote switch. A packet travels from the switch where the monitored packet is received, passing through the intermediate switch, and then to the switch where the sniffer is attached. The first switch is also named the source switch.

To make the RSPAN function work, the RSPAN VLAN source setting must be configured on the source switch. For the intermediate and the last switch, the RSPAN VLAN redirect setting must be configured.



**NOTE:** RSPAN VLAN mirroring will only work when RSPAN is enabled (when one RSPAN VLAN has been configured with a source port). The RSPAN redirect function will work when RSPAN is enabled and at least one RSPAN VLAN has been configured with redirect ports.

To view the following window, click **Monitoring > Mirror > RSPAN Settings** as shown below:

Figure 11-19 RSPAN Settings window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RSPAN State</b>	Click the radio buttons to enable or disable the RSPAN feature.
<b>VLAN Name</b>	Create the RSPAN VLAN by VLAN name.
<b>VID (1-4094)</b>	Create the RSPAN VLAN by VLAN ID.

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **Add** button to add a new entry based on the information entered.

Click the **Modify** button to re-configure the specific entry.

Click the **Delete** button to remove the specific entry.

After clicking the **Modify** button, the following window will appear:

Figure 11-20 RSPAN Settings - Modify window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Source Ports</b>	<p>If the ports are not specified by option, the source of RSPAN will come from the source specified by the mirror command or the flow-based source specified by an ACL. If no parameter is specified for source, it deletes the configured source parameters.</p> <p>Select <b>RX</b>, <b>TX</b>, or <b>Both</b> to specify in which direction the packets will be monitored. Click <b>Add</b> or <b>Delete</b> to add or delete source ports.</p>
<b>Redirect Port List</b>	<p>Specify the output port list for the RSPAN VLAN packets. If the redirect port is a Link Aggregation port, the Link Aggregation behavior will apply to the RSPAN packets. Click <b>Add</b> or <b>Delete</b> to add or delete redirect ports.</p>

Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes made.

Click the **<<Back** button to discard the changes made and return to the previous page.

## Ping Test

Ping is a small program that sends ICMP Echo packets to the IP address you specify. The destination node then responds to or “echoes” the packets sent from the Switch. This is very useful to verify connectivity between the Switch and other nodes on the network.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Ping Test** as shown below:

**Ping Test** Safeguard

**IPv4 Ping Test:**  
Enter the IPv4 address of the device or station you want to ping, then click **Start**.

Target IPv4 Address:

Domain Name:

Repeat Pinging for:  Infinite times  
  (1-255 times)

Timeout:  (1-99 sec)

Source IPv4 Address:

---

**IPv6 Ping Test:**  
Enter the IPv6 address of the device or station you want to ping, then click **Start**.

Target IPv6 Address:

Interface Name:

Domain Name:

Repeat Pinging for:  Infinite times  
  (1-255 times)

Size:  (1-6000)

Timeout:  (1-99 sec)

Source IPv6 Address:

Figure 11-21 Ping Test window

The user may click the Infinite times radio button, in the Repeat Pinging for field, which will tell the ping program to keep sending ICMP Echo packets to the specified IP address until the program is stopped. The user may opt to choose a specific number of times to ping the Target IP Address by clicking its radio button and entering a number between 1 and 255.

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Target IPv4 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter an IPv4 address to be pinged.
<b>Target IPv6 Address</b>	Click the radio button and enter an IPv6 address to be pinged.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Click the radio button and enter the domain name of the host.
<b>Repeat Pinging for</b>	Enter the number of times desired to attempt to Ping either the IPv4 address or the IPv6 address configured in this window. Users may enter a number of times between 1 and 255.
<b>Size</b>	For IPv6 only, enter a value between 1 and 6000. The default is 100.
<b>Timeout</b>	Select a timeout period between 1 and 99 seconds for this Ping message to reach its destination. If the packet fails to find the IP address in this specified time, the Ping packet will be dropped.
<b>Source IPv4 Address</b>	Enter the source IPv4 address. If the current switch has more than one IP address, you can enter one of them to this field. When entered, this IPv4 address will be used as the source IP address of the packets sent to the remote host, or as primary IP address.
<b>Source IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the source IPv6 address. If the current switch has more than one IPv6 address, you can enter one of them to this field. When entered, this IPv6 address will be used as the source IP address of the packets sent to the remote host, or as primary IP address.

Click the **Start** button to initiate the Ping Test.

After clicking the **Start** button, the following page will appear:

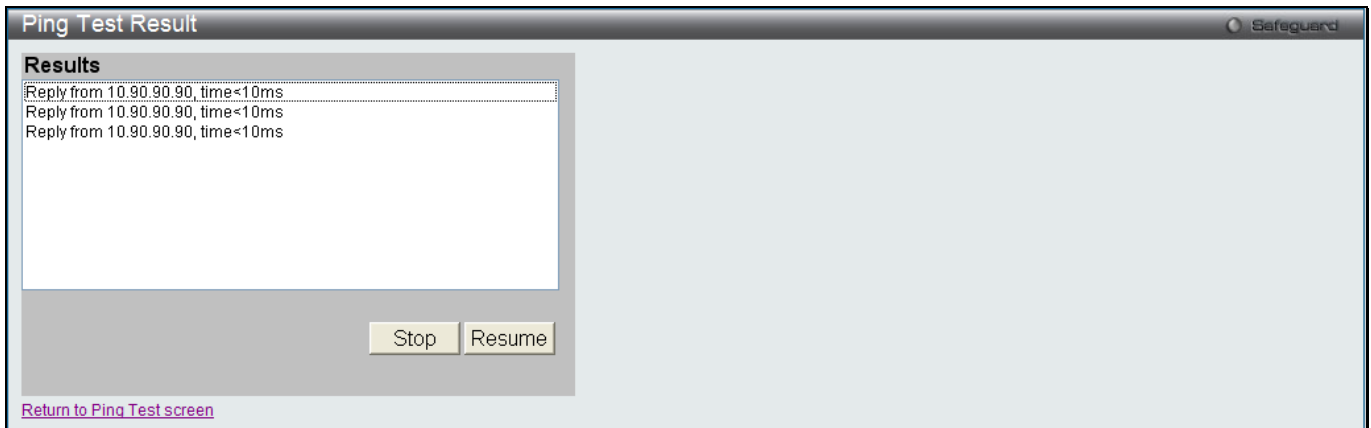


Figure 11-22 Ping Test Result window

Click the **Stop** button to halt the Ping Test.

Click the **Resume** button to resume the Ping Test.

## Trace Route

The trace route page allows the user to trace a route between the switch and a given host on the network.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Trace Route** as shown below:

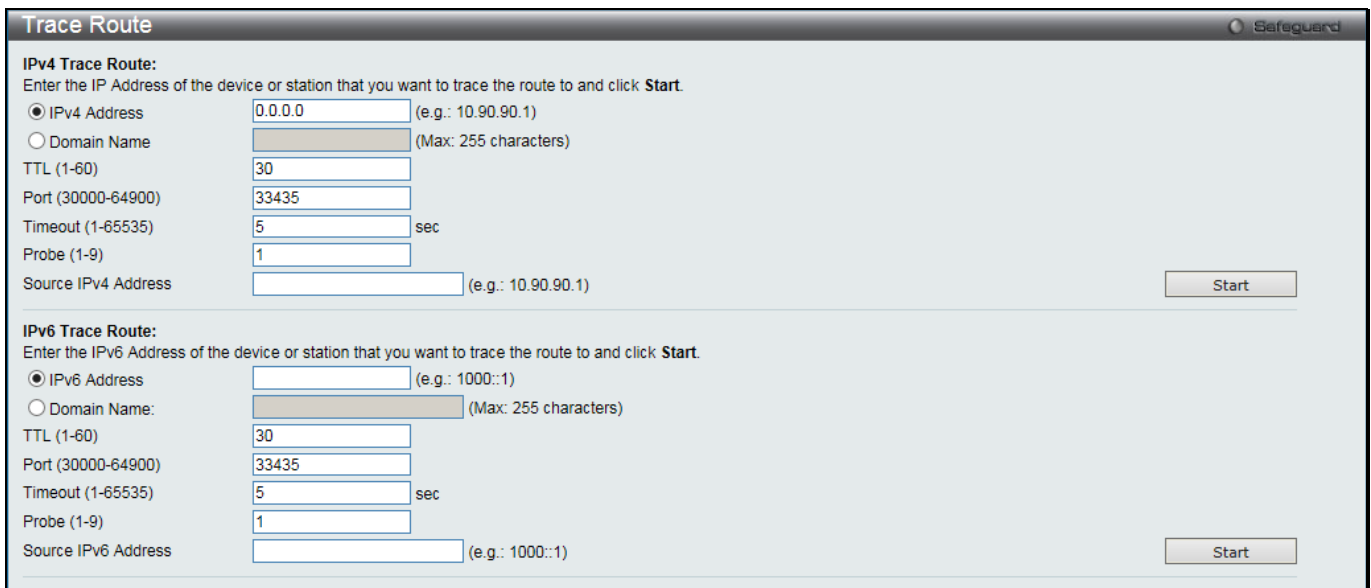


Figure 11-23 Trace Route window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>IPv4 Address</b>	IP address of the destination station.
<b>IPv6 Address</b>	IPv6 address of the destination station.
<b>TTL (1-60)</b>	The time to live value of the trace route request. This is the maximum number of routers that a trace route packet can pass. The trace route option will cross while seeking the network path between two devices. The range for the TTL is 1 to 60 hops.
<b>Port (30000-64900)</b>	The port number. The value range is from 30000 to 64900.
<b>Timeout (1-65535)</b>	Defines the timeout period while waiting for a response from the remote device. A value of 1 to 65535 seconds can be specified. The default is 5 seconds.

<b>Probe (1-9)</b>	The number of probing. The range is from 1 to 9. If unspecified, the default value is 1.
<b>Source IPv4 Address</b>	Enter the source IPv4 address. If the current switch has more than one IP address, you can enter one of them to this field. When entered, this IPv4 address will be used as the source IP address of the packets sent to the remote host, or as primary IP address.
<b>Source IPv6 Address</b>	Enter the source IPv6 address. If the current switch has more than one IPv6 address, you can enter one of them to this field. When entered, this IPv6 address will be used as the source IP address of the packets sent to the remote host, or as primary IP address.

Click the **Start** button to initiate the Trace Route.

After clicking the **Start** button, the following page will appear:

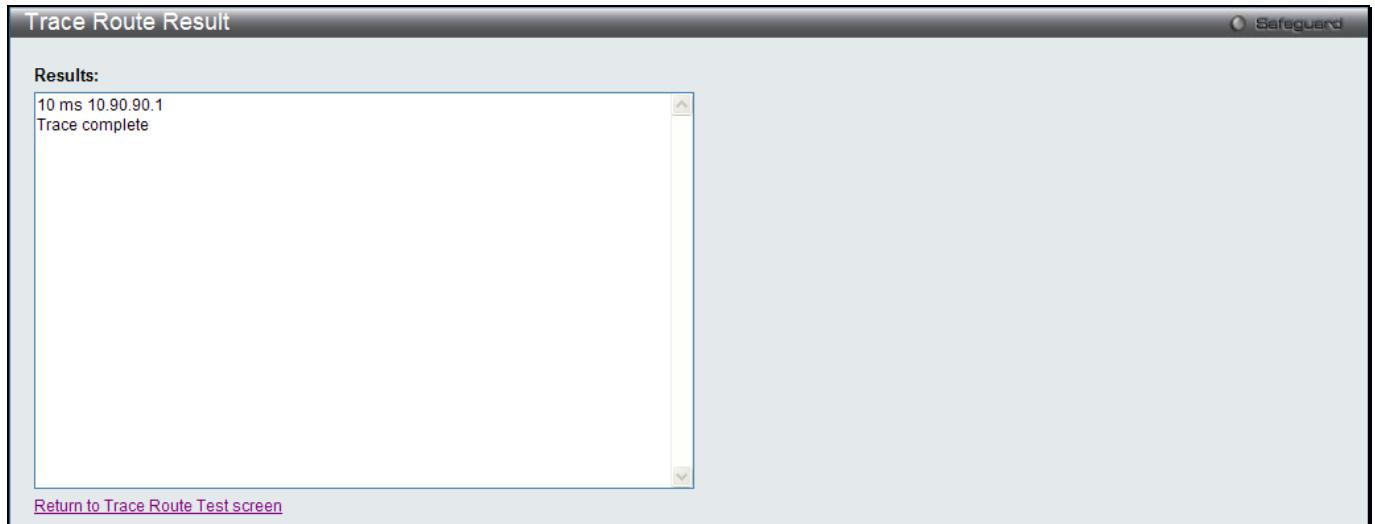


Figure 11-24 Trace Route Result window

Click the **Stop** button to halt the Trace Route.

Click the **Resume** button to resume the Trace Route.

## Peripheral

### Device Environment

The device environment feature displays the Switch internal temperature status.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Peripheral > Device Environment** as shown below:

Items	Data
Current Temperature(celsius)	28
High Warning Temperature Threshold (celsius)	79
Low Warning Temperature Threshold (celsius)	11

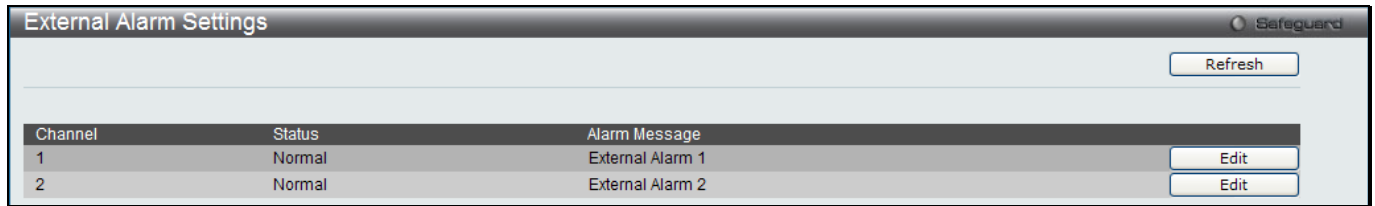
Figure 11-25 Device Environment window

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new entries will appear.

## External Alarm Settings

This window is used to configure an alarm message when the alarm is triggered.

To view this window, click **Monitoring > Peripheral > External Alarm Settings** as shown below:



Channel	Status	Alarm Message	
1	Normal	External Alarm 1	Edit
2	Normal	External Alarm 2	Edit

**Figure 11-26 External Alarm Settings window**

Click the **Refresh** button to refresh the display table so that new entries will appear.

Click the **Edit** button to configure the specified entry.

## Chapter 12 Save and Tools

**Save Configuration / Log**  
**Download firmware**  
**Upload Firmware**  
**Download Configuration**  
**Upload Configuration**  
**Upload Log File**  
**Reset**  
**Reboot System**

### Save Configuration / Log

To view this window, click **Save > Save Configuration / Log**, as shown below.

Save Configuration allows the user to backup the configuration of the Switch. Select **Configuration** from the **Type** drop-down menu and enter the **File Path** in the space provided and click **Apply**.

Figure 12-1 Save – Configuration window

**Save Log** allows the user to backup the log file of the Switch. Select **Log** from the **Type** drop-down menu and click **Apply**.

Figure 12-2 Save – Log window

**Save All** allows the user to permanently save changes made to the configuration and the log file of the Switch. This option will allow the changes to be kept after the switch has rebooted. Select **All** from the **Type** drop-down menu and click **Apply**.

Figure 12-3 Save – All window

### Download firmware

The following window is used to download firmware for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Tools > Download Firmware**, as shown below.

### Download Firmware From TFTP

This window is used to download firmware from a TFTP Server to the Switch and updates the switch.

The screenshot shows the 'Download Firmware' window with the following configuration options:

- Download Firmware From TFTP
- Download Firmware From FTP
- Download Firmware From HTTP
- Download Firmware From RCP

Fields and options below:

- TFTP Server IP: [Text Input]
- Source File: [Text Input]
- Destination File: [Text Input]
- IPv4 (selected), IPv6, Domain Name (radio buttons)
- [Download] button

Figure 12-4 Download Firmware – TFTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
<b>TFTP Server IP</b>	Enter the TFTP server IP address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IPv6 address used.
	<b>Domain Name</b>	Click the radio button to enter the domain name.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the file name for the TFTP server to download, e.g. text.had.	
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the flash of the Switch, e.g. C:/runtime.had.	

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Download Firmware From FTP

This window is used to download firmware from a FTP Server to the Switch and updates the switch.

The screenshot shows the 'Download Firmware' window with the following configuration options:

- Download Firmware From TFTP
- Download Firmware From FTP
- Download Firmware From HTTP
- Download Firmware From RCP

Fields and options below:

- FTP Server IP: [Text Input]
- User Name: [Text Input]
- Password: [Text Input]
- Tcp Port (1-65535): [Text Input]
- Source File: [Text Input]
- Destination File: [Text Input]
- IPv4 (selected), IPv6 (radio buttons)
- Boot Up
- [Download] button

Figure 12-5 Download Firmware – FTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>FTP Server IP</b>	Enter the FTP Server IP Address used.
	<b>IPv4</b>



	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IPv6 address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.	
<b>Password</b>	Enter the appropriate Password used.	
<b>TCP Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter the TCP Port number used.	
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the file name for the FTP server to download, e.g. runtime.had.	
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the flash of the Switch, e.g. C:/runtime.had.	
<b>Boot Up</b>	Select this option to use this firmware as the boot-up firmware.	

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Download Firmware From HTTP

This window is used to download firmware from a computer to the Switch and updates the switch.

The screenshot shows the 'Download Firmware' window with the 'Safeguard' logo in the top right. Four radio buttons are listed: 'Download Firmware From TFTP', 'Download Firmware From FTP', 'Download Firmware From HTTP' (which is selected), and 'Download Firmware From RCP'. Below the radio buttons, there are two text input fields: 'Destination File:' and 'Source File:'. The 'Source File:' field has a 'Browse...' button next to it. At the bottom center, there is a 'Download' button.

Figure 12-6 Download Firmware – HTTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the flash of the Switch, e.g. C:/runtime.had.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location of the Source File, e.g. runtime.had, or click the <b>Browse</b> button to navigate to the firmware file for the download.

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Download Firmware from RCP

This window allows the user to download firmware from an RCP Server to the Switch and updates the switch.

The screenshot shows the 'Download Firmware' window with the 'Safeguard' logo in the top right. Four radio buttons are listed: 'Download Firmware From TFTP', 'Download Firmware From FTP', 'Download Firmware From HTTP', and 'Download Firmware From RCP' (which is selected). Below the radio buttons, there are four text input fields: 'RCP Server IP:', 'User Name:', 'Source File:', and 'Destination File:'. At the bottom center, there is a 'Download' button.

Figure 12-7 Download Firmware from RCP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RCP Server IP</b>	Enter the RCP server IP address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the remote user name on the RCP server.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Source File.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Destination File.

Click the **Download** button to initiate the download.

## Upload Firmware

The following window is used to upload firmware from the Switch.

To view this window, click **Tools > Upload Firmware**, as shown below.

## Upload Firmware To TFTP

This window is used to upload firmware from the Switch to a TFTP Server.

Figure 12-8 Upload Firmware – TFTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
<b>TFTP Server IP</b>	Enter the TFTP server IP address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IPv6 address used.
	<b>Domain Name</b>	Click the radio button to enter the domain name.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the TFTP server, e.g. runtime.had.	
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location of the Source File, e.g. C:/runtime.had.	

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Firmware To FTP

This window is used to upload firmware from the Switch to a FTP Server.

The screenshot shows the 'Upload Firmware' window with the 'Upload Firmware To FTP' option selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Radio buttons for upload methods: Upload Firmware To TFTP, Upload Firmware To FTP (selected), Upload Firmware To HTTP, and Upload Firmware To RCP.
- FTP Server IP: A text input field with a radio button for IPv4 (selected) and a radio button for IPv6.
- User Name: A text input field.
- Password: A text input field.
- Tcp Port (1-65535): A text input field.
- Destination File: A text input field.
- Source File: A text input field.
- An 'Upload' button at the bottom right.

Figure 12-9 Upload Firmware – FTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
FTP Server IP	Enter the FTP Server IP Address used.	
	IPv4	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IP address used.
	IPv6	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IPv6 address used.
User Name	Enter the appropriate Username used.	
Password	Enter the appropriate Password used.	
TCP Port (1-65535)	Enter the TCP Port number used.	
Destination File	Enter the file name that will be stored in the FTP server, e.g. runtime.had.	
Source File	Enter the location of the Source File, e.g. C:/runtime.had.	

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Firmware To HTTP

This window is used to upload firmware from the Switch to a HTTP server.

The screenshot shows the 'Upload Firmware' window with the 'Upload Firmware To HTTP' option selected. The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Radio buttons for upload methods: Upload Firmware To TFTP, Upload Firmware To FTP, Upload Firmware To HTTP (selected), and Upload Firmware To RCP.
- Source File: A text input field.
- An 'Upload' button at the bottom right.

Figure 12-10 Upload Firmware – HTTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Source File	Enter the location and name of the Source File.

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Firmware to RCP

This window allows the user to upload firmware from the Switch to an RCP Server.

Figure 12-11 Upload Firmware to RCP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RCP Server IP</b>	Enter the RCP Server IP Address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Destination File.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Source File.

Click the **Upload** button to initiate the upload.

## Download Configuration

The following window is used to download the configuration file for the Switch.

To view this window, click **Tools > Download Configuration**, as shown below.

### Download Configuration From TFTP

This window is used to download the configuration file from a TFTP Server to the Switch and updates the switch.

Figure 12-12 Download Configuration – TFTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>TFTP Server IP</b>	Enter the TFTP server IP address used.
<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IP address used.

	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IPv6 address used.
	<b>Domain Name</b>	Click the radio button to enter the domain name.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the file name for the TFTP server to download, e.g. config.cfg.	
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the flash of the Switch, e.g. C:/config.cfg.	

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Download Configuration From FTP

This window is used to download the configuration file from a FTP Server to the Switch and updates the switch.

Figure 12-13 Download Configuration – FTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
<b>FTP Server IP</b>	Enter the FTP Server IP Address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IPv6 address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.	
<b>Password</b>	Enter the appropriate Password used.	
<b>TCP Port (1-65535)</b>	Enter the TCP Port number used.	
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the file name for the FTP server to download, e.g. config.cfg.	
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the flash of the Switch, e.g. C:/config.cfg.	

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Download Configuration From HTTP

This window is used to download the configuration file from a computer to the Switch and updates the switch.

The screenshot shows a web interface window titled "Download Configuration" with a "Safeguard" icon in the top right. It contains four radio button options: "Download Configuration From TFTP", "Download Configuration From FTP", "Download Configuration From HTTP" (which is selected), and "Download Configuration From RCP". Below these options are two text input fields: "Destination File:" and "Source File:". The "Source File:" field has a "Browse..." button next to it. At the bottom center is a "Download" button.

Figure 12-14 Download Configuration – HTTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the flash of the Switch, e.g. C:/config.cfg.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location of the Source File, e.g. config.cfg, or click the <b>Browse</b> button to navigate to the firmware file for the download.

Click **Download** to initiate the download.

## Download Configuration from RCP

This window allows the user to download the configuration file from an RCP Server to the Switch and updates the switch.

The screenshot shows a web interface window titled "Download Configuration" with a "Safeguard" icon in the top right. It contains four radio button options: "Download Configuration From TFTP", "Download Configuration From FTP", "Download Configuration From HTTP", and "Download Configuration From RCP" (which is selected). Below these options are four text input fields: "RCP Server IP:", "User Name:", "Source File:", and "Destination File:". At the bottom center is a "Download" button.

Figure 12-15 Download Configuration from RCP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RCP Server IP</b>	Enter the RCP Server IP Address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Source File.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Destination File.

Click the **Download** button to initiate the download.

## Upload Configuration

The following window is used to upload the configuration file from the Switch.

To view this window, click **Tools > Upload Configuration**, as shown below.

## Upload Configuration To TFTP

This window is used to upload the configuration file from the Switch to a TFTP Server.

Figure 12-16 Upload Configuration – TFTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
<b>TFTP Server IP</b>	Enter the TFTP server IP address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IPv6 address used.
	<b>Domain Name</b>	Click the radio button to enter the domain name.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the TFTP server, e.g. config.cfg.	
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location of the Source File, e.g. C:/config.cfg.	
<b>Filter</b>	Use the drop-down menu to <i>include</i> , <i>begin</i> or <i>exclude</i> a filter like SNMP, VLAN or STP. Select the appropriate <b>Filter</b> action and enter the service name in the space provided.	

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Configuration To FTP

This window is used to upload the configuration file from the Switch to a FTP Server.

Figure 12-17 Upload Configuration – FTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
FTP Server IP	Enter the FTP Server IP Address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IPv6 address used.
User Name	Enter the appropriate Username used.	
Password	Enter the appropriate Password used.	
TCP Port (1-65535)	Enter the TCP Port number used.	
Destination File	Enter the file name that will be stored in the FTP server, e.g. config.cfg.	
Source File	Enter the location of the Source File, e.g. C:/config.cfg.	
Filter	Use the drop-down menu to include, begin or exclude a filter like SNMP, VLAN or STP. Select the appropriate Filter action and enter the service name in the space provided.	

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Configuration To HTTP

This window is used to upload the configuration file from the Switch to a computer.

Figure 12-18 Upload Configuration – HTTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
Source File	Enter the location and name of the Source File.



Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Configuration to RCP

This window allows the user to upload the configuration file from the Switch to an RCP Server.

Figure 12-19 Upload Configuration to RCP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RCP Server IP</b>	Enter the RCP Server IP Address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Destination File.
<b>Source File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Source File.
<b>Filter</b>	Use the drop-down menu to <i>Include</i> , <i>Exclude</i> or <i>Begin</i> a filter like SNMP, VLAN or STP. Select the appropriate <b>Filter</b> action and enter the service name in the space provided.

Click the **Upload** button to initiate the upload.

## Upload Log File

The following window is used to upload the log file from the Switch.  
To view this window, click **Tools > Upload Log File**, as shown below.

## Upload Log To TFTP

This window is used to upload the log file from the Switch to a TFTP Server.

**Figure 12-20 Upload Log – TFTP window**

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
<b>TFTP Server IP</b>	Enter the TFTP server IP address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the TFTP server IPv6 address used.
	<b>Domain Name</b>	Click the radio button to enter the domain name.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the TFTP server, e.g. log.log.	
<b>Log Type</b>	Select the type of log to be transferred. Selecting the <b>Common Log</b> option here will upload the common log entries. Selecting the <b>Attack Log</b> option here will upload the log concerning attacks.	

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Log To FTP

This window is used to upload the log file from the Switch to a FTP Server.

Figure 12-21 Upload Log – FTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description	
<b>FTP Server IP</b>	Enter the FTP Server IP Address used.	
	<b>IPv4</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IP address used.
	<b>IPv6</b>	Click the radio button to enter the FTP server IPv6 address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.	
<b>Password</b>	Enter the appropriate Password used.	
<b>TCP Port</b>	Enter the TCP Port number used.	
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the file name that will be stored in the FTP server, e.g. log.log.	
<b>Log Type</b>	Select the type of log to be transferred. Selecting the Common Log option here will upload the common log entries. Selecting the Attack Log option here will upload the log concerning attacks.	

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Log To HTTP

This window is used to upload the log file from the Switch to a computer.

Figure 12-22 Upload Log – HTTP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Log Type</b>	Select the type of log to be transferred. Selecting the <b>Common Log</b> option here will upload the common log entries. Selecting the <b>Attack Log</b> option here will upload the log concerning attacks.

Click **Upload** to initiate the upload.

## Upload Log to RCP

This window allows the user to upload the log file from the Switch to an RCP Server.

Figure 12-23 Upload Log to RCP window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>RCP Server IP</b>	Enter the RCP Server IP Address used.
<b>User Name</b>	Enter the appropriate Username used.
<b>Destination File</b>	Enter the location and name of the Destination File.
<b>Log Type</b>	Select the type of log to be transferred. Selecting the <b>Common Log</b> option here will upload the common log entries. Selecting the <b>Attack Log</b> option here will upload the log concerning attacks.

Click the **Upload** button to initiate the upload.

## Reset

The Reset function has several options when resetting the Switch. Some of the current configuration parameters can be retained while resetting all other configuration parameters to their factory defaults.



**NOTE:** Only the Reset System option will enter the factory default parameters into the Switch's non-volatile RAM, and then restart the Switch. All other options enter the factory defaults into the current configuration, but do not save this configuration. Reset System will return the Switch's configuration to the state it was when it left the factory

Reset gives the option of retaining the Switch's IP address, log, user account and banner, while resetting all other configuration parameters to their factory defaults. If the Switch is reset using this window, and the **Save** option is not executed, the Switch will return to the last saved configuration when rebooted.

To view this window, click **Tools > Reset**, as shown below.

Figure 12-24 Reset System window

The fields that can be configured are described below:

Parameter	Description
<b>Reset</b>	Selecting this option will factory reset the Switch but not the <i>IP address, log, user account and banner</i> .
<b>Reset Config</b>	Selecting this option will factory reset the Switch but not perform a Reboot.
<b>Reset System</b>	Selecting this option will factory reset the Switch and perform a Reboot.

Click the **Apply** button to initiate the Reset action.

## Reboot System

The following window is used to restart the Switch. To view this window, click **Tools > Reboot System**, as shown below.

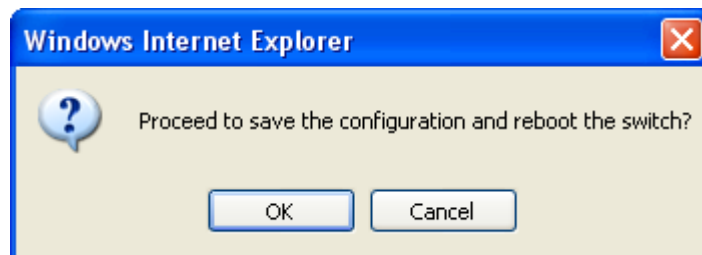


**Figure 12-25 Reboot System Window**

Selecting the **Yes** radio button will instruct the Switch to save the current configuration to non-volatile RAM before restarting the Switch.

Selecting the **No** radio button instructs the Switch not to save the current configuration before restarting the Switch. All of the configuration information entered from the last time **Save** was executed will be lost.

Click the **Reboot** button to see the following window.



**Figure 12-26 Reboot Confirmation**

Click the **OK** button to restart the Switch.

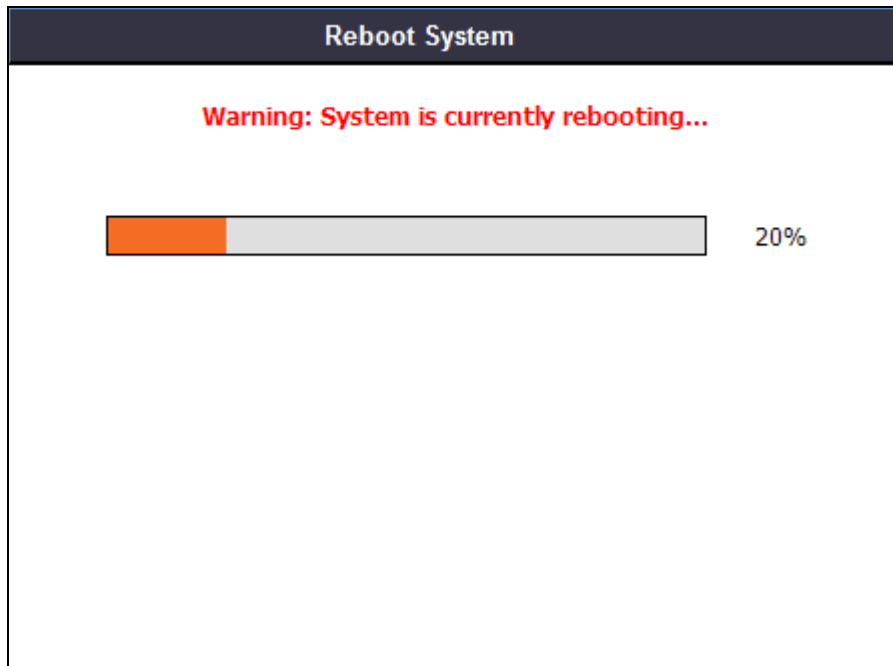


Figure 12-27 System Rebooting window

# Appendix A Password Recovery Procedure

This document describes the procedure for resetting passwords on D-Link Switches.

Authenticating any user who tries to access networks is necessary and important. The basic authentication method used to accept qualified users is through a local login, utilizing a Username and Password. Sometimes, passwords get forgotten or destroyed, so network administrators need to reset these passwords. This document will explain how the Password Recovery feature can help network administrators reach this goal.

The following steps explain how to use the Password Recovery feature on D-Link devices to easily recover passwords.

## **Complete these steps to reset the password:**

- For security reasons, the Password Recovery feature requires the user to physically access the device. Therefore this feature is only applicable when there is a direct connection to the console port of the device. It is necessary for the user needs to attach a terminal or PC with terminal emulation to the console port of the switch.
- Power on the Switch. After the 'Starting runtime image' message, the Switch will allow 2 seconds for the user to press the hotkey [^] (Shift + 6) to enter the "Password Recovery Mode." Once the Switch enters the "Password Recovery Mode," all ports on the Switch will be disabled.

```

Boot Procedure                                     V1.00.003
-----
Power On Self Test ..... 100 %

MAC Address   : B0-C5-54-30-00-A0
H/W Version   : A2

Please Wait, Loading V2.00.001 Runtime Image ..... 100 %
UART init ..... 100 %
Starting runtime image

```

## **Password Recovery Mode**

>

1. In the "Password Recovery Mode" only the following commands can be used.

Command	Parameters
<b>reset config</b> <b>{force_agree}</b>	The <b>reset config</b> command resets the whole configuration back to the default values. The option ' <b>force_agree</b> ' means to reset the whole configuration without the user's agreement.
<b>reboot</b>	The <b>reboot</b> command exits the Reset Password Recovery Mode and restarts the switch. A confirmation message will be displayed to allow the user to save the current settings.
<b>reset account</b>	The <b>reset account</b> command deletes all the previously created accounts.
<b>reset password</b> <b>{&lt;username&gt;}</b>	The <b>reset password</b> command resets the password of the specified user. If a username is not specified, the passwords of all users will be reset.
<b>show account</b>	The <b>show account</b> command displays all previously created accounts.

## Appendix B System Log Entries

The following table lists all possible entries and their corresponding meanings that will appear in the System Log of this Switch.

Category	Event Description	Log Information	Severity
<b>System</b>	System started up	System started up	Critical
	System warm start	System warm start	Critical
	System cold start	System cold start	Critical
	Configuration saved to flash	Configuration saved to flash by console(Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Informational
	System log saved to flash	System log saved to flash by console(Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Informational
	Configuration and log saved to flash	Configuration and log saved to flash by console(Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Informational
	Side Fan failed	Side Fan failed	Critical
	Side Fan recovered	Side Fan recovered	Critical
	Back Fan failed	Back Fan failed	Critical
	Back Fan recovered	Back Fan recovered	Critical
	Temperature sensor enters alarm state	Temperature sensor <sensorID> enters alarm state (current temperature: <temperature>)	Warning
	Temperature recovers to normal	Temperature sensor <sensorID> recovers to normal state (current temperature: <temperature>)	Informational
<b>Up/Down-load</b>	Firmware upgraded successfully.	Firmware upgraded by <session> successfully (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Firmware upgrade was unsuccessful.	Firmware upgrade by <session> was unsuccessful! (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Firmware successfully uploaded.	Firmware successfully uploaded by <session> (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Firmware upload was unsuccessful.	Firmware upload by <session> was unsuccessful! (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Configuration successfully downloaded.	Configuration successfully downloaded by <session> (Username:	Informational



		<username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	
	Configuration download was unsuccessful.	Configuration download by <session> was unsuccessful! (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Configuration successfully uploaded.	Configuration successfully uploaded by <session> (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Configuration upload was unsuccessful.	Configuration upload by <session> was unsuccessful! (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Log message successfully uploaded.	Log message successfully uploaded by <session> (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Log message upload was unsuccessful.	Log message upload by <session> was unsuccessful! (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Attack log message successfully uploaded.	Attack log message successfully uploaded by <session> (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Attack log message upload was unsuccessful.	Attack log message upload by <session> was unsuccessful! (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
<b>Interface</b>	Port link up	Port <portNum> link up, <link state>	Informational
	Port link down	Port <portNum> link down	Informational
<b>Console</b>	Successful login through Console	Successful login through Console (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Login failed through Console	Login failed through Console (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Logout through Console	Logout through Console (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Console session timed out	Console session timed out (Username: <username>)	Informational
<b>Web</b>	Successful login through Web	Successful login through Web (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Informational
	Login failed through Web	Login failed through Web (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Warning
	Logout through Web	Logout through Web (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
	Web session timed out	Web session timed out (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational

	Successful login through Web(SSL)	Successful login through Web(SSL) (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
	Login failed through Web(SSL)	Login failed through Web(SSL) (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Warning
	Logout through Web(SSL)	Logout through Web(SSL) (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
	Web(SSL) session timed out	Web(SSL) session timed out (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
<b>Telnet</b>	Successful login through Telnet	Successful login through Telnet (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
	Login failed through Telnet	Login failed through Telnet (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Warning
	Logout through Telnet	Logout through Telnet (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
	Telnet session timed out	Telnet session timed out (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Informational
<b>SNMP</b>	SNMP request received with invalid community string	SNMP request received from <ipAddress> with invalid community string!	Informational
<b>STP</b>	Topology changed	Topology changed (Instance:<InstanceID>, Port:<portNum>,MAC:<macaddr>)	notice
	Enable spanning tree protocol	Spanning Tree Protocol is enabled	Informational
	Disable spanning tree protocol	Spanning Tree Protocol is disabled	Informational
	New root bridge	CIST New Root bridge selected ( MAC: <macaddr> Priority :<value>)	Informational
	New root bridge	CIST Region New Root bridge selected ( MAC: <macaddr> Priority :<value>)	Informational
	New root bridge	MSTI Region New Root bridge selected (Instance:<InstanceID>, MAC: <macaddr> Priority :<value>)	Informational
	New root bridge	New Root bridge selected ( MAC: <macaddr> Priority :<value>)	Informational
	New root port	New root port selected (Instance:<InstanceID>, Port:<portNum>)	notice
	Spanning Tree port status changed	Spanning Tree port status changed (Instance:<InstanceID>, Port:<portNum>) <old_status> -> <new_status>	notice
	Spanning Tree port role changed	Spanning Tree port role changed (Instance:<InstanceID>,	Informational

		Port:<portNum> <old_role> -> <new_role>	
	Spanning Tree instance created	Spanning Tree instance created (Instance:<InstanceID>)	Informational
	Spanning Tree instance deleted	Spanning Tree instance deleted (Instance:<InstanceID>)	Informational
	Spanning Tree Version changed	Spanning Tree version changed (new version:<new_version>)	Informational
	Spanning Tree MST configuration ID name and revision level changed	Spanning Tree MST configuration ID name and revision level changed (name:<name> ,revision level <revision_level>)	Informational
	Spanning Tree MST configuration ID VLAN mapping table added	Spanning Tree MST configuration ID VLAN mapping table changed (instance: <InstanceID> add vlan <startvlanid> [- <endvlanid>])	Informational
	Spanning Tree MST configuration ID VLAN mapping table deleted	Spanning Tree MST configuration ID VLAN mapping table changed (instance: <InstanceID> delete vlan <startvlanid> [- <endvlanid>])	Informational
<b>DoS</b>	<p>Spoofing attack</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The source ip is same as switch's interface ip but the source mac is different</li> <li>2. Source ip is the same as the switch's IP in ARP packet</li> <li>3. Self IP packet detected</li> </ol>	Possible spoofing attack from (IP: <ipaddr> MAC: <macaddr> Port: <portNum>)	Critical
	The DoS attack is blocked	<dos_name> is blocked from (IP: <ipaddr> Port: <portNum>)	Critical
<b>SSH</b>	Successful login through SSH	Successful login through SSH (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Informational
	Login failed through SSH	Login failed through SSH (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, )	Warning
	Logout through SSH	Logout through SSH (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr> )	Informational
	SSH session timed out	SSH session timed out (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>)	Informational
	SSH server is enabled	SSH server is enabled	Informational
	SSH server is disabled	SSH server is disabled	Informational
<b>AAA</b>	Authentication Policy is enabled	Authentication Policy is enabled (Module: AAA)	Informational
	Authentication Policy is disabled	Authentication Policy is disabled (Module: AAA)	Informational
	Successful login through Console authenticated by AAA local method	Successful login through Console authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username>)	Informational

	Login failed through Console authenticated by AAA local method	Login failed through Console authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful login through Web authenticated by AAA local method	Successful login through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Login failed through Web authenticated by AAA local method	Login failed failed through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful login through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA local method	Successful login through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Login failed through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA local method	Login failed through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful login through Telnet authenticated by AAA local method	Successful login through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username>, )	Informational
	Login failed through Telnet authenticated by AAA local method	Login failed through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful login through SSH authenticated by AAA local method	Successful login through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Login failed through SSH authenticated by AAA local method	Login failed through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local method (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful login through Console authenticated by AAA none method	Successful login through Console authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Successful login through Web authenticated by AAA none method	Successful login through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Successful login through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA none method	Successful login through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Successful login through Telnet authenticated by AAA none method	Successful login through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Successful login through SSH authenticated by AAA none method	Successful login through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Successful login through Console authenticated by AAA server	Successful login through Console authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Login failed through Console	Login failed through Console	Warning

	authenticated by AAA server	authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username>)	
	Login failed through Console due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Login failed through Console due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful login through Web authenticated by AAA server	Successful login through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Login failed through Web authenticated by AAA server	Login failed through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Login failed through Web due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Login failed through Web from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful login through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA server	Successful login through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Login failed through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA server	Login failed through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Login failed through Web(SSL) due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Login failed through Web(SSL) from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful login through Telnet authenticated by AAA server	Successful login through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Login failed through Telnet authenticated by AAA server	Login failed through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Login failed through Telnet due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Login failed through Telnet from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful login through SSH authenticated by AAA server	Successful login through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Login failed through SSH authenticated by AAA server	Login failed through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Login failed through SSH due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Login failed through SSH from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Console authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Successful Enable Admin through Console authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username>)	Informational

	Enable Admin failed through Console authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Enable Admin failed through Console authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Web authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Successful Enable Admin through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Web authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Enable Admin failed through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Successful Enable Admin through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username>, )	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Enable Admin failed through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Telnet authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Successful Enable Admin through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Telnet authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Enable Admin failed through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through SSH authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Successful Enable Admin through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through SSH authenticated by AAA local_enable method	Enable Admin failed through <Telnet or Web or SSH> from <userIP> authenticated by AAA local_enable method (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Console authenticated by AAA none method	Successful Enable Admin through Console authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Successful Enable Admin through Web authenticated by AAA none method	Successful Enable Admin through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Successful Enable Admin through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA none method	Successful Enable Admin through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Successful Enable Admin through Telnet authenticated by AAA none method	Successful Enable Admin through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none method (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Successful Enable Admin through SSH	Successful Enable Admin through SSH	Informational

	authenticated by AAA none method	from <userIP> authenticated by AAA none (Username: <username> )	
	Successful Enable Admin through Console authenticated by AAA server	Successful Enable Admin through Console authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Console authenticated by AAA server	Enable Admin failed through Console authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Enable Admin failed through Console due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Enable Admin failed through Console due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Web authenticated by AAA server	Successful Enable Admin through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Web authenticated by AAA server	Enable Admin failed through Web from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Enable Admin failed through Web due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Enable Admin failed through Web from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA server	Successful Enable Admin through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Web(SSL) authenticated by AAA server	Enable Admin failed through Web(SSL) from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Enable Admin failed through Web(SSL) due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Enable Admin failed through Web(SSL) from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through Telnet authenticated by AAA server	Successful Enable Admin through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username>)	Informational
	Enable Admin failed through Telnet authenticated by AAA server	Enable Admin failed through Telnet from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Enable Admin failed through Telnet due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Enable Admin failed through Telnet from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username>)	Warning
	Successful Enable Admin through SSH authenticated by AAA server	Successful Enable Admin through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Informational

	Enable Admin failed through SSH authenticated by AAA server	Enable Admin failed through SSH from <userIP> authenticated by AAA server <serverIP> (Username: <username> )	Warning
	Enable Admin failed through SSH due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration	Enable Admin failed through SSH from <userIP> due to AAA server timeout or improper configuration (Username: <username> )	Warning
	AAA server timed out	AAA server <serverIP> (Protocol: <protocol>) connection failed	Warning
	AAA server ACK error	AAA server <serverIP> (Protocol: <protocol>) response is wrong	Warning
	AAA does not support this functionality	AAA doesn't support this functionality	Informational
<b>Port security</b>	port security is exceeded to its maximum learning size and will not learn any new address	Port security violation (MAC address:<macaddr> on port:<portNum>)	Warning
<b>IMPB</b>	Unauthenticated IP address encountered and discarded by ip IP-MAC port binding	Unauthenticated IP-MAC address and discarded by IMPB (IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>)	Warning
	Dynamic IMPB entry is conflict with static ARP	Dynamic IMPB entry conflicts with static ARP(IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>)	Warning
	Dynamic IMPB entry is conflict with static FDB	Dynamic IMPB entry conflicts with static FDB(IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>)	Warning
	Dynamic IMPB entry conflicts with static IMPB	Dynamic IMPB entry conflicts with static IMPB(IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>)	Warning
	Creating IMPB entry failed due to no ACL rule available	Creating IMPB entry failed due to no ACL rule being available(IP:<ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>)	Warning
<b>IP and Password Changed</b>	IP Address change activity	Management IP address was changed by (Username: <username>,IP:<ipaddr>)	Informational
	Password change activity	Password was changed by (Username: <username>,IP:<ipaddr> )	Informational
<b>Safeguard Engine</b>	Safeguard Engine is in normal mode	Safeguard Engine enters NORMAL mode	Informational
	Safeguard Engine is in filtering packet mode	Safeguard Engine enters EXHAUSTED mode	Warning
<b>Packet Storm</b>	Broadcast storm occurrence	Port <portNum> Broadcast storm is occurring	Warning
	Broadcast storm cleared	Port <portNum> Broadcast storm has cleared	Informational
	Multicast storm occurrence	Port <portNum> Multicast storm is occurring	Warning
	Multicast storm cleared	Port <portNum> Multicast storm has	Informational



		cleared	
	Port shut down due to a packet storm	Port <portNum> is currently shut down due to a packet storm	Warning
<b>Loop Back Dection</b>	Port loop occurred	Port <portNum> LBD loop occurred. Port blocked.	Critical
	Port loop detection restarted after interval time	Port <portNum> LBD port recovered. Loop detection restarted.	Informational
	Port with VID loop occurred	Port <portNum> VID <vlanID> LBD loop occurred. Packet discard begun.	Critical
	Port with VID Loop detection restarted after interval time	Port <portNum> VID <vlanID> LBD recovered. Loop detection restarted.	Informational
<b>802.1x</b>	VID assigned from radius server after radius client authenticated by radius server successfully .This VID will assign to the port and this port will be the vlan untag port member.	Radius server <ipaddr> assigned vid :<vlanID> to port <portNum> (account :<username> )	Informational
	Ingress bandwidth assigned from radius server after radius client authenticated by radius server successfully .This Ingress bandwidth will assign to the port.	Radius server <ipaddr> assigned ingress bandwidth :<ingressBandwidth> to port <portNum> (account :<username>)	Informational
	Egress bandwidth assigned from radius server after radius client authenticated by radius server successfully .This egress bandwidth will assign to the port.	Radius server <ipaddr> assigned egress bandwidth :<egressBandwidth> to port <portNum> (account:<username>)	Informational
	802.1p default priority assigned from radius server after radius client authenticated by radius server successfully.This 802.1p default priority will assign to the port.	Radius server <ipaddr> assigned 802.1p default priority:<priority> to port <portNum> (account :<username>)	Informational
	802.1x Authentication failure	802.1x Authentication failure [for <reason>] from (Username: <username>, Port: <portNum>, MAC: <macaddr> )	Warning
	802.1x Authentication success	802.1x Authentication success from (Username: <username>, Port: <portNum>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
<b>CFM</b>	Cross-connect is detected	CFM cross-connect. VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(MD Level:<mdlevel>, Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>) Remote(MEPID:<mepid>, MAC:<macaddr>)	Critical
	Error CFM CCM packet is detected	CFM error ccm. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>) Remote(MEPID:<mepid>, MAC:<macaddr>)	Warning
	Can not receive remote MEP's CCM packet	CFM remote down. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>,	Warning

		Direction:<mepdirection>)	
	Remote MEP's MAC reports an error status	CFM remote MAC error. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>)	Warning
	Remote MEP detects CFM defects	CFM remote detects a defect. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>)	Informational
<b>ARP</b>	Gratuitious ARP detected duplicate IP.	Conflict IP was detected with this device ! (IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>, Interface: <ipif_name>).	Warning
<b>DHCP</b>	Detect untrusted DHCP server IP address	Detected untrusted DHCP server(IP: <ipaddr>, Port: <portNum>)	Informational
<b>Command Logging</b>	Command Logging	<username>: execute command "<string>"	Informational
<b>MBAC</b>	A host passes the authentication	MAC-based Access Control host login successful (MAC: <macaddr>, port: <portNum>, VID: <vid>)	Informational
	A host fails to pass the authentication	MAC-based Access Control unauthenticated host(MAC: <macaddr>, Port <portNum>, VID: <vid>)	Critical
	A host is aged out	MAC-based Access Control host aged out (MAC: <macaddr>, port: <portNum>, VID: <vid>)	Informational
	The authorized user number on a port reaches the maximum user limit	Port <portNum> enters MAC-based Access Control stop learning state	Warning
	The authorized user number on a port is below the maximum user limit in a time interval (interval is project depended)	Port <portNum> recovers from MAC-based Access Control stop learning state	Warning
	The authorized user number on whole device reaches the maximum user limit	MAC-based Access Control enters stop learning state	Warning
	The authorized user number on whole device is below the maximum user limit in a time interval (interval is project depended)	MAC-based Access Control recovers from stop learning state	Warning
<b>BPDU Protection</b>	BPDU attack happened	Port <port> enter BPDU under protection state (mode: drop )	Informational
	BPDU attack happened	Port <port> enter BPDU under protection state (mode: block)	Informational
	BPDU attack happened	Port <port> enter BPDU under protection state (mode: shutdown)	Informational
	BPDU attack automatically recover	Port <port> recover from BPDU under protection state automatically	Informational
	BPDU attack manually recover	Port <port> recover from BPDU under	Informational

		protection state manually	
	System re-start reason: system fatal error	System re-start reason: system fatal error	Emergent
	System re-start reason: CPU exception	System re-start reason: CPU exception	Emergent
<b>JWAC</b>	When a client host authenticated successful.	JWAC authenticated user (Username: <string>, IP: <ipaddr   ipv6addr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port: <portNum>)	Informational
	When a client host fail to authenticate.	JWAC unauthenticated user (Username: <string>, IP: <ipaddr   ipv6addr>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port: <portNum>)	Warning
	This log will be triggered when the authorized user number reaches the max user limit on whole device.	JWAC enters stop learning state.	Warning
	This log will be triggered when the authorized user number is below the max user limit on whole device in a time interval (interval is project depended).	JWAC recovered from stop learning state.	Warning
<b>WAC</b>	When a client host authenticated successful.	WAC authenticated user (Username: <string>, IP: <ipaddr   ipv6address>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port: <portNum>)	Informational
	When a client host fail to authenticate.	WAC unauthenticated user (User Name: <string>, IP: <ipaddr   ipv6address>, MAC: <macaddr>, Port: <portNum>)	Warning
	This log will be triggered when the number of authorized users reaches the maximum user limit on the whole device.	WAC enters stop learning state.	Warning
	This log will be triggered when the number of authorized users is below the maximum user limit on whole device in a time interval (The interval is project dependent).	WAC recovered from stop learning state.	Warning
<b>DHCPv6 Server</b>	The address of the DHCPv6 Server pool is used up.	The address of the DHCPv6 Server pool <pool-name> is used up.	Informational
	The number of allocated ipv6 addresses of the DHCPv6 Server pool is equal to MAX-NUM.	The number of allocated ipv6 addresses of the DHCPv6 Server pool is equal to MAX-NUM.	Informational
<b>DHCPv6 Server Screening</b>	Detected untrusted DHCPv6 server IP address	Detected untrusted DHCPv6 server (IP: <ipv6addr>, Port:<portNum> )	Informational
	Detected untrusted source IP in ICMPv6 Router Advertisement Message	Detected untrusted source IP of ICMPv6 Router Advertisement message (IP: <ipv6addr>, Port:<portNum> )	Informational
<b>Y.1731</b>	AIS condition detected	AIS condition detected. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum> ,	notice

		Direction:<mepdirection>, MEPID:<mepid>)	
	AIS condition cleared	AIS condition cleared. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>, MEPID:<mepid>)	notice
	LCK condition detected	LCK condition detected. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>, MEPID:<mepid>)	notice
	LCK condition cleared	LCK condition cleared. MD Level:<mdlevel>, VLAN:<vlanid>, Local(Port <portNum>, Direction:<mepdirection>, MEPID:<mepid>)	notice
<b>DHCPv6 Relay</b>	DHCPv6 relay on a specific interface's administrator state changed.	DHCPv6 relay on interface <intf-name> changed state to <enabled   disabled>	Informational
<b>RCP</b>	Firmware upgraded successfully.	Firmware upgraded by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Firmware upgrade unsuccessfully.	Firmware upgrade by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Firmware uploaded successfully.	Firmware uploaded by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Firmware upload unsuccessfully.	Firmware upload by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Configuration downloaded successfully.	Configuration downloaded by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Configuration download unsuccessfully.	Configuration download by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Configuration uploaded successfully.	Configuration uploaded by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Configuration upload unsuccessfully.	Configuration upload by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Log message uploaded successfully.	Log message uploaded by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>,	Informational

		IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	
	Log message upload unsuccessfully.	Log message upload by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	The downloaded configurations executed successfully.	The downloaded configurations executed by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	The downloaded configurations execute unsuccessfully.	The downloaded configurations executed by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
	Attack log message uploaded successfully.	Attack log message uploaded by <session> successfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Informational
	Attack log message upload unsuccessfully.	Attack log message upload by <session> unsuccessfully. (Username: <username>, IP: <ipaddr>, MAC: <macaddr>)	Warning
<b>DHCPv6 Client</b>	DHCPv6 client interface administrator state changed.	DHCPv6 client on interface <intf-name> changed state to <enabled   disabled>	Informational
	DHCPv6 client obtains an ipv6 address from a DHCPv6 server.	DHCPv6 client obtains an ipv6 address < ipv6address > on interface <intf-name>	Informational
	The IPv6 address obtained from a DHCPv6 server starts renewing.	The IPv6 address < ipv6address > on interface <intf-name> starts renewing.	Informational
	The IPv6 address obtained from a DHCPv6 server renews success.	The IPv6 address < ipv6address > on interface <intf-name> renews success.	Informational
	The IPv6 address obtained from a DHCPv6 server starts rebinding.	The IPv6 address < ipv6address > on interface <intf-name> starts rebinding.	Informational
	The IPv6 address obtained from a DHCPv6 server rebinds success.	The IPv6 address < ipv6address > on interface <intf-name> rebinds success.	Informational
	The IPv6 address was deleted.	The IPv6 address < ipv6address > on interface <intf-name> was deleted.	Informational
<b>DDM</b>	DDM exceeded DDM alarm threshold	Port <portNum> optic module [thresholdType] exceeded the [thresholdSubType] alarm threshold	Critical
	DDM exceeded DDM warning threshold	Port <portNum> optic module [thresholdType] exceeded the [thresholdSubType] warning threshold	Critical
	DDM recovered to normal	Port <portNum> optic module [thresholdType] back to normal	Warning

## Appendix C Trap Log Entries

This table lists the trap logs found on the Switch.

Trap Name	Trap Description	OID
<b>risingAlarm</b>	The SNMP trap that is generated when an alarm entry crosses its rising threshold and generates an event that is configured for sending SNMP traps. Binding: 1.alarmIndex 2.alarmVariable 3.alarmSampleType 4.alarmValue 5.alarmRisingThreshold	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.1
<b>fallingAlarm</b>	The SNMP trap that is generated when an alarm entry crosses its falling threshold and generates an event that is configured for sending SNMP traps. Binding: 1.alarmIndex 2.alarmVariable 3.alarmSampleType 4.alarmValue 5.alarmFallingThreshold	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.2
<b>LldpRemTablesChange</b>	A lldpRemTablesChange notification is sent when the value of lldpStatsRemTableLastChangeTime changes. It can be utilized by an NMS to trigger LLDP remote systems table maintenance polls. Note that transmission of lldpRemTablesChange notifications are throttled by the agent, as specified by the 'lldpNotificationInterval' object. Binding: 1.lldpStatsRemTablesInserts 2.lldpStatsRemTablesDeletes 3.lldpStatsRemTablesDrops 4.lldpStatsRemTablesAgeouts	1.0.8802.1.1.2.0.0.1
<b>coldStart</b>	A coldStart trap signifies that the SNMPv2 entity, acting in an agent role, is reinitializing itself and that its configuration may have been altered.	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1
<b>warmStart</b>	A warmStart trap signifies that the SNMPv2 entity, acting in an agent role, is reinitializing itself such that its configuration is unaltered.	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2
<b>authenticationFailure</b>	An authenticationFailure trap signifies that the SNMPv2 entity, acting in an agent role, has received a protocol message that is not properly authenticated.	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5
<b>linkDown</b>	A linkDown trap signifies that the SNMP entity, acting in an agent role, has detected that the ifOperStatus object for one of its communication links is about to enter the down state from some other state (but not from the notPresent state). This other state is indicated by the included value of ifOperStatus. 1.ifIndex 2.ifAdminStatus 3.ifOperStatus	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3
<b>linkUp</b>	A linkUp trap signifies that the SNMP entity, acting in an agent role, has detected that the ifOperStatus object for one of its communication links left the down state and transitioned into some other state (but not into the notPresent state). This other state is indicated by the included value of ifOperStatus.	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4

	Binding: 1.ifIndex 2.ifAdminStatus 3.ifOperStatus	
<b>newRoot</b>	The newRoot trap indicates that the sending agent has become the new root of the Spanning Tree; the trap is sent by a bridge soon after its election as the new root, e.g., upon expiration of the Topology Change Timer, immediately subsequent to its election. Implementation of this trap is optional.	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1
<b>topologyChange</b>	A topologyChange trap is sent by a bridge when any of its configured ports transitions from the Learning state to the Forwarding state, or from the Forwarding state to the Blocking state. The trap is not sent if a newRoot trap is sent for the same transition. Implementation of this trap is optional.	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2
<b>dot1agCfmFaultAlarm</b>	A MEP has a persistent defect condition. A notification (fault alarm) is sent to the management entity with the OID of the MEP that has detected the fault. Whenever a MEP has a persistent defect, it may or may not generate a Fault Alarm to warn the system administrator of the problem, as controlled by the MEP Fault Notification Generator State Machine and associated Managed Objects. Only the highest-priority defect, as shown in Table 20-1, is reported in the Fault Alarm. If a defect with a higher priority is raised after a Fault Alarm has been issued, another Fault Alarm is issued. The management entity receiving the notification can identify the system from the network source address of the notification, and can identify the MEP reporting the defect by the indices in the OID of the dot1agCfmMepHighestPrDefect variable in the notification: dot1agCfmMdIndex - Also the index of the MEP's Maintenance Domain table entry (dot1agCfmMdTable). dot1agCfmMaIndex - Also an index (with the MD table index) of the MEP's Maintenance Association network table entry (dot1agCfmMaNetTable), and (with the MD table index and component ID) of the MEP's MA component table entry (dot1agCfmMaCompTable). dot1agCfmMepIdentifier - MEP Identifier and final index into the MEP table (dot1agCfmMepTable). Binding: 1.dot1agCfmMepHighestPrDefect	1.3.111.2.802.1.1.8.0.1
<b>dot3OamThresholdEvent</b>	A dot3OamThresholdEvent notification is sent when a local or remote threshold crossing event is detected. A local threshold crossing event is detected by the local entity, while a remote threshold crossing event is detected by the reception of an Ethernet OAM Event Notification OAMPDU that indicates a threshold event. This notification should not be sent more than once per second. The OAM entity can be derived from extracting the ifIndex from the variable bindings. The objects in the notification correspond to the values in a row instance in the dot3OamEventLogTable. The management entity should periodically check dot3OamEventLogTable to detect any missed events. Binding: 1.dot3OamEventLogTimestamp 2.dot3OamEventLogOui 3.dot3OamEventLogType 4.dot3OamEventLogLocation 5.dot3OamEventLogWindowHi 6.dot3OamEventLogWindowLo 7.dot3OamEventLogThresholdHi 8.dot3OamEventLogThresholdLo 9.dot3OamEventLogValue 10.dot3OamEventLogRunningTotal 11.dot3OamEventLogEventTotal	1.3.6.1.2.1.158.0.1

<b>swPktStormOccurred</b>	This trap is sent when a packet storm is detected by a packet storm mechanism and a shutdown action is taken. Binding: 1: swPktStormCtrlPortIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.25.5.0.1
<b>swPktStormCleared</b>	The trap is sent when the packet storm is cleared by the packet storm mechanism. Binding: 1: swPktStormCtrlPortIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.25.5.0.2
<b>swPktStormDisablePort</b>	The trap is sent when the port is disabled by the packet storm mechanism. Binding: 1: swPktStormCtrlPortIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.25.5.0.3
<b>swSafeGuardChgToExhausted</b>	This trap indicates System change operation mode from normal to exhausted. Binding: 1: swSafeGuardCurrentStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.19.4.1.0.1
<b>swSafeGuardChgToNormal</b>	This trap indicates System change operation mode from exhausted to normal. Binding: 1: swSafeGuardCurrentStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.19.4.1.0.2
<b>swDoSAttackDetected</b>	This trap is sent when the specific DoS packet is received and trap is enabled. Binding: 1: swDoSCtrlType 2: swDoSNotifyVarIpAddr 3: swDoSNotifyVarPortNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.59.4.0.1
<b>swIpMacBindingViolationTrap</b>	When the IP-MAC Binding trap is enabled, if there's a new MAC that violates the pre-defined port security configuration, a trap will be sent out. Binding: 1: swIpMacBindingPortIndex 2: swIpMacBindingViolationIP 3: swIpMacBindingViolationMac	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.23.5.0.1
<b>swIpMacBindingStopLearning Trap</b>	When the IP-MAC Binding trap is enabled, if the specific port changes from a normal state to a stop_learning state, a trap will be sent out. Binding: 1: swIpMacBindingPortIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.23.5.0.2
<b>swIpMacBindingRecoverLearningTrap</b>	When the IP-MAC Binding trap is enabled, if the specific port changes from a stop_learning state to a normal state, a trap will be sent out. Binding: 1: swIpMacBindingPortIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.23.5.0.3
<b>swMacBasedAccessControlLoggedSuccess</b>	The trap is sent when a MAC-based access control host is successfully logged in. Binding: 1.swMacBasedAuthInfoMacIndex 2.swMacBasedAuthInfoPortIndex 3.swMacBasedAuthVID	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.35.11.1.0.1
<b>swMacBasedAccessControlLoggedFail</b>	The trap is sent when a MAC-based access control host login fails. Binding: 1.swMacBasedAuthInfoMacIndex 2.swMacBasedAuthInfoPortIndex 3.swMacBasedAuthVID	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.35.11.1.0.2
<b>swMacBasedAccessControlAgesOut</b>	The trap is sent when a MAC-based access control host ages out. Binding: 1.swMacBasedAuthInfoMacIndex 2.swMacBasedAuthInfoPortIndex 3.swMacBasedAuthVID	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.35.11.1.0.3
<b>swWACLoggedSuccess</b>	The trap is sent when a WAC client has successfully logged in. Binding:1: swWACAuthStatePort 2: swWACAuthStateOriginalVid 3: swWACAuthStateMACAddr 4: swWACAuthUserName 5: swWACClientAddrType 6: swWACClientAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.27.11.1.0.1
<b>swWACLoggedFail</b>	The trap is sent when a WAC client fails to login. Binding:1: swWACAuthStatePort	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.27.11.1.0.2



	<p>2: swWACAuthStateOriginalVid  3: swWACAuthStateMACAddr  4: swWACAuthUserName  5: swWACClientAddrType  6: swWACClientAddress</p>	
<b>swERPSSFDetectedTrap</b>	<p>When the signal fail occurs, a trap will be generated.  Binding: 1.swERPSNodeId</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.78.4.0.1
<b>swERPSSFClearedTrap</b>	<p>When the signal fail clears, a trap will be generated.  Binding: 1.swERPSNodeId</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.78.4.0.2
<b>swERPSPLOwnerConflictTrap</b>	<p>When a conflict occurs, a trap will be generated.  Binding: 1.swERPSNodeId</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.78.4.0.3
<b>swBpduProtectionUnderAttackingTrap</b>	<p>When the BPDU Protection trap is enabled, if the specific port changes from a normal state to an under attack state, a trap will be sent out.  Binding: 1.swBpduProtectionPortIndex  2.swBpduProtectionPortMode</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.76.4.0.1
<b>swBpduProtectionRecoveryTrap</b>	<p>When the BPDU Protection trap is enabled, if the specific port changes from an under attack state to a normal state, a trap will be sent out.  Binding: 1.swBpduProtectionPortIndex  2.swBpduProtectionRecoveryMethod</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.76.4.0.2
<b>swL2PortSecurityViolationTrap</b>	<p>When the port_security trap is enabled, if there's a new MAC that violates the pre-defined port security configuration, a trap will be sent out.  Binding: 1: swL2PortSecurityPortIndex  2: swL2PortSecurityViolationMac</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.11.133.1.1.2.100.1.2.0.2 1.3.6.1.4.1.171.11.133.2.1.2.100.1.2.0.2
<b>swL2macNotification</b>	<p>This trap indicates the MAC address variations in the address table.  Binding: 1: swL2macNotifyInfo</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.11.133.1.1.2.100.1.2.0.1 1.3.6.1.4.1.171.11.133.2.1.2.100.1.2.0.1
<b>swPortLoopOccurred</b>	<p>The trap is sent when a Port loop occurs.  Binding: 1.swLoopDetectPortIndex</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.41.10.0.1
<b>swPortLoopRestart</b>	<p>The trap is sent when a Port loop restarts after the interval time.  Binding: 1.swLoopDetectPortIndex</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.41.10.0.2
<b>swVlanLoopOccurred</b>	<p>The trap is sent when a Port with a VID loop occurs.  Binding: 1.swLoopDetectPortIndex  2.swVlanLoopDetectVID</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.41.10.0.3
<b>swVlanLoopRestart</b>	<p>The trap is sent when a Port with a VID loop restarts after the interval time.  Binding: 1.swLoopDetectPortIndex  2.swVlanLoopDetectVID</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.41.10.0.4
<b>swFilterDetectedTrap</b>	<p>Send trap when illegal DHCP server is detected. The same illegal DHCP server IP address detected is just sent once to the trap receivers within the log ceasing unauthorized duration.  Binding: 1.swFilterDetectedIP  2.swFilterDetectedport</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.37.100.0.1
<b>swSingleIPMSColdStart</b>	<p>Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSColdStart notification to indicated host when its Member generate cold start notification.  Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID  2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.11
<b>swSingleIPMSWarmStart</b>	<p>Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSWarmStart notification to indicated host when its Member generate warm start notification.  Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID  2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.12

<b>swSingleIPMSLinkDown</b>	Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSLinkDown notification to indicated host when its Member generate link down notification. Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID 2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr 3: ifIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.13
<b>swSingleIPMSLinkUp</b>	If Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSLinkUp notification to indicated host when its Member generate link up notification. Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID 2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr 3: ifIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.14
<b>swSingleIPMSAuthFail</b>	Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSAuthFail notification to indicated host when it Member generate authentication failure notification. Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID 2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.15
<b>swSingleIPMSNewRoot</b>	Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSNewRoot notification to indicated host when it Member generate new root notification. Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID 2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.16
<b>swSingleIPMSTopologyChange</b>	Commander switch will send swSingleIPMSTopologyChange notification to indicated host when it Member generate topology change notification. Binding: 1: swSingleIPMSID 2: swSingleIPMSMacAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.8.6.0.17
<b>swDdmAlarmTrap</b>	The trap is sent when any parameter value exceeds the alarm threshold value or recover to normal status depending on the configuration of the trap action. Binding: 1: swDdmPort 2: swDdmThresholdType 3: swDdmThresholdExceedType 4: swDdmThresholdExceedOrRecover	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.72.4.0.1
<b>swDdmWarningTrap</b>	The trap is sent when any parameter value exceeds the warning threshold value or recover to normal status depending on the configuration of the trap action. Binding: 1: swDdmPort 2: swDdmThresholdType 3: swDdmThresholdExceedType 4: swDdmThresholdExceedOrRecover	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.72.4.0.2
<b>agentGratuitousARPTrap</b>	This trap is sent when there is an IP address conflict. Binding: 1: agentGratuitousARPIpAddr 2: agentGratuitousARPMacAddr 3: agentGratuitousARPPortNumber 4: agentGratuitousARPInterfaceName	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.1.7.2.0.5
<b>agentCfgOperCompleteTrap</b>	The trap is sent when the configuration is completely saved, uploaded or downloaded. Binding: 1: unitID 2: agentCfgOperate 3: agentLoginUserName	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.1.7.2.0.9
<b>agentFirmwareUpgrade</b>	This trap is sent when the process of upgrading the firmware via SNMP has finished. Binding: 1: swMultiImageVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.1.7.2.0.7
<b>swPowerStatusChg</b>	Power Status change notification. The notification is issued when the swPowerStatus changes in the following cases: lowVoltage -> overCurrent. lowVoltage -> working. lowVoltage -> disconnect.	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.2.0.1

	<p>lowVoltage -&gt; connect.  overCurrent -&gt; lowVoltage.  overCurrent -&gt; working.  overCurrent -&gt; disconnect.  overCurrent -&gt; connect.  working -&gt; lowVoltage.  working -&gt; overCurrent.  working -&gt; connect.  working -&gt; disconnect.  fail -&gt; connect.  fail -&gt; disconnect.  connect -&gt; lowVoltage.  connect -&gt; overCurrent.  connect -&gt; working.  connect -&gt; disconnect.  disconnect -&gt; lowVoltage.  disconnect -&gt; overCurrent.  disconnect -&gt; working.  disconnect -&gt; connect.</p> <p>Binding : 1: swPowerUnitIndex  2: swPowerID  3: swPowerStatus</p>	
<b>swPowerFailure</b>	<p>Power Failure notification. The notification is issued when the swPowerStatus changes in the following cases:  lowVoltage -&gt; fail.  overCurrent -&gt; fail.  working -&gt; fail.  connect -&gt; fail.  disconnect -&gt; fail.</p> <p>Binding : 1: swPowerUnitIndex  2: swPowerID  3: swPowerStatus</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.2.0.2
<b>swPowerRecover</b>	<p>Power Recover notification. The notification is issued when the swPowerStatus changes in the following cases:  Binding : 1: swPowerUnitIndex  2: swPowerID  3: swPowerStatus</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.2.0.3
<b>swFanFailure</b>	<p>Fan Failure notification.  Binding : 1: swFanUnitIndex  2: swFanID</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.3.0.1
<b>swFanRecover</b>	<p>Fan Recover notification.  Binding : 1: swFanUnitIndex  2: swFanID</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.3.0.2
<b>swHighTemperature</b>	<p>High Temperature notification  Binding : 1: swTemperatureUnitIndex  2: swTemperSensorID  3: swTemperatureCurrent</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.4.0.1
<b>swHighTemperatureRecover</b>	<p>High Temperature notification  Binding : 1: swTemperatureUnitIndex  2: swTemperSensorID  3: swTemperatureCurrent</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.4.0.2
<b>swLowTemperature</b>	<p>Low Temperature notification  Binding : 1: swTemperatureUnitIndex  2: swTemperSensorID  3: swTemperatureCurrent</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.4.0.3
<b>swLowTemperatureRecover</b>	<p>Low Temperature notification  Binding : 1: swTemperatureUnitIndex  2: swTemperSensorID  3: swTemperatureCurrent</p>	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.11.2.2.4.0.4

<b>swFilterDHCPv6ServerDetectedTrap</b>	Send trap when an illegal DHCPv6 server is detected. Binding:1: swFilterDetectedIPv6 2: swFilterDetectedport	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.37.100.0.2
<b>swFilterICMPv6RaAllNodeDetectedTrap</b>	Send trap when an illegal ICMPv6 All-nodes RA is detected. Binding:1: swFilterDetectedIPv6 2: swFilterDetectedport	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.37.100.0.3
<b>swDot1xLoggedSuccess</b>	The trap is sent when a dot1x Supplicant has successfully logged in. Binding:1: swDot1xAuthPortNumber 2: swDot1xAuthVID 3: swDot1xAuthMACAddress 4: swDot1XAuthUserName	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.30.11.1.0.1
<b>swDot1xLoggedFail</b>	The trap is sent when a dot1x Supplicant fails to login. Binding:1: swDot1xAuthPortNumber 2: swDot1xAuthVID 3: swDot1xAuthMACAddress 4: swDot1XAuthUserName 5: swDot1XAuthFailReason	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.30.11.1.0.2
<b>swCFMExtAISOccurred</b>	A notification is generated when local MEP enters AIS status. Binding:1: dot1agCfmMdIndex 2: dot1agCfmMaIndex 3: dot1agCfmMepIdentifier	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.86.100.0.1
<b>swCFMExtAISCleared</b>	A notification is generated when local MEP exits AIS status. Binding:1: dot1agCfmMdIndex 2: dot1agCfmMaIndex 3: dot1agCfmMepIdentifier	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.86.100.0.2
<b>swCFMExtLockOccurred</b>	A notification is generated when local MEP enters lock status. Binding:1: dot1agCfmMdIndex 2: dot1agCfmMaIndex 3: dot1agCfmMepIdentifier	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.86.100.0.3
<b>swCFMExtLockCleared</b>	A notification is generated when local MEP exits lock status. Binding:1: dot1agCfmMdIndex 2: dot1agCfmMaIndex 3: dot1agCfmMepIdentifier	1.3.6.1.4.1.171.12.86.100.0.4

## Appendix D RADIUS Attributes Assignment

The RADIUS Attributes Assignment on the DGS-3000 is used in the following modules: 802.1X (Port-based and Host-based), and MAC-based Access Control.

The description that follows explains the following RADIUS Attributes Assignment types:

- Ingress/Egress Bandwidth
- 802.1p Default Priority
- VLAN
- ACL

To assign **Ingress/Egress bandwidth by RADIUS Server**, the proper parameters should be configured on the RADIUS Server. The tables below show the parameters for bandwidth.

The parameters of the Vendor-Specific attributes are:

Vendor-Specific Attribute	Description	Value	Usage
Vendor-ID	Defines the vendor.	171 (DLINK)	Required
Vendor-Type	Defines the attribute.	2 (for ingress bandwidth) 3 (for egress bandwidth)	Required
Attribute-Specific Field	Used to assign the bandwidth of a port.	Unit (Kbits)	Required

If the user has configured the bandwidth attribute of the RADIUS server (for example, ingress bandwidth 1000Kbps) and the 802.1X authentication is successful, the device will assign the bandwidth (according to the RADIUS server) to the port. However, if the user does not configure the bandwidth attribute and authenticates successfully, the device will not assign any bandwidth to the port. If the bandwidth attribute is configured on the RADIUS server with a value of "0" or more, than the effective bandwidth (100Mbps on an Ethernet port or 1Gbps on a Gigabit port) of the port will be set to *no\_limited*.

To assign **802.1p default priority by RADIUS Server**, the proper parameters should be configured on the RADIUS Server. The tables below show the parameters for 802.1p default priority.

The parameters of the Vendor-Specific attributes are:

Vendor-Specific Attribute	Description	Value	Usage
Vendor-ID	Defines the vendor.	171 (DLINK)	Required
Vendor-Type	Defines the attribute.	4	Required
Attribute-Specific Field	Used to assign the 802.1p default priority of the port.	0-7	Required

If the user has configured the 802.1p priority attribute of the RADIUS server (for example, priority 7) and the 802.1X, or MAC-based authentication is successful, the device will assign the 802.1p default priority (according to the RADIUS server) to the port. However, if the user does not configure the priority attribute and authenticates successfully, the device will not assign a priority to this port. If the priority attribute is configured on the RADIUS server is a value out of range (>7), it will not be set to the device.

To assign **VLAN by RADIUS Server**, the proper parameters should be configured on the RADIUS Server. To use VLAN assignment, RFC3580 defines the following tunnel attributes in RADIUS packets.

The table below shows the parameters for a VLAN:

RADIUS Tunnel Attribute	Description	Value	Usage
Tunnel-Type	This attribute indicates the tunneling protocol(s) to be used (in the case of a tunnel initiator) or the tunneling protocol in use (in the case of a tunnel terminator).	13 (VLAN)	Required
Tunnel-Medium-Type	This attribute indicates the transport medium being used.	6 (802)	Required
Tunnel-Private-Group-ID	This attribute indicates group ID for a particular tunneled session.	A string (VID)	Required

If the user has configured the VLAN attribute of the RADIUS server (for example, VID 3) and the 802.1X, or MAC-based Access Control authentication is successful, the port will be added to VLAN 3. However, if the user does not configure the VLAN attribute and authenticates successfully, the port will be kept in its original VLAN. If the VLAN attribute configured on the RADIUS server does not exist, the port will not be assigned to the requested VLAN.

To assign **ACL by RADIUS Server**, the proper parameters should be configured on the RADIUS Server. The table below shows the parameters for an ACL.

The parameters of the Vendor-Specific Attribute are:

RADIUS Tunnel Attribute	Description	Value	Usage
Vendor-ID	Defines the vendor.	171 (DLINK)	Required
Vendor-Type	Defines the attribute.	12 (for ACL profile) 13 (for ACL rule)	Required
Attribute-Specific Field	Used to assign the ACL profile or rule.	ACL Command For example: ACL profile: <b>create access_profile profile_id 1 profile_name profile1 ethernet vlan 0xFFF;</b> ACL rule: <b>config access_profile profile_id 1 add access_id auto_assign ethernet vlan_id 1 port all deny;</b>	Required

If the user has configured the ACL attribute of the RADIUS server (for example, ACL profile: **create access\_profile profile\_id 1 profile\_name profile1 ethernet vlan 0xFFF**; ACL rule: **config access\_profile profile\_id 1 add access\_id auto\_assign ethernet vlan\_id 1 port all deny**), the device will assign the ACL profiles and rules according to the RADIUS server. For more information about the ACL module, please refer to Chapter 7 ACL.